WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

LEXUS

Owner's Manual

ES 350 / ES 250 / ES 200

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت تعمیرکاران خودرو دیجیتال (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Pictorial index	Search by illustration	
For safety and security	Make sure to read through them (Main topics: Child seat, theft deterrent system)	1
Vehicle status information and indicators	Reading driving-related information (Main topics: Meters, multi-information display)	2
Before driving	Opening and closing the doors and windows, adjustment before driving (Main topics: Keys, doors, seats, power windows)	3
Driving	Operations and advice which are necessary for driving (Main topics: Starting engine, refueling)	4
Interior features	Usage of the interior features (Main topics: Air conditioner, storage features)	5
Maintenance and care	Caring for your vehicle and maintenance procedures (Main topics: Interior and exterior, light bulbs)	6
When trouble arises	What to do in case of malfunction and emergency (Main topics: Battery discharge, flat tire)	7
Vehicle specifications	Vehicle specifications, customizable features (Main topics: Fuel, oil, tire inflation pressure)	8
Index	Search by symptom	
	Search alphabetically	

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

For your information 6
Reading this manual 10
How to search 11
Pictorial index 12

1 For safety and security

1-1. For safe use
Before driving 32
For safe driving 33
Seat belts 34
SRS airbags 38
Pop Up Hood 45
Exhaust gas precautions 47

1-2. Child safety
Airbag manual on-off system 49
Riding with children 50
Child restraint systems 51

1-3. Emergency assistance
eCall 80

1-4. Theft deterrent system
Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 84
Alarm 85

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

2-1. Instrument cluster
Warning lights and indicators 92
Gauges and meters (except F SPORT models) 96
Gauges and meters (F SPORT models) 100
Multi-information display 105
Head-up display 112
Fuel consumption information 116

3 Before driving

3-1. Key information
Keys 120

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk
Doors 124
Trunk 129
Smart entry & start system 136

3-3. Adjusting the seats
Front seats 141
Rear seats (reclining type) 142
Driving position memory 143
Head restraints 146

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors
Steering wheel 148
Inside rear view mirror 149
Outside rear view mirrors 150

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof
Power windows 153
Moon roof 155
Panoramic moon roof 158

4 Driving

4-1. Before driving
Driving the vehicle 164
Cargo and luggage 169
Trailer towing 170

4-2. Driving procedures
Engine (ignition) switch 171

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Automatic transmission 175
CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) 179
Turn signal lever 184
Parking brake 185
Brake Hold 187

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 190
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 193
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
Multi Weather Lights 200
Rear fog lights 201
Windshield wipers and washer 202

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 208

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 210
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 215
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Cruise control 256
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 258
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Stop & Start system 265
PKSA (Parking Support Alert) 271
Lexus parking assist-sensor 272
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 280
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 285
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 289
Parking Support Brake function (static objects) 295
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) 298
Driving assist systems 300

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 305
Eco-friendly driving tips 308

5 Interior features

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge 312

5-2. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system 313
Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators 322

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list 325

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 328
Trunk features 331

5-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 333
Garage door opener 345

6 Maintenance and care

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 352
Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 355

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

6-2. Maintenance
Maintenance requirements 358
Scheduled maintenance 360
6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance
Do-it-yourself service precautions 370
Hood 371
Positioning a floor jack 372
Engine compartment 373
Tires 383
Tire inflation pressure 391
Wheels 392
Air conditioning filter 393
Electronic key battery 395
Checking and replacing fuses 397
Light bulbs 399

7 When trouble arises

7-1. Essential information
Emergency flashers 404
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 404
If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising 405
7-2. Steps to take in an emergency
If your vehicle needs to be towed 407
If you think something is wrong 410
Fuel pump shut off system 411
If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 412
If a warning message is displayed 421
If you have a flat tire 425
If the engine will not start 435
If you lose your keys 436
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 437
If the electronic key does not operate properly 437
If the battery is discharged 440
If your vehicle overheats 445
If the vehicle becomes stuck 447

8 Vehicle specifications

8-1. Specifications
Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 450
Fuel information 461
8-2. Customization
Customizable features 462
8-3. Items to initialize
Items to initialize 475

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 478
Alphabetical index 481

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

For your information

Main Owner's Manual

Please note that this manual applies to all models and explains all equipment, including options. Therefore, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

All specifications provided in this manual are current at the time of printing. However, because of the Lexus policy of continual product improvement, we reserve the right to make changes at any time without notice.

Depending on specifications, the vehicle shown in the illustrations may differ from your vehicle in terms of color and equipment.

Accessories, spare parts and modification of your Lexus

A wide variety of non-genuine spare parts and accessories for Lexus vehicles are currently available in the market. Using these spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products may adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, even though these parts may be approved by certain authorities in your country. Toyota Motor Corporation therefore cannot accept any liability or guarantee spare parts and accessories which are not genuine Lexus products, nor for replacement or installation involving such parts.

This vehicle should not be modified with non-genuine Lexus products. Modification with non-genuine Lexus products could affect its performance, safety or durability, and may even violate governmental regulations. In addition, damage or performance problems resulting from the modification may not be covered under warranty.

Also, remodeling like this will have an effect on advanced safety equipment such as Lexus Safety System + and there is a danger that it will not work properly or the danger that it may work in situations where it should not be working.

Installation of an RF-transmitter system

The installation of an RF-transmitter system in your vehicle could affect electronic systems such as:

- Multiport fuel injection system/sequential multiport fuel injection system
- Lexus Safety System +
- Cruise control system
- Anti-lock brake system
- SRS airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Be sure to check with your Lexus dealer for precautionary measures or special instructions regarding installation of an RF-transmitter system.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Further information regarding frequency bands, power levels, antenna positions and installation provisions for the installation of RF-transmitters, is available on request at your Lexus dealer.

Vehicle data recording

The vehicle is equipped with sophisticated computers that will record certain data, such as:

- Engine speed / Electric motor speed (traction motor speed)
- Accelerator status
- Brake status
- Vehicle speed
- Operation status of the driving assist systems
- Images from the cameras

Your vehicle is equipped with cameras. Contact your Lexus dealer for the location of recording cameras.

The recorded data varies according to the vehicle grade level, options and destinations with which it is equipped.

These computers do not record conversations or sounds, and only record images outside of the vehicle in certain situations.

● Data usage

Lexus may use the data recorded in this computer to diagnose malfunctions, conduct research and development, and improve quality.

Lexus will not disclose the recorded data to a third party except:

- With the consent of the vehicle owner or with the consent of the lessee if the vehicle is leased
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit
- For research purposes where the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner

● Recorded image information can be erased by your Lexus dealer.

The image recording function can be disabled. However, if the function is disabled, data from when the system operates will not be available.

Event data recorder

This vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. However, data may not be recorded depending on the severity and type of a crash.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record such data as:

● How various systems in your vehicle were operating;

● How far (if at all) the driver was depressing the accelerator and/or

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

brake pedal; and,

- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

NOTE: EDR data are recorded by your vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation. To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

- Disclosure of the EDR data

Lexus will not disclose the data recorded in an EDR to a third party except when:

- An agreement from the vehicle's owner (or the lessee for a leased vehicle) is obtained
- In response to an official request by the police, a court of law or a government agency
- For use by Lexus in a lawsuit

However, if necessary, Lexus may:

- Use the data for research on vehicle safety performance
- Disclose the data to a third party for research purposes without disclosing information about the specific vehicle or vehicle owner

Scrapping of your Lexus

The SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner devices in your Lexus contain explosive chemicals. If the vehicle is scrapped with the airbags and seat belt pretensioners left as they are, this may cause an accident such as fire. Be sure to have the systems of the SRS airbag and seat belt pretensioner removed and disposed of by a qualified service shop or by your Lexus dealer before you scrap your vehicle.

WARNING

General precautions while driving

Driving under the influence: Never drive your vehicle when under the influence of alcohol or drugs that have impaired your ability to operate your vehicle. Alcohol and certain drugs delay reaction time, impair judgment and reduce coordination, which could lead to an accident that could result in death or serious injury.

Defensive driving: Always drive defensively. Anticipate mistakes that other drivers or pedestrians might make and be ready to avoid accidents.

Driver distraction: Always give your full attention to driving. Anything that distracts the driver, such as adjusting controls, talking on a cellular phone or reading can result in a collision with resulting death or serious injury to you, your occupants or others.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ General precaution regarding children's safety

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof or panoramic moon roof, or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

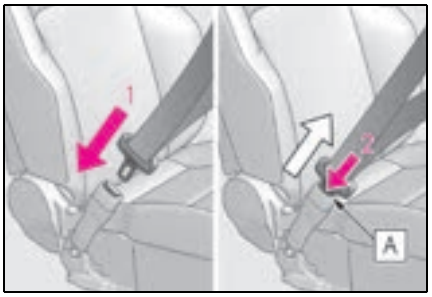
Reading this manual

Explains symbols used in this manual

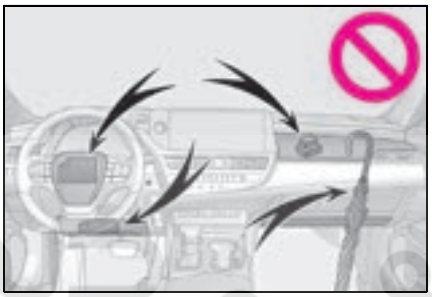
Symbols in this manual

Symbols	Meanings
	WARNING: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause death or serious injury to people.
	NOTICE: Explains something that, if not obeyed, could cause damage to or a malfunction in the vehicle or its equipment.
1 2 3...	Indicates operating or working procedures. Follow the steps in numerical order.

Symbols in illustrations



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the action (pushing, turning, etc.) used to operate switches and other devices.
	Indicates the outcome of an operation (e.g. a lid opens).



Symbols	Meanings
	Indicates the component or position being explained.
	Means **Do not**, **Do not do this**, or **Do not let this happen**.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

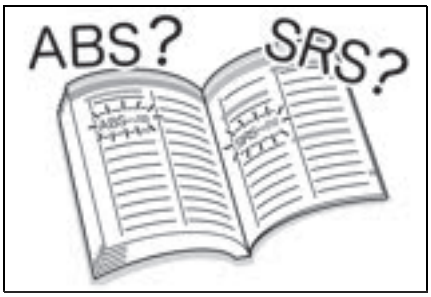
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

How to search



Searching by name

- Alphabetical index: →P.481



Searching by installation position

- Pictorial index: →P.12



Searching by symptom or sound

- What to do if... (Troubleshooting): →P.478



Searching by title

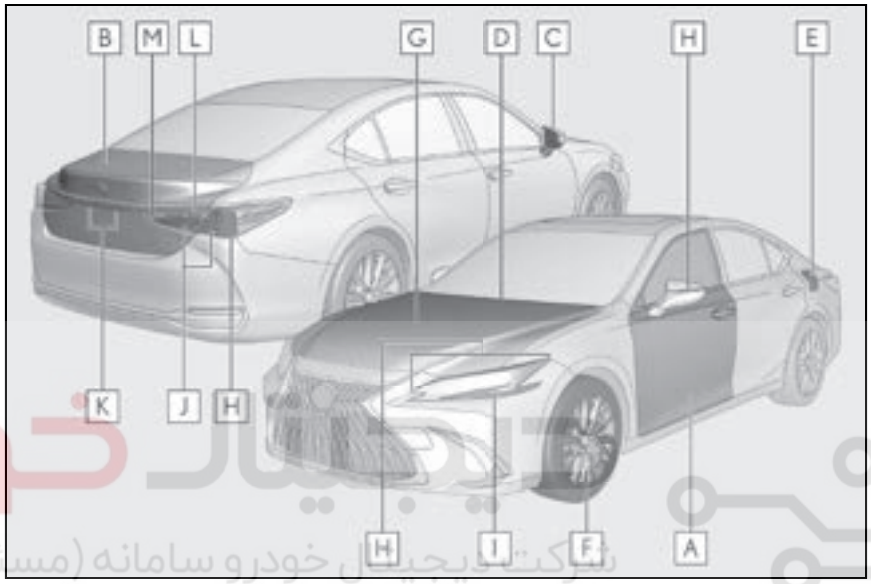
- Table of contents: →P.2

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Pictorial index

Exterior



A Doors P.124
Locking/unlocking P.124
Opening/closing the side windows P.153
Locking/unlocking by using the mechanical key P.437
Warning buzzer P.128

B Trunk P.129
Opening from inside the cabin P.131
Opening from outside P.132
Opening by using the mechanical key P.438
Warning buzzer P.128

C Outside rear view mirrors P.150
Adjusting the mirror angle P.150
Folding the mirrors P.151
Driving position memory* P.143
Defogging the mirrors P.314

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

D **Windshield wipers** **P.202**
Precautions against winter season P.305
To prevent freezing (windshield wiper de-icer)* P.318
Precautions against car wash* P.353

E **Fuel filler door** **P.208**
Refueling method P.208
Fuel type/fuel tank capacity P.453

F **Tires** **P.383**
Tire size/inflation pressure P.459
Winter tires/tire chains P.305
Checking/rotation/tire pressure warning system P.383
Coping with flat tires P.425

G **Hood** **P.371**
Opening P.371
Engine oil P.453
Coping with overheating P.445
Warning messages P.421

Light bulbs of the exterior lights for driving
(Replacing method: P.399, Watts: P.460)

H **Headlights/cornering lights** **P.190**
Turn signal lights **P.184**

I **Front position lights/daytime running lights** **P.190**

J **Tail/stop lights** **P.190**
Emergency brake signal P.301

K **License plate lights** **P.190**

L **Back up light**
Shifting the shift lever to R P.176, 181

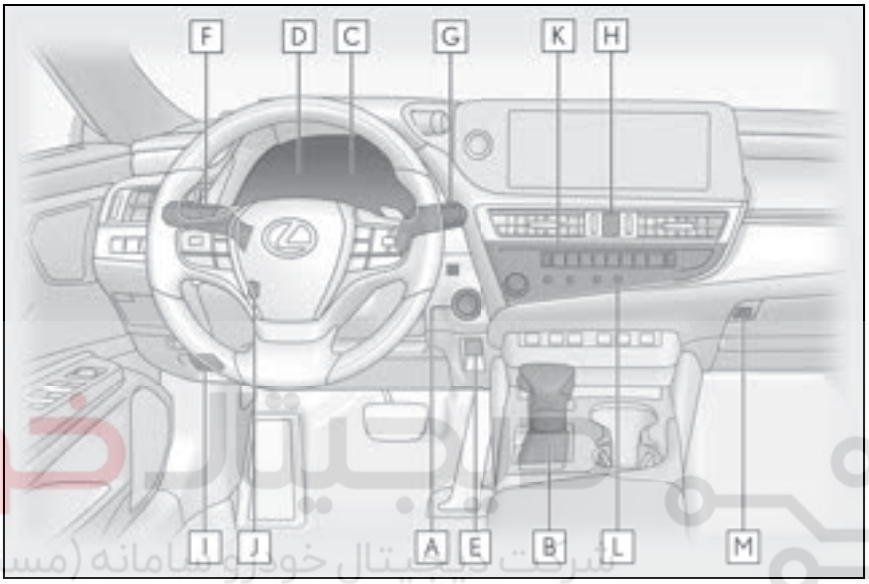
M **Rear fog lights*** **P.201**

*: If equipped

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Instrument panel (left-hand drive vehicles)



A **Engine switch** **P.171**
Starting the engine/changing the modes P.171
Emergency stop of the engine P.404
When the engine will not start P.435
Warning messages P.172, 421

B **Shift lever** **P.175, 179**
Changing the shift position P.176, 181
Precautions against towing P.407
When the shift lever does not move P.177, 182

C **Meters** **P.96, 100**
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights ... P.96, 98, 100, 104
Warning lights/indicator lights P.92
When the warning lights come on P.412

D **Multi-information display** **P.105**
Display P.105

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

When the warning messages are displayed P.421

E **Parking brake switch** **P.185**
Applying/releasing P.185
Precautions against winter season P.306
Warning buzzer/message P.186, 412, 422

F **Turn signal lever** **P.184**
Headlight switch **P.190**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.190
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*1 ..... P.193
AHB (Automatic High Beam)*1 ..... P.197
Multi Weather Lights*1 ..... P.200
Rear fog light*1 ..... P.201

G **Windshield wiper and washer switch** **P.202**
Usage P.202
Adding washer fluid P.381
Warning messages P.381, 422
Headlight cleaners*1 ..... P.202

H **Emergency flasher switch** **P.404**

I **Hood lock release lever** **P.371**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** **P.148**
Adjustment P.148
Driving position memory*1 ..... P.143

K **Air conditioning system** **P.313**
Usage P.313
Rear window defogger P.314

L **Audio system***2

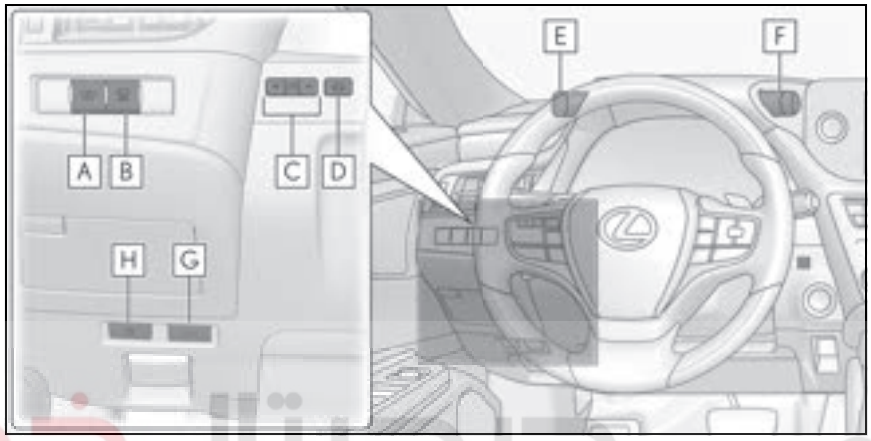
M **Trunk opener main switch** **P.135**

*1: If equipped
*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■Switches (left-hand drive vehicles)



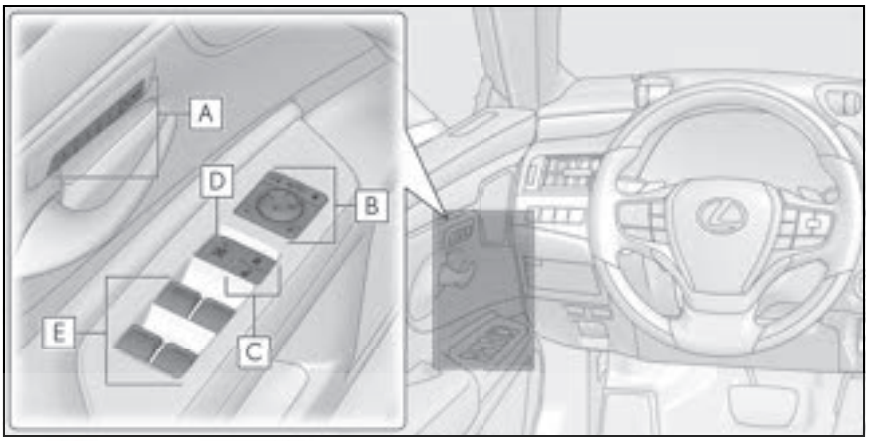
A Head-up display switch*1 ..... P.112
B Camera switch*1, 2
C Instrument panel light control switches P.98, 104
D "ODO TRIP" switch P.98, 104
E VSC OFF switch P.301
F Driving Mode Select switch P.263
G Trunk opener switch P.131
H Fuel filler door opener switch P.209

*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

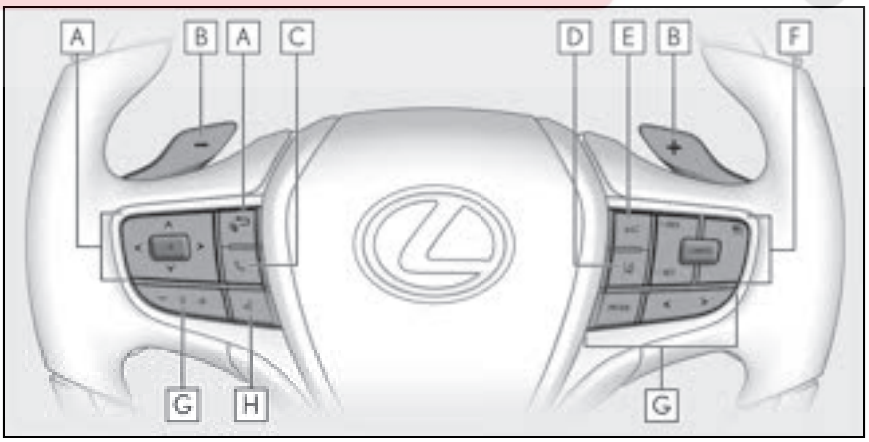
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



A Driving position memory switches* P.143
B Outside rear view mirror switches P.150
C Door lock switches P.127
D Window lock switch P.155
E Power window switches P.153

*: If equipped



A Meter control switches P.106
B Paddle shift switches P.177, 182

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

C TEL switch*1

D LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch*2 ..... P.226

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 ..... P.240

F Cruise control switches

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 ..... P.235

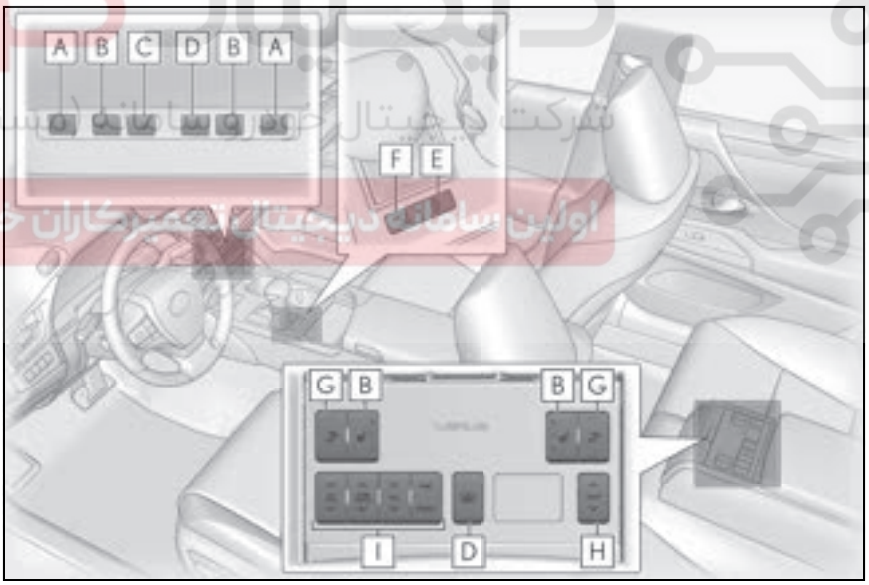
Cruise control*2 ..... P.256

G Audio remote control switches*1

H Talk switch*1

*1: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped



A Seat ventilator switches*1 ..... P.322

B Front seat heater switches*1 ..... P.322

Rear seat heater switches*1 ..... P.322

C Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P.322

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

D Rear sunshade switch*1 ..... P.343
E Stop & Start cancel switch*1 ..... P.270
F Brake hold switch P.187
G Rear seatback angle control switch*1 ..... P.142
H Rear temperature control switch*1 ..... P.316
I Audio control switches*1, 2

*1: If equipped

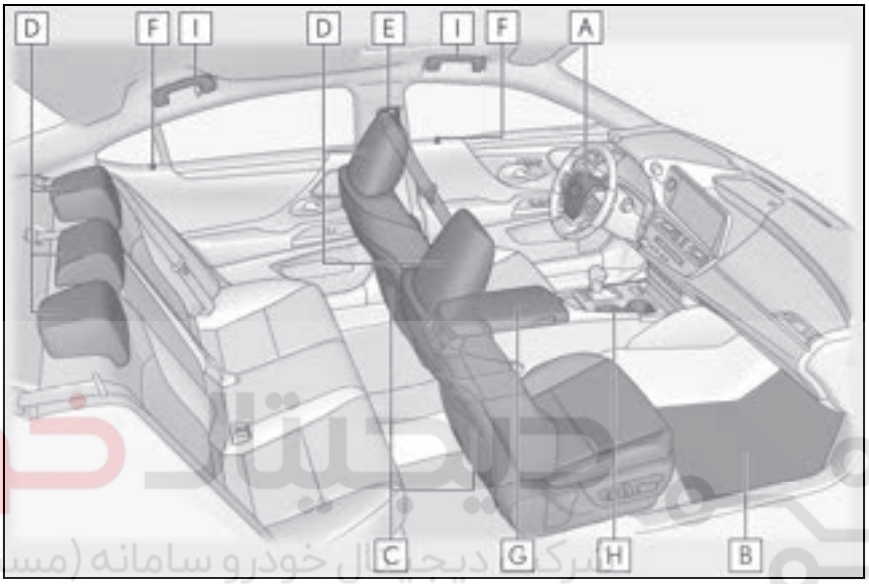
*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■Interior (left-hand drive vehicles)

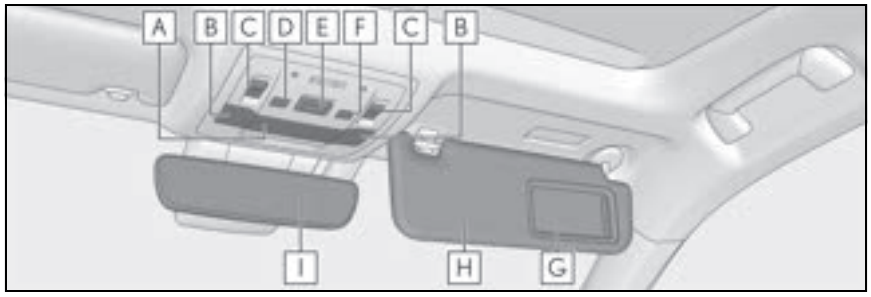


A SRS airbags P.38
B Floor mats P.32
C Front seats P.141
D Head restraints P.146
E Seat belts P.34
F Inside lock buttons P.127
G Console box P.329
H Cup holder P.329
I Assist grips P.342

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■Ceiling (left-hand drive vehicles)



A Interior lights P.326

B Personal lights P.326

C Moon roof switches *1 ..... P.155

Panoramic moon roof switches *1 ..... P.158

D Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch *1 ..... P.87

E "SOS" button *1 ..... P.80

F Door-linked personal light switch P.326

G Vanity mirrors P.333

H Sun visors *2,3 ..... P.333

I Inside rear view mirror P.149

Garage door opener *1 ..... P.345

*1: If equipped

*2: Except for Taiwan: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.54)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



*3: For Taiwan: DO NOT carry baby, infant and children on the front passenger seat. Except for the front passenger seat, NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.56)

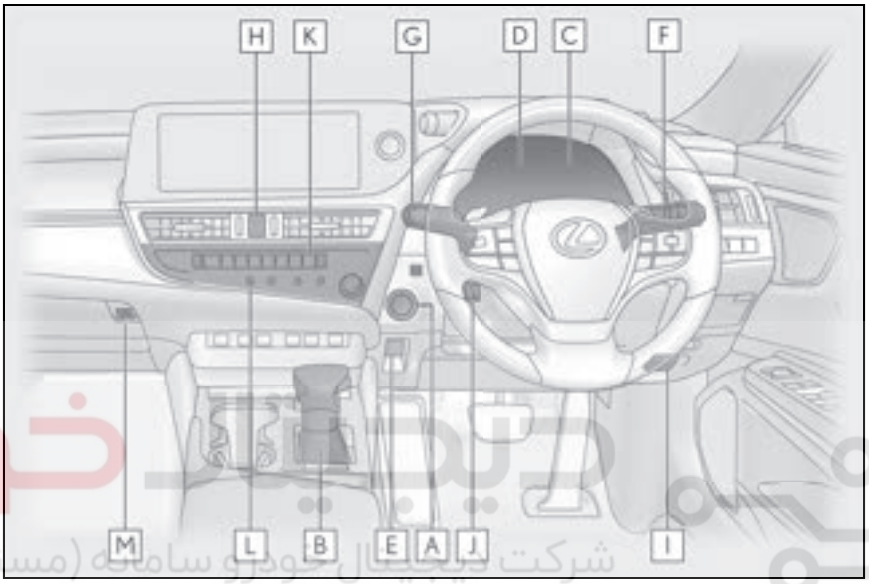


دیجیتال خودرو
سامانه دیجیتال خودرو و سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Instrument panel (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Engine switch P.171
Starting the engine/changing the modes P.171
Emergency stop of the engine P.404
When the engine will not start P.435
Warning messages P.172, 421

B Shift lever P.175
Changing the shift position P.176
Precautions against towing P.407
When the shift lever does not move P.177

C Meters P.96, 100
Reading the meters/adjusting the instrument panel lights ... P.96, 98, 100, 104
Warning lights/indicator lights P.92
When the warning lights come on P.412

D Multi-information display P.105
Display P.105

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

When the warning messages are displayed P.421

E **Parking brake switch** **P.185**
Applying/releasing P.185
Precautions against winter season P.306
Warning buzzer/message P.186, 412, 422

F **Turn signal lever** **P.184**
Headlight switch **P.190**
Headlights/front position lights/tail lights/daytime running lights P.190
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*1 ..... P.193
AHB (Automatic High Beam)*1 ..... P.197
Rear fog light P.201

G **Windshield wiper and washer switch** **P.202**
Usage P.202
Adding washer fluid P.381
Warning messages P.381, 422
Headlight cleaners*1 ..... P.202

H **Emergency flasher switch** **P.404**

I **Hood lock release lever** **P.371**

J **Tilt and telescopic steering control switch** **P.148**
Adjustment P.148
Driving position memory*1 ..... P.143

K **Air conditioning system** **P.313**
Usage P.313
Rear window defogger P.314

L **Audio system***2

M **Trunk opener main switch** **P.135**

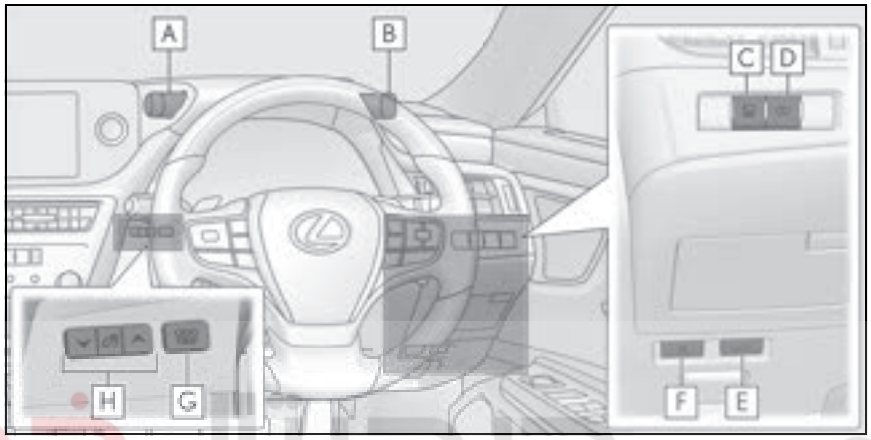
*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■Switches (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Driving Mode Select switch P.263

B VSC OFF switch P.301

C Camera switch*1, 2

D Head-up display switch*1 ..... P.112

E Trunk opener switch P.131

F Fuel filler door opener switch P.209

G "ODO TRIP" switch P.98, 104

H Instrument panel light control switches P.98, 104

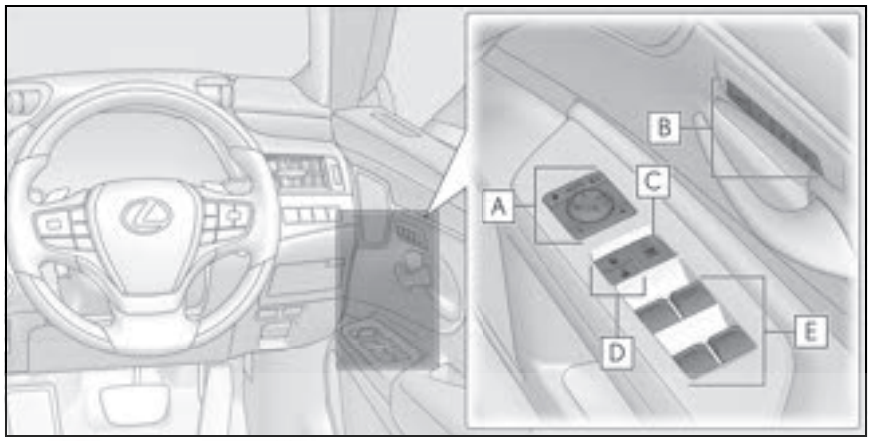
*1: If equipped

*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

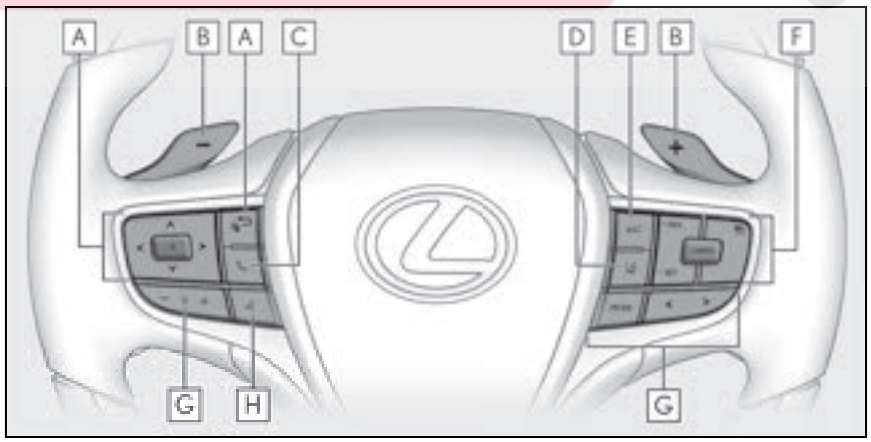
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



A Outside rear view mirror switches P.150
B Driving position memory switches* P.143
C Window lock switch P.155
D Door lock switches P.127
E Power window switches P.153

*: If equipped



A Meter control switches P.106
B Paddle shift switches P.177

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیر کالای خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

C TEL switch*1

D LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch*2 ..... P.226

E Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch*2 ..... P.240, 250

F Cruise control switches

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*2 ..... P.235

Dynamic radar cruise control*2 ..... P.246

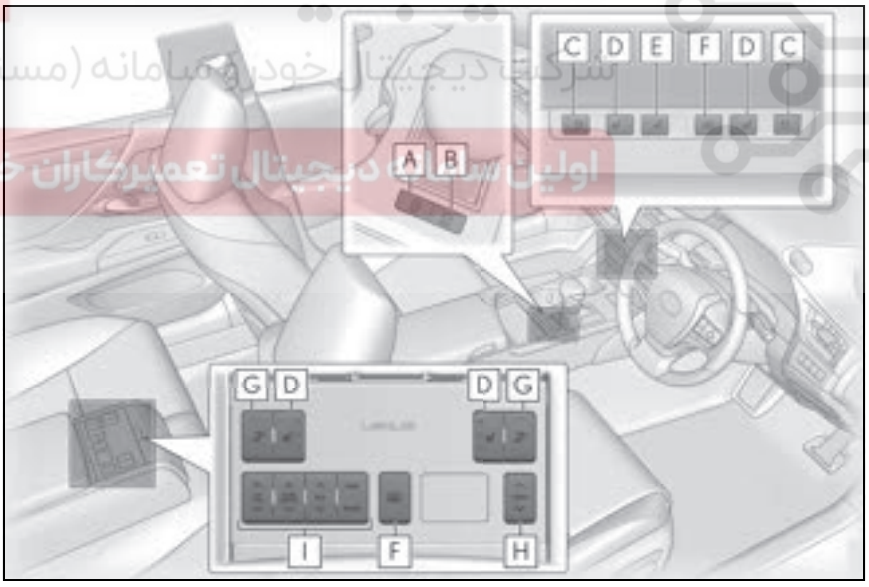
Cruise control*2 ..... P.256

G Audio remote control switches*1

H Talk switch*1

*1: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*2: If equipped



A Stop & Start cancel switch P.270

B Brake hold switch P.187

C Seat ventilator switches*1 ..... P.322

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

D Front seat heater switches*1 ..... P.322
Rear seat heater switches*1 ..... P.322
E Heated steering wheel switch*1 ..... P.322
F Rear sunshade switch*1 ..... P.343
G Rear seatback angle control switch*1 ..... P.142
H Rear temperature control switch*1 ..... P.316
I Audio control switches*1, 2

*1: If equipped

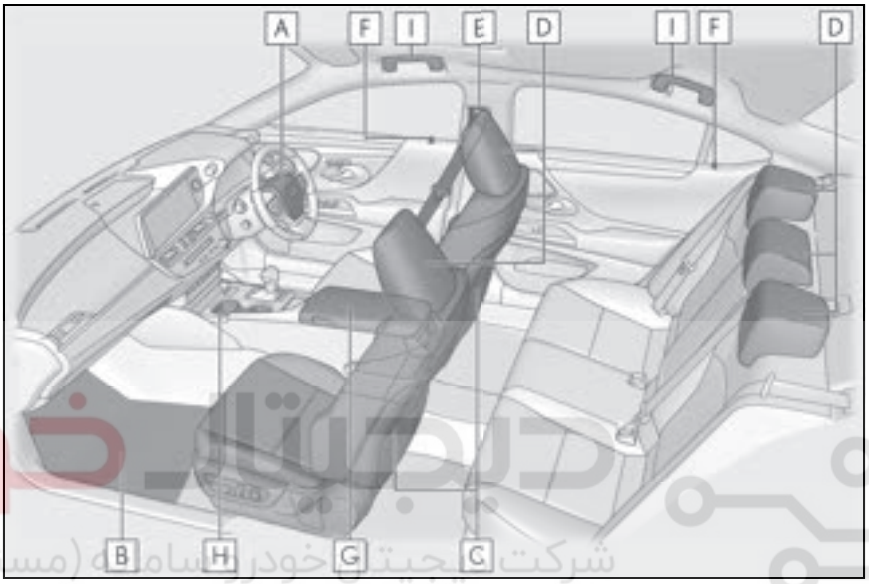
*2: Refer to "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Interior (right-hand drive vehicles)

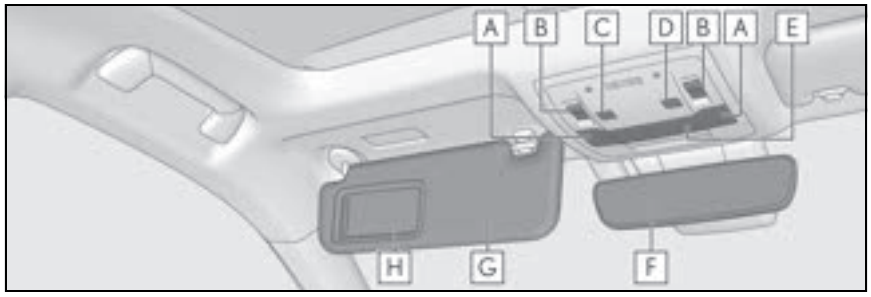


A SRS airbags P.38
B Floor mats P.32
C Front seats P.141
D Head restraints P.146
E Seat belts P.34
F Inside lock buttons P.127
G Console box P.329
H Cup holder P.329
I Assist grips P.342

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■Ceiling (right-hand drive vehicles)



A Personal lights P.326

B Moon roof switches *1 ..... P.155

Panoramic moon roof switches *1 ..... P.158

C Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel *1 switch P.87

D Door-linked personal light switch P.326

E Interior lights P.326

F Inside rear view mirror P.149

G Sun visors *2 ..... P.333

H Vanity mirrors P.333

*1: If equipped

*2: NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIR-BAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur. (→P.54)



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

1-1. For safe use

Before driving 32
For safe driving 33
Seat belts 34
SRS airbags 38
Pop Up Hood 45
Exhaust gas precautions 47

1-2. Child safety

Airbag manual on-off system ... 49
Riding with children 50
Child restraint systems 51

1-3. Emergency assistance

eCall 80

1-4. Theft deterrent system

Engine immobilizer system 83
Double locking system 84
Alarm 85

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Before driving

Observe the following before starting off in the vehicle to ensure safety of driving.

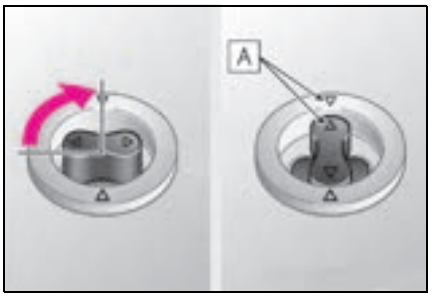
Installing floor mats

Use only floor mats designed specifically for vehicles of the same model and model year as your vehicle. Fix them securely in place onto the carpet.

1 Insert the retaining hooks (clips) into the floor mat eyelets.



2 Turn the upper knob of each retaining hook (clip) to secure the floor mats in place.



Always align the △ marks [A].

The shape of the retaining hooks (clips) may differ from that shown in the illustration.

⚠ WARNING

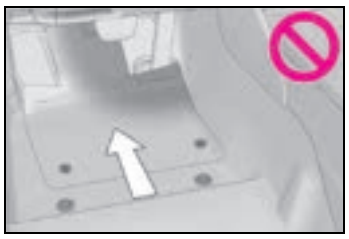
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause the driver's floor mat to slip, possibly interfering with the pedals while driving. An unexpectedly high speed may result or it may become difficult to stop the vehicle. This could lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ When installing the driver's floor mat

- Do not use floor mats designed for other models or different model year vehicles, even if they are Lexus Genuine floor mats.
- Only use floor mats designed for the driver's seat.
- Always install the floor mat securely using the retaining hooks (clips) provided.
- Do not use two or more floor mats on top of each other.
- Do not place the floor mat bottom-side up or upside-down.

■ Before driving

- Check that the floor mat is securely fixed in the correct place with all the provided retaining hooks (clips). Be especially careful to perform this check after cleaning the floor.



- With the engine stopped and the shift lever in P, fully depress each pedal to the floor to make sure it does not interfere with the floor mat.

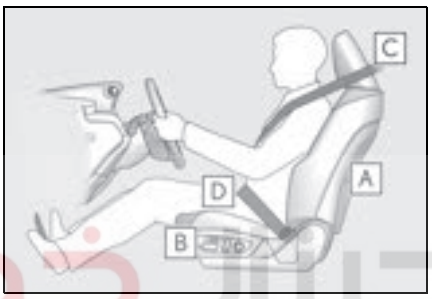
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

For safe driving

For safe driving, adjust the seat and mirror to an appropriate position before driving.

Correct driving posture



A Adjust the angle of the seatback so that you are sitting straight up and so that you do not have to lean forward to steer. (→P.141)

B Adjust the seat so that you can depress the pedals fully and so that your arms bend slightly at the elbow when gripping the steering wheel. (→P.141)

C Lock the head restraint in place with the center of the head restraint closest to the top of your ears. (→P.146)

D Wear the seat belt correctly. (→P.35)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the position of the driver's seat while driving.
  Doing so could cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.
- Do not place a cushion between the driver or passenger and the seatback.
  A cushion may prevent correct posture from being achieved, and reduce the effectiveness of the seat belt and head restraint.
- Do not place anything under the front seats.
  Objects placed under the front seats may become jammed in the seat tracks and stop the seat from locking in place. This may lead to an accident and the adjustment mechanism may also be damaged.
- Always observe the legal speed limit when driving on public roads.
- When driving over long distances, take regular breaks before you start to feel tired.
  Also, if you feel tired or sleepy while driving, do not force yourself to continue driving and take a break immediately.

Correct use of the seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle. (→P.35)
Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.51)

Adjusting the mirrors

Make sure that you can see backward clearly by adjusting the inside and outside rear view mirrors properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

(→P.149, 150)

Seat belts

Make sure that all occupants are wearing their seat belts before driving the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of injury in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving or an accident.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Wearing a seat belt

- Ensure that all passengers wear a seat belt.
- Always wear a seat belt properly.
- Each seat belt should be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at once, including children.
- For Taiwan: Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use seat belt. However, if a child is not large enough to properly wear the vehicle' seat belt, ensure that they are seated in a rear seat and use an appropriate child restraint system.
- Except for Taiwan: Lexus recommends that children be seated in the rear seat and always use a seat belt and/or an appropriate child restraint system.
- To achieve a proper seating position, do not recline the seat more than necessary. The seat belt is most effective when the occupants are sitting up straight and well back in the seats.
- Do not wear the shoulder belt under your arm.
- Always wear your seat belt low and snug across your hips.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ Pregnant women

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.35)

Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants, extending the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and avoiding belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area.

If the seat belt is not worn properly, not only the pregnant woman, but also the fetus could suffer death or serious injury as a result of sudden braking or a collision.



■ People suffering illness

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt in the proper way. (→P.35)

■ When children are in the vehicle

→P.77

■ Seat belt damage and wear

- Do not damage the seat belts by allowing the belt, plate, or buckle to be jammed in the door.
- Inspect the seat belt system periodically. Check for cuts, fraying, and loose parts. Do not use a damaged seat belt until it is replaced. Damaged seat belts cannot protect an occupant from death or serious injury.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function correctly, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.
- Replace the seat assembly, including the belts, if your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, even if there is no obvious damage.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. Have any necessary repairs carried out by your Lexus dealer. Inappropriate handling may lead to incorrect operation.

Correct use of the seat belts



- Extend the shoulder belt so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.
- Position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seatback. Sit up straight and well back in the seat.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

● Do not twist the seat belt.

■ Child seat belt usage

The seat belts of your vehicle were principally designed for persons of adult size.

● Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt. (→P.51)

● When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage.

■ Seat belt regulations

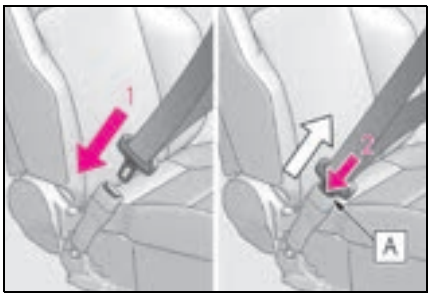
If seat belt regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for seat belt replacement or installation.

■ Rear seat belt

Use the seat belt after passing it through the guide if the seat belt comes free from the guide.



Fastening and releasing the seat belt



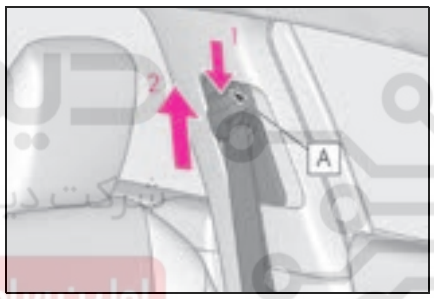
1 To fasten the seat belt, push the plate into the buckle until a click sound is heard.

2 To release the seat belt, press the release button A .

■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the belt during a sudden stop or on impact. It may also lock if you lean forward too quickly. A slow, easy motion will allow the belt to extend so that you can move around fully.

Adjusting the seat belt shoulder anchor height (front seats)



1 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor down while pressing the release button A .

2 Push the seat belt shoulder anchor up while pressing the release button A .

Move the height adjuster up and down as needed until you hear a click.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

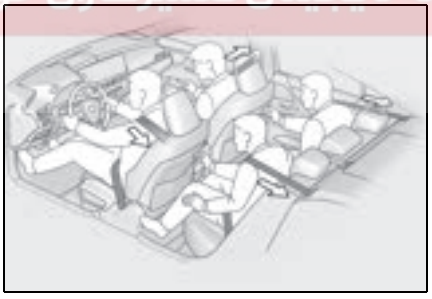
■ Adjustable shoulder anchor

Always make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of your shoulder. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the amount of protection in an accident and cause death or serious injuries in the event of a sudden stop, sudden swerve or accident.

Seat belt pretensioners (front and outboard rear seats)

The pretensioners help the seat belts to quickly restrain the occupants by retracting the seat belts when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe frontal or side collision.

The pretensioners do not activate in the event of a minor frontal impact, a minor side impact, a rear impact or a vehicle rollover.



■ Replacing the belt after the pretensioner has been activated

If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the pretensioner will activate for the first collision, but will not activate for the second or subsequent collisions.

■ PCS-linked seat belt pretensioner control (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)

If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) determines that the possibility of a collision with a vehicle is high, the seat belt pretensioners will be prepared to operate.

WARNING

■ Seat belt pretensioners

If the pretensioner has activated, the SRS warning light will come on. In that case, the seat belt cannot be used again and must be replaced at your Lexus dealer. Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

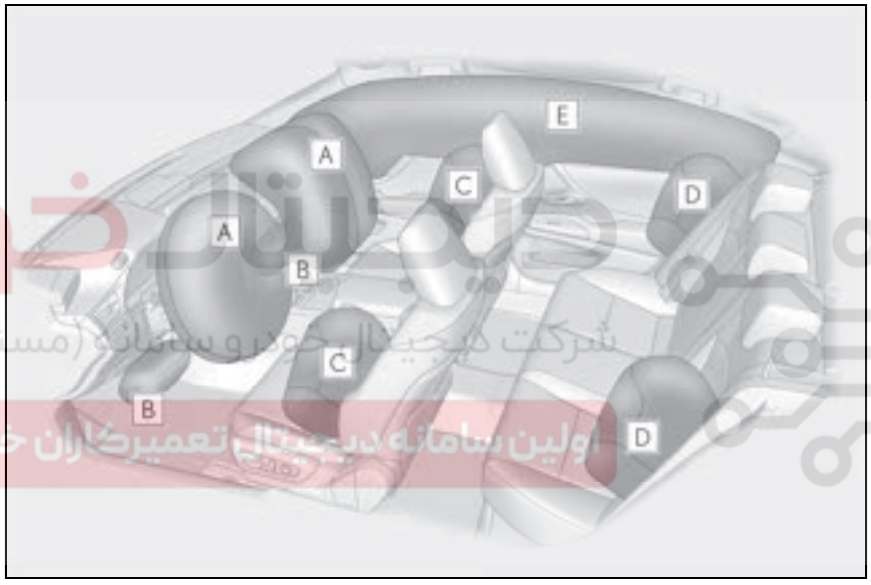
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

SRS airbags

The SRS airbags inflate when the vehicle is subjected to certain types of severe impacts that may cause significant injury to the occupants. They work together with the seat belts to help reduce the risk of death or serious injury.

SRS airbag system

■ Location of the SRS airbags



▶ SRS front airbags

A SRS driver airbag/front passenger airbag
Can help protect the head and chest of the driver and front passenger from impact with interior components

B SRS knee airbags
Can help provide driver and front passenger protection

▶ SRS side and curtain shield airbags

C SRS front side airbags
Can help protect the torso of the front seat occupants

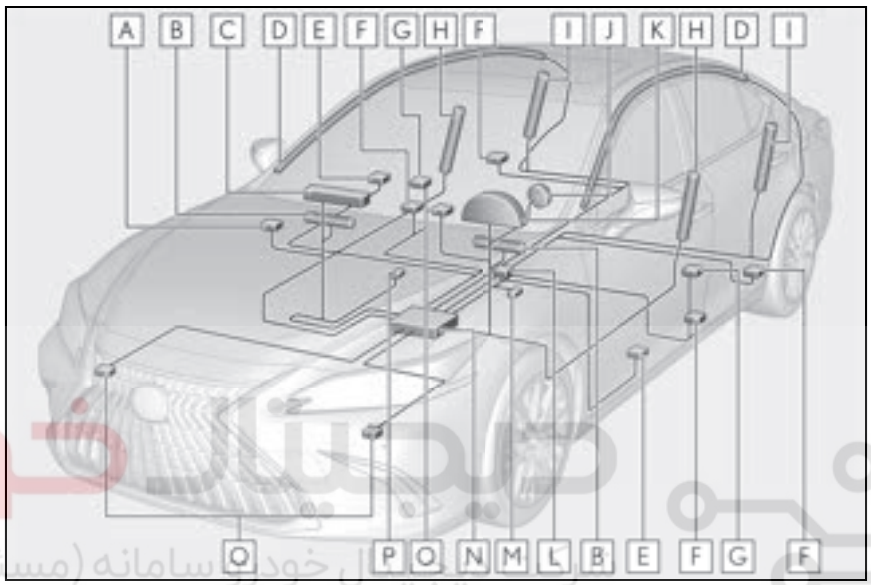
D SRS rear side airbags
Can help protect the torso of occupants in the rear outer seats

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

E SRS curtain shield airbags
Can help protect primarily the head of occupants in the outer seats

SRS airbag system components



A Airbag manual on-off switch (if equipped)
B Knee airbags
C Front passenger airbag
D Curtain shield airbags
E Side impact sensors (front door)
F Seat belt pretensioners and force limiters
G Side impact sensors (front)
H Front side airbags
I Rear side airbags
J Driver airbag
K SRS warning light
L Driver's seat position sensor
M Driver's seat belt buckle switch

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

N Airbag sensor assembly

O "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator lights (if equipped)

P Front passenger's seat belt buckle switch

Q Front impact sensors

The main SRS airbag system components are shown above. The SRS airbag system is controlled by the airbag sensor assembly. As the airbags deploy, a chemical reaction in the inflators quickly fills the airbags with non-toxic gas to help restrain the motion of the occupants.

If the SRS airbags deploy (inflate)

- Slight abrasions, burns, bruising etc., may be sustained from SRS airbags, due to the extremely high speed deployment (inflation) by hot gases.
- A loud noise and white powder will be emitted.
- Parts of the airbag module (steering wheel hub, airbag cover and inflator) as well as the front seats, parts of the front and rear pillars, and roof side rails, may be hot for several minutes. The airbag itself may also be hot.
- The windshield may crack.
- All of the doors will be unlocked. (→P.125)
- The brakes and stop lights will be controlled automatically. (→P.300)
- The interior lights will turn on automatically. (→P.326)
- The emergency flashers will turn on automatically. (→P.404)
- Fuel supply to the engine will be stopped. (→P.411)
- Vehicles with eCall: If any of the following situations occur, the system is designed to send an emergency call to the eCall control center, notifying them of the vehicle's location (without needing to push the "SOS" button) and an agent will attempt to speak with the occupants to ascertain the level of emergency and assistance required. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the agent automatically treats the call as an emergency and helps to dispatch the necessary emergency services. (→P.80)
  - An SRS airbag is deployed.
  - A seat belt pretensioner is activated.
  - The vehicle is involved in a severe rear-end collision.

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS front airbags)

- The SRS front airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to an approximately 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph] frontal collision with a fixed wall that does not move or deform). However, this threshold velocity will be considerably higher in the following situations:
  - If the vehicle strikes an object, such as a parked vehicle or sign pole, which can move or deform on impact
  - If the vehicle is involved in an underride collision, such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "underrides", or goes under, the bed of a truck
- Depending on the type of collision, it is possible that only the seat belt pretensioners will activate.

SRS airbag deployment conditions (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

- The SRS side and curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of an impact that exceeds the set threshold level (the level of force corresponding to the impact force produced by an approximately 1500 kg [3300 lb.] vehicle colliding with the vehicle cabin from a direction per-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

pendicular to the vehicle orientation at an approximate speed of 20 - 30 km/h [12 - 18 mph]).

- Both SRS curtain shield airbags will deploy in the event of a side collision on either side.
- Both SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy in the event of a severe frontal collision.

Conditions under which the SRS airbags may deploy (inflate), other than a collision

The SRS front airbags and SRS curtain shield airbags may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle. Some examples are shown in the illustration.

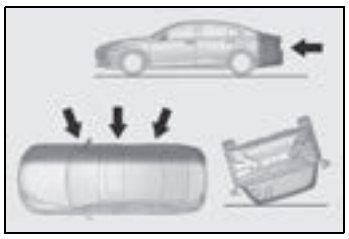
- Hitting a curb, edge of pavement or hard surface
- Falling into or jumping over a deep hole
- Landing hard or falling



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS front airbags)

The SRS front airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a side or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed frontal collision. But, whenever a collision of any type causes sufficient forward deceleration of the vehicle, deployment of the SRS front airbags may occur.

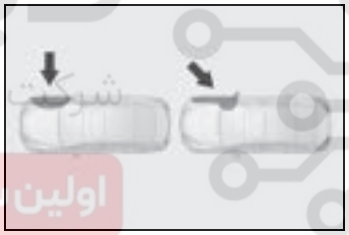
- Collision from the side
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



Types of collisions that may not deploy the SRS airbags (SRS side and curtain shield airbags)

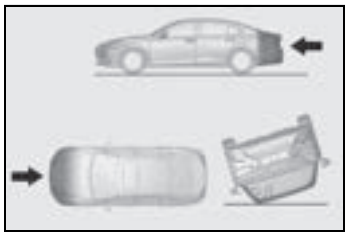
The SRS side and curtain shield airbags may not activate if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from the side at certain angles, or a collision to the side of the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment.

- Collision from the side to the vehicle body other than the passenger compartment
- Collision from the side at an angle



The SRS side airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a frontal or rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved in a low-speed side collision.

- Collision from the front
- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



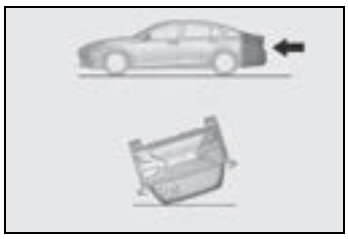
The SRS curtain shield airbags do not generally inflate if the vehicle is involved in a rear collision, if it rolls over, or if it is involved

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

in a low-speed side or low-speed frontal collision.

- Collision from the rear
- Vehicle rollover



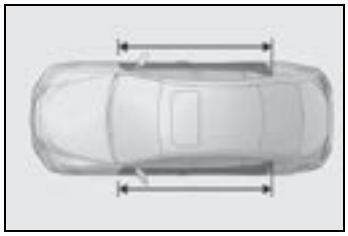
When to contact your Lexus dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle will require inspection and/or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

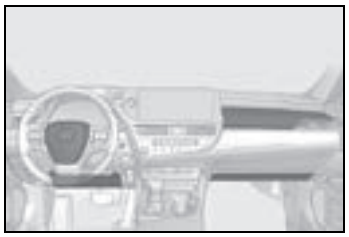
- Any of the SRS airbags have been inflated.
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS front airbags to inflate.



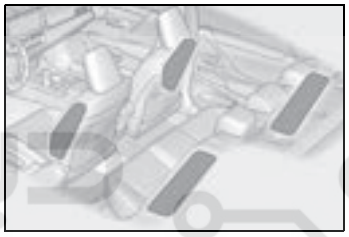
- A portion of a door or its surrounding area is damaged, deformed or has had a hole made in it, or the vehicle was involved in an accident that was not severe enough to cause the SRS side and curtain shield airbags to inflate.



- The pad section of the steering wheel, dashboard near the front passenger airbag or lower portion of the instrument panel is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The surface of the seats with the SRS side airbag is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



- The portion of the front pillars, rear pillars or roof side rail garnishes (padding) containing the SRS curtain shield airbags inside is scratched, cracked, or otherwise damaged.



WARNING

SRS airbag precautions

Observe the following precautions regarding the SRS airbags.
Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

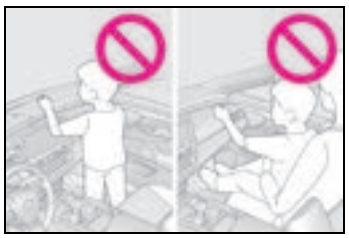
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- The driver and all passengers in the vehicle must wear their seat belts properly.
  The SRS airbags are supplemental devices to be used with the seat belts.
- The SRS driver airbag deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the driver is very close to the airbag.
  Since the risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 50 - 75 mm (2 - 3 in.) of inflation, placing yourself 250 mm (10 in.) from your driver airbag provides you with a clear margin of safety. This distance is measured from the center of the steering wheel to your breastbone. If you sit less than 250 mm (10 in.) away now, you can change your driving position in several ways:
  - Move your seat to the rear as far as you can while still reaching the pedals comfortably.
  - Slightly recline the back of the seat. Although vehicle designs vary, many drivers can achieve the 250 mm (10 in.) distance, even with the driver seat all the way forward, simply by reclining the back of the seat somewhat. If reclining the back of your seat makes it hard to see the road, raise yourself by using a firm, non-slippery cushion, or raise the seat if your vehicle has that feature.
  - If your steering wheel is adjustable, tilt it downward. This points the airbag toward your chest instead of your head and neck.
    The seat should be adjusted as recommended above, while still maintaining control of the foot pedals, steering wheel, and your view of the instrument panel controls.
- The SRS front passenger airbag also deploys with considerable force, and can cause death or serious injury especially if the front passenger is very close to the airbag. The front passenger seat should be as far from the airbag as possible with the seatback adjusted, so the front passenger sits upright.
- Improperly seated and/or restrained infants and children can be killed or seriously injured by a deploying airbag. An infant or child who is too small to use a seat belt should be properly secured using a child restraint system. Lexus strongly recommends that all infants and children be placed in the rear seats of the vehicle and properly restrained. The rear seats are safer for infants and children than the front passenger seat. (→P.51)
- Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.



- Do not allow a child to stand in front of the SRS front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of a front passenger.



- Do not allow the front seat occupants to hold items on their knees.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Do not lean against the door, the roof side rail or the front, side and rear pillars.



- Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seats toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.



- Do not attach anything to or lean anything against areas such as the dashboard, steering wheel pad and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when the SRS driver, front passenger and knee airbags deploy.



- Do not attach anything to areas such as a door, windshield, side window, front or rear pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.



- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. All of these items could become projectiles and may cause death or serious injury, should the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy.
- If a vinyl cover is put on the area where the SRS knee airbag will deploy, be sure to remove it.
- Do not use seat accessories which cover the parts where the SRS side airbags inflate as they may interfere with inflation of the SRS airbags. Such accessories may prevent the side airbags from activating correctly, disable the system or cause the side airbags to inflate accidentally, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not strike or apply significant levels of force to the area of the SRS airbag components or the front doors. Doing so can cause the SRS airbags to malfunction.
- Do not touch any of the component parts immediately after the SRS airbags have deployed (inflated) as they may be hot.
- If breathing becomes difficult after the SRS airbags have deployed, open a door or window to allow fresh air in, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Wash off any residue as soon as possible to prevent skin irritation.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If the areas where the SRS airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel pad and front and rear pillar garnishes, are damaged or cracked, have them replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ Modification and disposal of SRS airbag system components

Do not dispose of your vehicle or perform any of the following modifications without consulting your Lexus dealer. The SRS airbags may malfunction or deploy (inflate) accidentally, causing death or serious injury.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of the SRS airbags
- Repairs, modifications, removal or replacement of the steering wheel, instrument panel, dashboard, seats or seat upholstery, front, side and rear pillars, roof side rails, front door panels, front door trims or front door speakers
- Modifications to the front door panel (such as making a hole in it)
- Repairs or modifications of the front fender, front bumper, or side of the occupant compartment
- Installation of a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.), snow plows or winches
- Modifications to the vehicle's suspension system
- Installation of electronic devices such as RF-transmitter and CD players

Pop Up Hood

In the event of a frontal collision with a body, such as a pedestrian, the Pop Up Hood system raises the hood to reduce the possibility of a serious impact to the pedestrian's head area by adding clearance to the engine compartment.

When the sensors located at the back of the front bumper detect a frontal impact with a body, such as a pedestrian, which meets or exceeds the threshold level while the vehicle is being driven within the operational speed range, the system operates.

System components



A Sensors

B Hood

C Lifters

■ Pop Up Hood precautions

- Before scrapping your vehicle, make sure to contact your Lexus dealer.
- The Pop Up Hood system cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

replaced by your Lexus dealer.

■ **PCS-linked Pop Up Hood operation control (if equipped)**

If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) determines that the possibility of a collision with a pedestrian or bicyclist is high, the Pop Up Hood will be prepared to operate.

■ **Pop Up Hood operational conditions**

The Pop Up Hood will operate when the vehicle detects an impact such as the following:

- The front bumper detects a frontal impact equivalent to or greater than that of a pedestrian while the vehicle being driven within the operational speed range of approximately 25 to 55 km/h (16 to 34 mph). (The system is operated by an impact of threshold level or greater, even in the case of a minor collision that may not leave a trace on the front bumper. Also, depending on the impact conditions or vehicle speed, the system may operate by a collision with a light or small object or a small animal.)
- In other situations such as the following, the system may operate when an impact is applied to the lower part of the vehicle or front bumper:
  - Colliding with a curb
  - Falling into a deep hole
  - Landing hard
  - Hitting the slope of a parking lot, an undulating road, a protruding object or falling object

■ **Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood may not operate properly**

- If a pedestrian collides with the right or left corner of the front bumper or the side of the vehicle. As such impacts may be difficult to detect, the system may not operate.
- If the vehicle speed is not detected correctly, such as if the vehicle is sliding sideways, the system may not operate properly.

■ **Conditions under which the Pop Up Hood will not operate**

The Pop Up Hood will not operate in the following situations:

- Colliding with a lying person
- A frontal impact applied to the front bumper while driving at speeds outside of the operational speed range
- A side impact or rear impact
- A vehicle rollover (In some accident situations, the Pop Up Hood may operate.)

WARNING

■ **When the Pop Up Hood is operated**

- Do not pull the hood lock release lever. Doing so after the Pop Up Hood has operated will further raise the hood and may cause an injury. Do not drive with the hood raised, as doing so may block the driver's vision, possibly causing an accident.
- Do not forcibly push down the hood. As the popped up hood cannot be lowered by hand, doing so may deform the hood or cause an injury.
- If the Pop Up Hood has operated, have it replaced by your Lexus dealer. If the Pop Up Hood has operated, stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not touch the lifters immediately after the Pop Up Hood has operated, as the lifters may be hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ **Pop Up Hood precautions**

- Make sure to close the hood before driving, as the system may not operate properly if the hood is not fully closed.
- Make sure that all 4 tires are of the specified size and inflated to the specified tire pressure. If tires of a different size are used, the system may not operate properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- If something has hit the area around the front bumper, the sensors may be damaged even if the Pop Up Hood has not operated. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove or repair the parts or wiring of the Pop Up Hood, as doing so may cause accidental operation or prevent the system from operating properly. If repair or replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not remove such components as the front bumper, hood or suspension, or replace them with non-genuine parts, as doing so may prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not install anything to the front bumper or hood, as doing so may prevent the sensors from detecting an impact correctly and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not close the hood with force or apply load to the lifters, as doing so may damage the lifters and prevent the system from operating properly.
- Do not modify the suspension, as changes made to the vehicle height may prevent the system from operating properly.

Exhaust gas precautions

Harmful substance to the human body is included in exhaust gases if inhaled.

WARNING

Exhaust gases include harmful carbon monoxide (CO), which is colorless and odorless. Observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so may cause exhaust gases enter the vehicle and may lead to an accident caused by light-headedness, or may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

■ Important points while driving

- Keep the trunk lid closed.
- If you smell exhaust gases in the vehicle even when the trunk lid is closed, open the windows and have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ When parking

- If the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area or a closed area, such as a garage, stop the engine.
- Do not leave the vehicle with the engine running for a long time.
  If such a situation cannot be avoided, park the vehicle in an open space and ensure that exhaust fumes do not enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not leave the engine running in an area with snow build-up, or where it is snowing. If snowbanks build up around the vehicle while the engine is running, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ Exhaust pipe

The exhaust system needs to be checked periodically. If there is a hole or crack caused by corrosion, damage to a joint or abnormal exhaust noise, be sure to have the vehicle inspected and repaired by your Lexus dealer.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Airbag manual on-off system*

*: If equipped

This system deactivates the front passenger airbag and front passenger knee airbag.
Only deactivate the airbags when using a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

System components



A "PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator

"PASSENGER AIR BAG" and "ON" indicator lights turn on when the airbag system is on, and about after 60 seconds they go off (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).

B Airbag manual on-off switch

■ **"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator information**

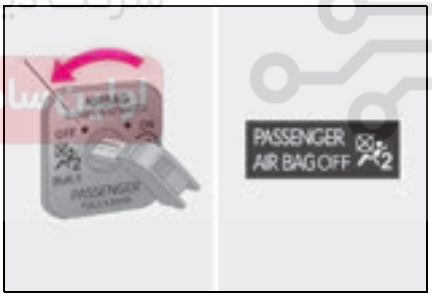
If any of the following problems occur, it is possible that there is a malfunction in the system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

- The "OFF" indicator does not illuminate when the airbag manual on-off switch is set to "OFF".
- The indicator light does not change when the airbag manual on-off switch is switched to "ON" or "OFF".

Deactivating the airbags for the front passenger

Insert the mechanical key into the cylinder and rotate to the "OFF" position.

The "OFF" indicator light turns on (only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode).



WARNING

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

For safety reasons, always install a child restraint system in a rear seat. In the event that the rear seat cannot be used, the front seat can be used as long as the airbag manual on-off system is set to "OFF".
If the airbag manual on-off system is left on, the strong impact of the airbag deployment (inflation) may cause serious injury or even death.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When a child restraint system is not installed on the front passenger seat

Ensure that the airbag manual on-off system is set to "ON".
If it is left off, the airbag will not deploy in the event of an accident, which may result in serious injury or even death.

Riding with children

Observe the following precautions when children are in the vehicle.

Use a child restraint system appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.

- It is recommended that children sit in the rear seats to avoid accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- Use the rear door child-protector lock or the window lock switch to avoid children opening the door while driving or operating the power window accidentally. (→P.128, 155)
- Do not let small children operate equipment which may catch or pinch body parts, such as the power window, hood, trunk, seats etc.

WARNING

■ When children are in the vehicle

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle, and never allow children to have or use the key.

Children may be able to start the vehicle or shift the vehicle into neutral. There is also a danger that children may injure themselves by playing with the windows, the moon roof (if equipped), panoramic moon roof (if equipped), or other features of the vehicle. In addition, heat build-up or extremely cold temperatures inside the vehicle can be fatal to children.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Child restraint systems

Before installing a child restraint system in the vehicle, there are precautions that need to be observed, different types of child restraint systems, as well as installation methods, etc., written in this manual.

Use a child restraint system when riding with a small child that cannot properly use a seat belt. For the child's safety, install the child restraint system to a rear seat. Be sure to follow the installation method that is in the operation manual enclosed with the restraint system.

Table of contents

Points to remember: P.51

When using a child restraint system: P.52

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position: P.57, 62, 66, 71

Child restraint system installation method: P.74

- Fixed with a seat belt: P.75
- Fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage: P.77
- Using a top tether anchorage: P.78

Points to remember

- If child restraint system regulations exist in the country where you reside, please contact your Lexus dealer for the child restraint system installation.
- Use a child restraint system until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- Choose a child restraint system appropriate to the age and size of the child.
- Note that not all child restraint systems can fit in all vehicles.
  Before using or purchasing a child restraint system, check the compatibility of the child restraint system with seat positions. (→P.57, 62, 66, 71)

WARNING

■ When a child is riding

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- For effective protection in automobile accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained, using a seat belt or child restraint system which is correctly installed. For installation details, refer to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system. General installation instruction is provided in this manual.
- Lexus strongly urges the use of a proper child restraint system that conforms to the weight and size of the child, installed on the rear seat. According to accident statistics, the child is safer when properly restrained in the rear seat than in the front seat.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Holding a child in your or someone else's arms is not a substitute for a child restraint system. In an accident, the child can be crushed against the windshield or between the holder and the interior of the vehicle.
- Taiwan only: Never install a child restraint system on the front passenger seat. In the event of an accident, the force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to the child if the child restraint system is installed on the front passenger seat.

Handling the child restraint system

If the child restraint system is not properly fixed in place, the child or other passengers may be seriously injured or even killed in the event of sudden braking, sudden swerving, or an accident.

- If the vehicle were to receive a strong impact from an accident, etc., it is possible that the child restraint system has damage that is not readily visible. In such cases, do not reuse the restraint system.
- Depending on the child restraint system, installation may be difficult or impossible. In those cases, check whether the child restraint system is suitable for installment in the vehicle. (→P.57, 62, 66, 71) Be sure to install and observe the usage rules after carefully reading the child restraint system fixing method in this manual, as well as the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.
- Keep the child restraint system properly secured on the seat even if it is not in use. Do not store the child restraint system unsecured in the passenger compartment.
- If it is necessary to detach the child restraint system, remove it from the vehicle or store it securely in the trunk.

When using a child restraint system

When installing a child restraint system to a front passenger seat (except for Taiwan)

For the safety of a child, install child restraint system to the rear seats. When installing child restraint system to a front passenger seat is unavoidable, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system:

- Move the front seat fully rearward.
- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

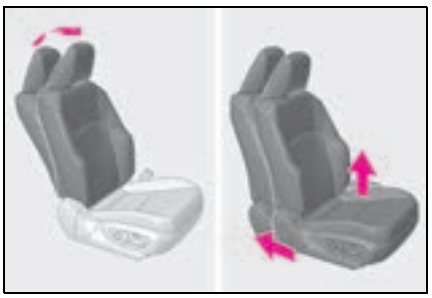
Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- Adjust the front of the seat cushion to the uppermost position.
- Adjust the seat height to the uppermost position.
- Adjust the lumbar support to the lowest position.
- Adjust the pelvic support* to the lowest position.
- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

restraint in the upper most position.



*: If equipped

When installing a child restraint system to a reclining type rear seat (if equipped)

When using a child restraint system in an outer rear seat, adjust the seat as follows and install the child restraint system:

- Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position.

When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.

- If the head restraint interferes with the child restraint system installation and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint. Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

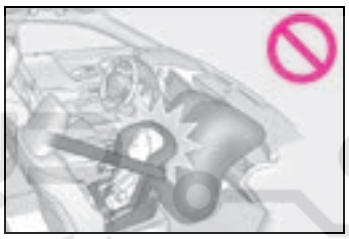


WARNING

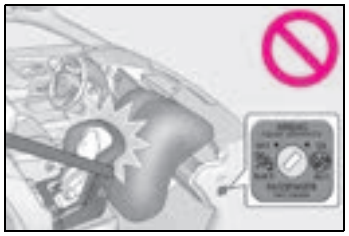
When using a child restraint system (except for Taiwan)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Vehicles without an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



- Vehicles with an airbag manual on-off switch: Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on. (→P.49)
  The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

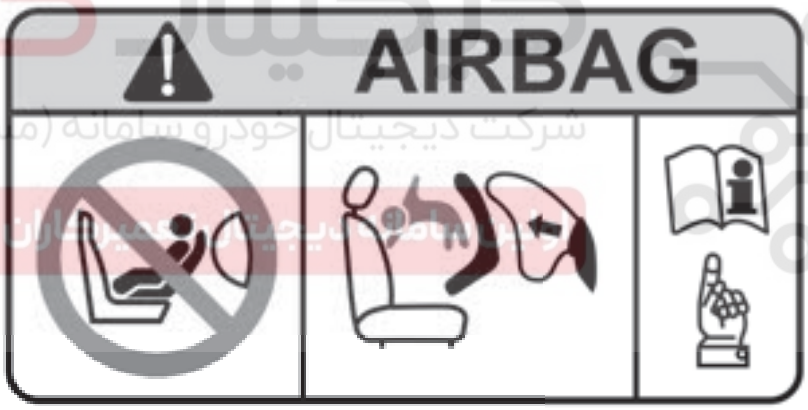
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a rear-facing child restraint system to the front passenger seat. Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

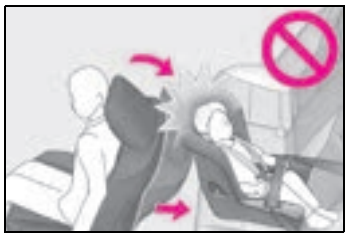
- Only put a forward-facing child restraint system on the front seat when unavoidable. When installing a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, move the seat as far back as possible. Failing to do so may result in death or serious injury if the airbags deploy (inflate).



- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat (left-hand drive vehicles) or the left-hand rear seat (right-hand drive vehicles).

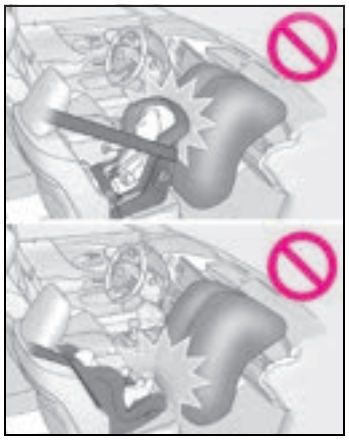


- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

■ When using a child restraint system (for Taiwan)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Never use a child restraint system on the front passenger seat.
The force of the rapid inflation of the front passenger airbag can cause death or serious injury to children in the event of an accident.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- There is a label(s) on the passenger side sun visor, indicating it is forbidden to attach a child restraint system to the front passenger seat.
  Details of the label(s) are shown in the illustration below.



WARNING



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

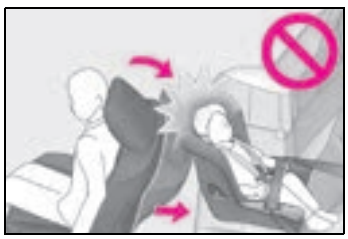
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Do not allow the child to lean his/her head or any part of his/her body against the door or the area of the seat, front or rear pillars, or roof side rails from which the SRS side airbags or SRS curtain shield airbags deploy even if the child is seated in the child restraint system. It is dangerous if the SRS side airbags and curtain shield airbags inflate, and the impact could cause death or serious injury to the child.



- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Use a child restraint system suitable to the age and size of the child and install it to the rear seat.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the child restraint system and prevents it from being attached correctly, attach the child restraint system to the right-hand rear seat.



- Adjust the front passenger seat so that it does not interfere with the child restraint system.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (except for ASEAN countries, Latin America and the Caribbean countries and Taiwan)

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.58) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols.
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

attached to the child restraint system.



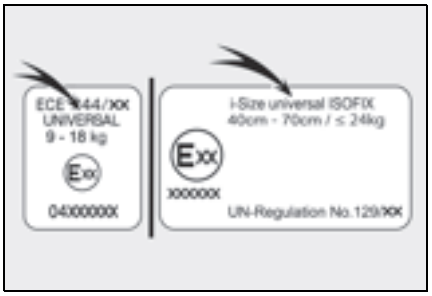
Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

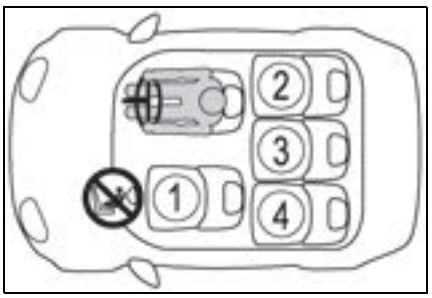
▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2 *2, 3	U i-Size ISOFIX
3 *3	U
4 *2, 3	U i-Size ISOFIX

U Suitable for fixed with vehicle seat belt "universal" category child restraint system.

i-Size Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

ISOFIX This seat is fitted with a Top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the airbag manual on-off switch is on or without the airbag manual on-off switch.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system when the airbag manual on-off switch is on or without the airbag manual on-off switch.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Detail information for CRS installation

Seating position						
Seat position number	①			②	③	④
	Vehicles without airbag manual on-off switch	Vehicles with airbag manual on-off switch				
		ON	OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes Forward-facing	yes Forward-facing	yes	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	no	no	no	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/no)	no	no	no	no	no	no
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/no)	no	no	no	R1, R2X, R2, R3	no	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/no)	no	no	no	F2X, F2, F3	no	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/no)	no	no	no	B2, B3	no	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different “fixture”. The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for “fixture” mentioned in the table above. For kind of “fixture”, confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of “fixture” (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system “vehicle list” for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems

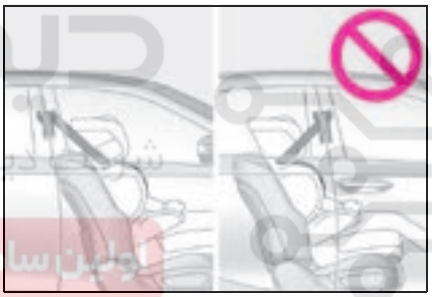
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Fixture	Description
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for ASEAN countries)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.63) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check "Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table" for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.65)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*3]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark[*3]
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

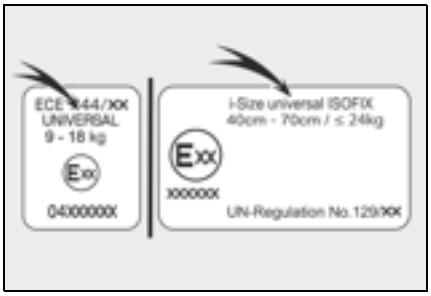
2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

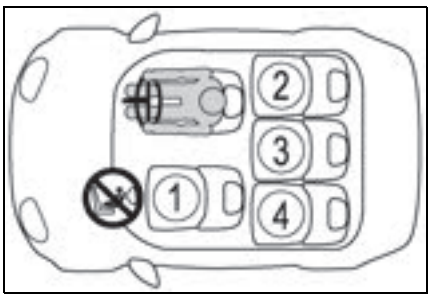
*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

▶ Left-hand drive vehicles



▶ Right-hand drive vehicles



1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2 *2, 3	U L i-Size ISOFIX
3 *3	U
4 *2, 3	U L i-Size ISOFIX

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Suitable for fixed with vehicle seat belt "universal" category child restraint system.

Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P. 65).

Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

This seat is fitted with a Top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

Detail information for CRS installation

Seat position number	Seating position ①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes Forward-facing	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	no	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/no)	no	no	no	no
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/no)	no	R1, R2X, R2, R3	no	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/no)	no	F2X, F2, F3	no	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/no)	no	B2, B3	no	B2, B3

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture", confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

■ Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table

	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position			
		①	②	③	④
i-Size child Restraint systems	i-Size MIDI	no	yes	no	yes

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the ASEAN countries.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Latin America and the Caribbean countries)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.67) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check "Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table" for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.70)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Checking the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

attached to the child restraint system.



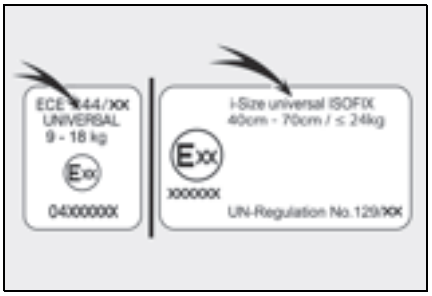
Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark*3
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark*3
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

2 Checking the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"
- "semi-universal"
- "restricted"
- "vehicle specific"



*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

1 *1, 2, 3	U *4
2 *2, 3	U L  
3 *3	U
4 *2, 3	U L  

Suitable for "universal" category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P.70).

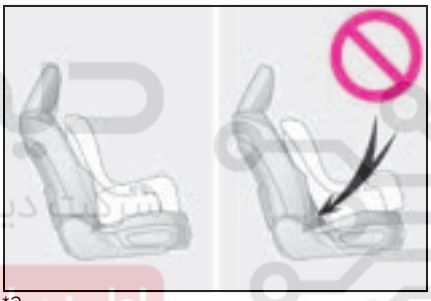
Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

Includes a top tether anchorage point.

Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

*1: Move the front seat fully rearward. If the passenger seat height can be adjusted, move it to the upper most position.

*2: Adjust the seatback angle to the most upright position. When installing a forward-facing child seat, if there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved.



*3: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.
Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

*4: Use only a front-facing child restraint system.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Detail information for child restraint systems installation

Seating position				
Seat position number	①	②	③	④
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes Forward-facing only	Yes	Yes	Yes
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)	No	No	No	No
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3	No	R1/R2X/R2/R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/No)	No	F2X/F2/F3	No	F2X/F2/F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/No)	No	B2/B3	No	B2/B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture", confirm the following table.
If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Fixture	Description
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

■ **Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table**

	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position			
		①	②	③	④
i-Size child Restraint system	i-Size MIDI (Yes/No)	No	Yes	No	Yes

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the Latin America and the Caribbean countries.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.
- If the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.



- When installing a junior seat, if the child in your child restraint system is in a very upright position, adjust the seatback angle to the most comfortable position. And if the seat belt shoulder anchor is ahead of the child seat belt guide, move the seat cushion forward.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position (for Taiwan)

■ Child restraint system compatibility for each seating position

Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems (→P.72) displays the type of child restraint systems that can be used and possible seating positions for installation using symbols. Also, the recommended child restraint system that is suitable for your child can be selected.
Otherwise, check "Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table" for recommended child restraint systems. (→P.74)
Check the selected child restraint system together with the following "Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems".

■ Before confirming the compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems

1 Check the child restraint system standards.
Use a child restraint system that conforms to UN(ECE) R44[*1] or UN(ECE) R129[*1, 2].
The following approval mark is displayed on child restraint systems which are conformed.
Check for an approval mark attached to the child restraint system.



Example of the displayed regulation Number

A UN(ECE) R44 approval mark[*3]
The weight range of the child who is applicable for an UN(ECE) R44 approval mark is indicated.

B UN(ECE) R129 approval mark[*3]
The height range of the child who is applicable as well as available weights for an UN(ECE) R129 approval mark is indicated.

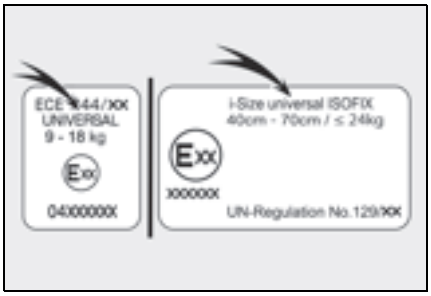
2 Check the category of the child restraint system.
Check the approval mark of the child restraint system for which of the following categories the child restraint system is suitable.
Also, if there are any uncertainties, check the user's guide included with the child restraint system or contact the retailer of the child restraint system.

- "universal"

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- “semi-universal”
- “restricted”
- “vehicle specific”



*1: UN(ECE) R44 and UN(ECE) R129 are U.N. regulations for child restraint systems.

*2: The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside of the EU area.

*3: The displayed mark may differ depending on the product.

■ **Compatibility of each seating position with child restraint systems**



1 *	U, L, i-Size, Top tether
2 *	U
3 *	U, L, i-Size, Top tether

U: Suitable for “universal” category child restraint system fixed with the seat belt.

L: Suitable for child restraint systems given on recommended child restraint systems and compatibility table (→P.74).

i-Size: Suitable for i-Size and ISOFIX child restraint system.

Top tether: Includes a top tether anchorage point.

X: Not suitable for child restraint system.

*: If the head restraint interferes with your child restraint system, and the head

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

restraint can be removed, remove the head restraint.

Otherwise, put the head restraint in the upper most position.

■ **Detail information for child restraint systems installation**

Seating position			
Seat position number	①	②	③
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/no)	no	no	no
Suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/no)	R1, R2X, R2, R3	no	R1, R2X, R2, R3
Suitable forward facing fixture (F2X/F2/F3/no)	F2X, F2, F3	no	F2X, F2, F3
Suitable junior seat fixture (B2/B3/no)	B2, B3	no	B2, B3

ISOFIX child restraint systems are divided into different "fixture". The child restraint system can be used in the seating positions for "fixture" mentioned in the table above. For kind of "fixture", confirm the following table.

If your child restraint system has no kind of "fixture" (or if you cannot find information in the table below), please refer to the child restraint system "vehicle list" for compatibility information or ask the retailer of your child seat.

Fixture	Description
F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
R3	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R2X	Reduced-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Fixture	Description
L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
B2	Junior seat
B3	Junior seat

■ **Recommended child restraint systems and Compatibility table**

Mass groups	Recommended Child Restraint System	Seating position		
		①	②	③
II, III 15 to 36 kg (34 to 79 lb.)	JUNIOR SEAT 2 (yes/no)	yes	no	yes

The child restraint systems mentioned in the table may not be available outside the Taiwan area.

When securing some types of child restraint systems in rear seat, it may not be possible to properly use the seat belts in positions next to the child restraint without interfering with it or affecting seat belt effectiveness. Be sure your seat belt fits snugly across your shoulder and low on your hips. If it does not, or if it interferes with the child restraint, move to a different position. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

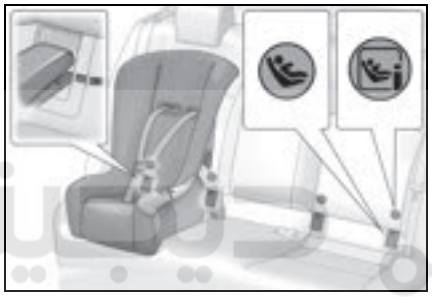
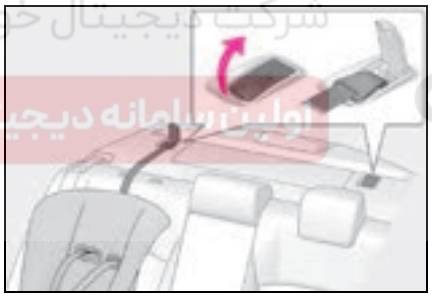
- When installing a child restraint in the rear seats, adjust the front seat so that it does not interfere with the child or child restraint system.
- When installing a child seat with support base, if the child seat interferes with the seatback when latching it into the support base, adjust the seatback rearward until there is no interference.

Child restraint system installation method

Confirm with the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system about the installation of the child restraint system.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Installation method		Page
Seat belt attachment		P.75
ISOFIX lower anchorage attachment		P.77
Top tether anchorage attachment		P.78

Child restraint system fixed with a seat belt

Installing child restraint system using a seat belt

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.57, 62, 66, 71)

1 Adjust the seat

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ When using the front passenger seat

If installing the child restraint system to the front passenger seat is unavoidable, refer to P.52 for the front passenger seat adjustment.

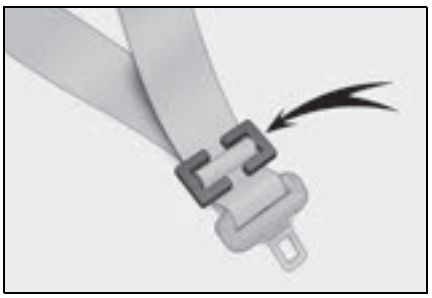
▶ When using the reclining type rear seat (if equipped)

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved. (→P.53)

2 Run the seat belt through the child restraint system and insert the plate into the buckle. Make sure that the belt is not twisted. Securely fix the seat belt to the child restraint system in accordance to the directions enclosed with the child restraint system.



3 If your child restraint system is not equipped with a lock-off (a seat belt locking feature), secure the child restraint system using a locking clip.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.77)

■ **Removing a child restraint system installed with a seat belt**

Press the buckle release button and fully retract the seat belt.

When releasing the buckle, the child restraint system may spring up due to the rebound of the seat cushion. Release the buckle while holding down the child restraint system.

Since the seat belt automatically reels itself, slowly return it to the stowing position.

■ **When installing a child restraint system**

You may need a locking clip to install the child restraint system. Follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the system. If your child restraint system does not provide a locking clip, you can purchase the following item from your Lexus dealer: Locking clip for child restraint system (Part No. 73119-22010)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

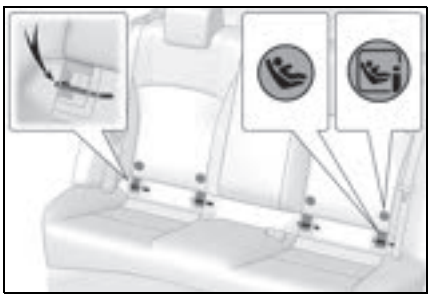
Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not allow children to play with the seat belt. If the seat belt becomes twisted around a child's neck, it may lead to choking or other serious injuries that could result in death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be unfastened, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- Ensure that the belt and plate are securely locked and the seat belt is not twisted.
- Shake the child restraint system left and right, and forward and backward to ensure that it has been securely installed.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When a junior seat (booster seat) is installed, always ensure that the shoulder belt is positioned across the center of the child's shoulder. The belt should be kept away from the child's neck, but not so that it could fall off the child's shoulder.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Child restraint system fixed with an ISOFIX lower anchorage

■ ISOFIX lower anchorages (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Lower anchorages are provided for the outboard rear seats. (Marks displaying the location of the anchorages are attached to the seats.)



■ Installation with ISOFIX lower anchorage (ISOFIX child restraint system)

Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system on hand is not within the "universal" category (or the necessary information is not in the table), refer to the "Vehicle List" provided by the child restraint system maker for various possible installation positions, or check the compatibility after asking the retailer of the child seat. (→P.57, 62, 66, 71)

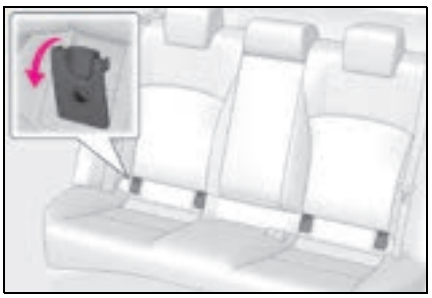
1 Vehicles with reclining type rear seat: Adjust the seat

If there is a gap between the child seat and the seatback, adjust the seatback angle until good contact is achieved. (→P.53)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2 Remove the cover.



3 Check the positions of the exclusive fixing bars, and install the child restraint system to the seat.

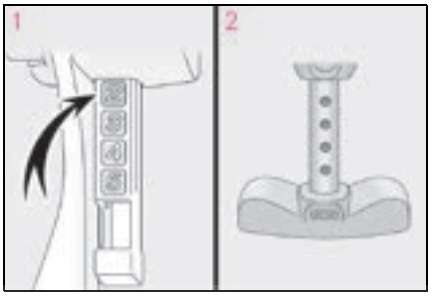
The bars are installed in the clearance between the seat cushion and seatback.



4 After installing the child restraint system, rock it back and forth to ensure that it is installed securely. (→P.77)

■ When using an "i-Size MIDI" (for ASEAN countries and Latin America and the Caribbean countries)

Adjust the support leg and ISOFIX connectors as follows:



1 Lock the ISOFIX connectors where number 2 can be seen.

2 Lock the support leg where 4 holes can be seen.

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- When using the lower anchorages, be sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorages and that the seat belt is not caught behind the child restraint system.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Using a top tether anchorage

■ Top tether anchorages

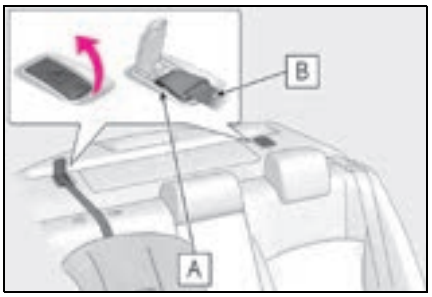
Top tether anchorages are provided

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

for the outboard rear seats.

Use top tether anchorages when fixing the top strap.



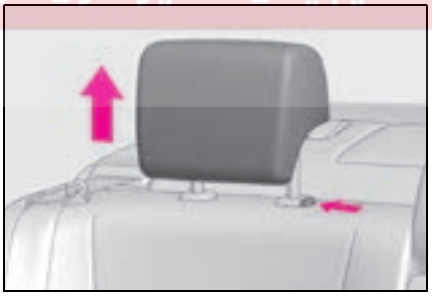
A Top tether anchorages

B Top strap

■ Fixing the top strap to the top tether anchorages

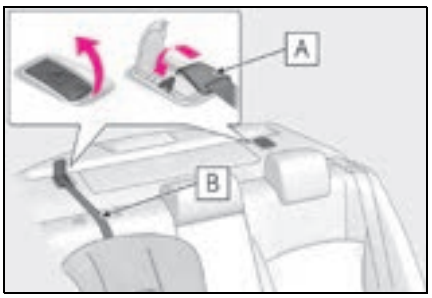
Install the child restraint system in accordance to the operation manual enclosed with the child restraint system.

1 Remove the head restraint.



2 Open the top tether anchorages cover, latch the hook onto the top tether anchorage and tighten the top strap.

Make sure the top strap is securely latched. (→P.77)



A Hook

B Top strap

WARNING

■ When installing a child restraint system

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Firmly attach the top strap and make sure that the belt is not twisted.
- Do not attach the top strap to anything other than the top tether anchorages.
- After securing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Follow all installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

NOTICE

■ Top tether anchorages

When not in use, make certain to close the lid. If it remains open, the lid may be damaged.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

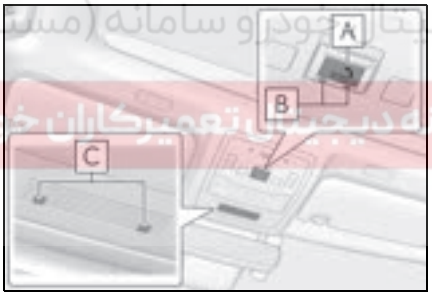
eCall*1, 2

*1: If equipped

*2: Operates within the eCall coverage.

eCall is a telematics service that uses Global Navigation Satellite System (GNSS) data and embedded cellular technology to enable the following emergency calls to be made: Automatic emergency calls (Automatic Collision Notification) and manual emergency calls (by pressing the "SOS" button). This service is required by United Arab Emirates Regulations.

System components



A "SOS" button*

B Indicator lights

C Microphone

*: This button is intended for communication with the eCall system operator. Other SOS buttons available in other systems of a motor vehicle do not relate to the device and are not intended for communication with the eCall system operator.

Emergency Notification Services

■ Automatic Emergency Calls

If any airbag deploys, the system is designed to automatically call the eCall control center.* The answering operator receives the vehicle's location, the time of the incident and the vehicle VIN, and attempts to speak with the vehicle occupants to assess the situation. If the occupants are unable to communicate, the operator automatically treats the call as an emergency and contacts the nearest emergency services provider (999 system etc.) to describe the situation and request that assistance be sent to the location.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

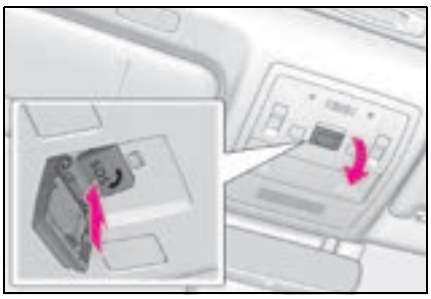
■ Manual Emergency Calls

In the event of an emergency, press the "SOS" button to call the eCall control center.* The answering operator will determine your vehicle's location, assess the situation, and dispatch the necessary assistance required.

Make sure to open the cover before pressing the "SOS" button.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



If you accidentally press the "SOS" button, tell the operator that you are not experiencing an emergency.

*: In some cases, the call cannot be made. (→P.81)

Indicator lights

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the red indicator light will illuminate, and then turns off. Afterward, the green indicator light will illuminate, indicating that the DCM (Data Communication Module) service is enabled. The illumination condition of the indicator lights informs the system operation status:

- If the green indicator light illuminates, the DCM service is in active mode
- If the green indicator light flashes, an automatic or manual Emergency Call is being made
- If the red indicator light illuminates, there is a malfunction in the system
- If the indicator lights go off, the DCM service is in inactive mode
- If the red indicator light blinks for approximately 30 seconds during an Emergency Call, the call has been disconnected or the cellular network signal is weak.

The service life of the backup battery does not exceed 3 years.

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS) for DCM.

The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://opensource.lge.com/osSch/list?types=ALL&search=TL21BNU

WARNING

When the Emergency Call may not be made

- It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls in any of the following situations. In such cases, report to emergency services provider (999 system etc.) by other means such as nearby public phones.
  - Even when the vehicle is in the cellular phone service area, it may be difficult to connect to the eCall control center if the reception is poor or the line is busy. In such cases, even though the system attempts to connect to the eCall control center, you may not be able to connect to the eCall control center to make Emergency Calls and contact emergency services.
  - When the vehicle is out of the cellular phone service area, the Emergency Calls cannot be made.
  - When any related equipment (such as the "SOS" button panel, indicator lights, microphone, speaker, DCM, antenna, or any wires connecting the equipment) is malfunctioning, damaged or broken, the Emergency Call cannot be made.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- During an Emergency Call, the system makes repeated attempts to connect to the eCall control center. However, if it cannot connect to the eCall control center due to poor radio wave reception, the system may not be able to connect to the cellular network and the call may finish without connecting. The red indicator light will blink for approximately 30 seconds to indicate this disconnection.

- If the battery's voltage decreases or there is a disconnection, the system may not be able to connect to the eCall control center.

When the Emergency Call system is replaced with a new one

The Emergency Call system should be registered. Contact your Lexus dealer.

For your safety

- Please drive safely.
  The function of this system is to assist you in making the Emergency Call in case of accidents such as traffic accidents or sudden medical emergencies, and it does not protect the driver or passengers in any way. Please drive safely and fasten your seatbelts at all times for your safety.

- In case of an emergency, make lives the top priority.

- If you smell anything burning or other unusual smells, leave the vehicle and evacuate to a safe area immediately.

- If the airbags deploy when the system is operating normally, the system makes emergency call. The system also makes emergency call when the vehicle is struck from the rear or rolls over, even if the airbags do not deploy.

- For safety, do not make the Emergency Call while driving.
  Making calls during driving may cause mishandling of the steering wheel, which may lead to unexpected accidents.
  Stop the vehicle and confirm the safety of your surroundings before making the Emergency Call.

- When changing fuses, please use the specified fuses. Using other fuses may cause ignition or smoke in the circuit and lead to a fire.

- Using the system while there is smoke or an unusual smell may cause a fire. Stop using the system immediately and consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

To prevent damage

Do not pour any liquids onto the "SOS" button panel, etc. and do not impact it.

If the "SOS" button panel, speaker or microphone malfunctions during an Emergency Call or manual maintenance check

It may not be possible to make Emergency Calls, confirm the system status, or communicate with the eCall control center operator. If any of the above equipment is damaged, please consult your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Engine immobilizer system

The vehicle's keys have built-in transponder chips that prevent the engine from starting if a key has not been previously registered in the vehicle's on-board computer.

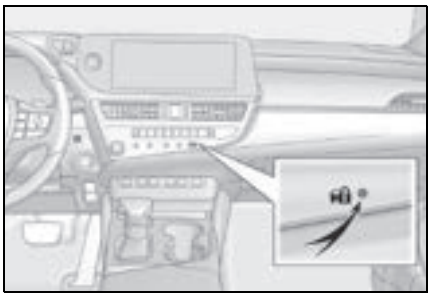
Never leave the keys inside the vehicle when you leave the vehicle.

This system is designed to help prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all vehicle thefts.

Operating the system

The indicator light flashes after the engine switch has been turned off to indicate that the system is operating.

The indicator light stops flashing after the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to indicate that the system has been canceled.



■ System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type engine immobilizer system.

■ Conditions that may cause the system to malfunction

- If the grip portion of the key is in contact with a metallic object
- If the key is in close proximity to or touching a key registered to the security system (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle

NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

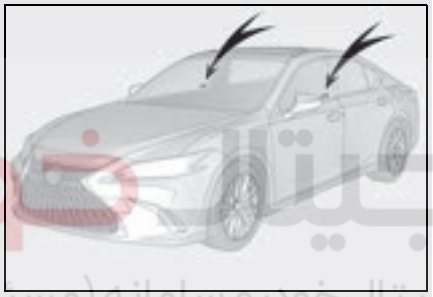
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Double locking system*

*: If equipped

Unauthorized access to the vehicle is prevented by disabling the door unlocking function from both the interior and exterior of the vehicle.

Vehicles employing this system have labels on the front side windows.



Setting/canceling the double locking system

Setting

Turn the engine switch off, have all the passengers exit the vehicle and ensure that all the doors are closed.

Using the entry function: Touch the sensor area on the outside door handle twice within 5 seconds.

Using the wireless remote control: Press twice within 5 seconds.

Canceling

Using the entry function: Hold the outside door handle.

Using the wireless remote control: Press .

WARNING

■ Double locking system precaution

Never activate the double locking system when there are people in the vehicle because all the doors cannot be opened from inside the vehicle.

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکار خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Alarm

The alarm uses light and sound to give an alert when an intrusion is detected.

The alarm is triggered in the following situations when the alarm is set:

- Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: A locked door is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: A locked trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: A locked door or trunk is unlocked or opened in any way other than using the entry function or wireless remote control. (The doors will lock again automatically.)
- The hood is opened.
- The intrusion sensor (if equipped) detects something moving inside the vehicle. (An intruder gets in the vehicle.)
- The tilt sensor (if equipped) detects a change of vehicle inclination.

Setting/canceling/stopping the alarm system

Items to check before locking the vehicle

To prevent unexpected triggering of the alarm and vehicle theft, make sure of the following:

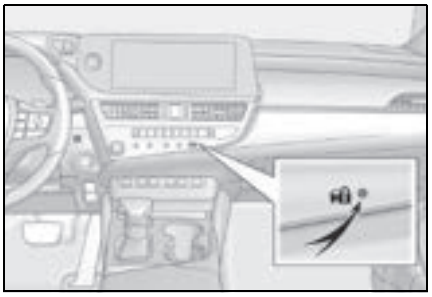
- Nobody is in the vehicle.
- The windows and moon roof/panoramic moon roof are closed before the alarm is set.
- No valuables or other personal items are left in the vehicle.

Setting

Close the doors, trunk and hood, and lock all the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control. The system will be set automatically after 30 seconds.

Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt, the alarm can also be set using the mechanical key.

The indicator light changes from being on to flashing when the system is set.



Canceling or stopping

Do one of the following to deactivate or stop the alarm:

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Unlock the doors using the entry function, wireless remote control or mechanical key or open the trunk using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Unlock the doors or open the trunk using the entry function or wireless remote control.
- Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)
- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: Start the engine. (The alarm will be deactivated or stopped after a few seconds.)

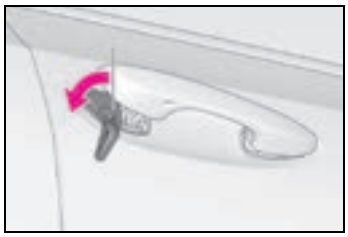
System maintenance

The vehicle has a maintenance-free type alarm system.

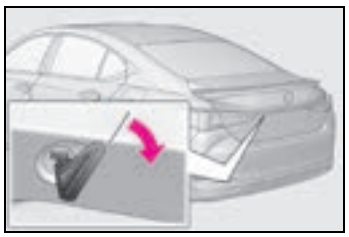
Triggering of the alarm

The alarm may be triggered in the following situations:
(Stopping the alarm deactivates the alarm system.)

- For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt: The doors or trunk are unlocked using the mechanical key.



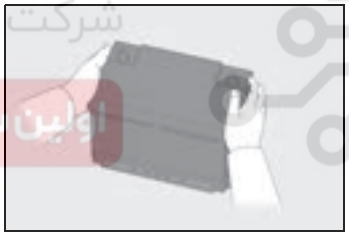
- The trunk is unlocked using the mechanical key.



- A person inside the vehicle opens a door, the trunk or hood, or unlocks the vehicle using an inside lock button.



- The battery is recharged or replaced when the vehicle is locked. (→P.443)



Alarm-operated door lock

In the following cases, depending on the situation, the door may automatically lock to prevent improper entry into the vehicle:

- When a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door and the alarm is activated.
- While the alarm is activated, a person remaining in the vehicle unlocks the door.
- When recharging or replacing the battery

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

To ensure the system operates correctly

Do not modify or remove the system. If modified or removed, the proper operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

Intrusion sensor (if equipped) and tilt sensor (if equipped)

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor detection

- The intrusion sensor detects intruders or movement in the vehicle.
- The tilt sensor detects changes in vehicle inclination, such as when the vehicle is towed away.

This system is designed to deter and prevent vehicle theft but does not guarantee absolute security against all intrusions.

Setting the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will be set automatically when the alarm is set. (→P.85)

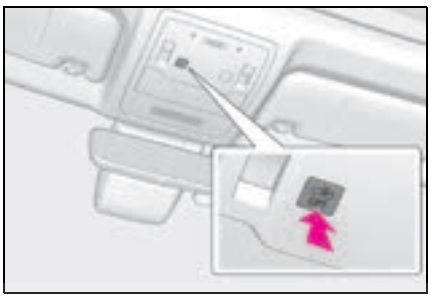
Canceling the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

If you are leaving pets or other moving things inside the vehicle, make sure to disable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor before setting the alarm, as they will respond to movement inside the vehicle.

1. Turn the engine switch off.
2. Press the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor cancel switch.

Press the switch again to re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor.

Each time the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor is canceled/set, a message will be shown on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.



Canceling and automatic re-enabling of the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor

- The alarm will still be set even when the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor is canceled.
- After the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor is canceled, pressing the engine switch or unlocking the doors using the entry function or wireless remote control will re-enable the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor. (Except for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt, the mechanical key can also be used.)
- The intrusion sensor and tilt sensor will automatically be re-enabled when the alarm system is deactivated.

Intrusion sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

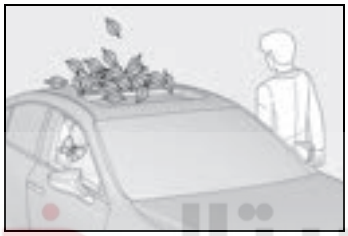
- People or pets are in the vehicle.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

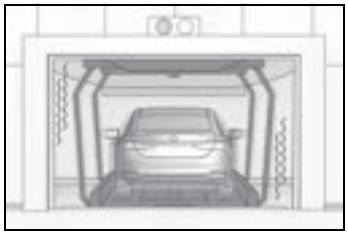
● A window, the moon roof (if equipped) or the panoramic moon roof (if equipped) is open.
In this case, the sensor may detect the following:
- Wind or the movement of objects such as leaves and insects inside the vehicle
- Ultrasonic waves emitted from devices such as the intrusion sensors of other vehicles
- The movement of people outside the vehicle



● Unstable items, such as dangling accessories or clothes hanging on the coat hooks, are in the vehicle.



● The vehicle is parked in a place where extreme vibrations or noises occur, such as in a parking garage.



● Ice or snow is removed from the vehicle, causing the vehicle to receive repeated impacts or vibrations.



● The vehicle is inside an automatic or high-pressure car wash.

● The vehicle experiences impacts, such as hail, lightning strikes, and other kinds of repeated impacts or vibrations.

■ Tilt sensor detection considerations

The sensor may trigger the alarm in the following situations:

● The vehicle is transported by a ferry, trailer, train, etc.

● The vehicle is parked in a parking garage.

● The vehicle is inside a car wash that moves the vehicle.

● Any of the tires loses air pressure.

● The vehicle is jacked up.

● An earthquake occurs or the road caves in.

NOTICE

■ To ensure the intrusion sensor functions correctly

● To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- Do not spray air fresheners or other products directly into the sensor holes.



- Installing accessories other than genuine Lexus parts or leaving objects between the driver's seat and front passenger's seat may reduce the detection performance.
- The intrusion sensor may be canceled when the electronic key is near the vehicle.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2-1. Instrument cluster

Warning lights and indicators..92
Gauges and meters (except F SPORT models)..... 96
Gauges and meters (F SPORT models)..... 100
Multi-information display..... 105
Head-up display 112
Fuel consumption information 116

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Warning lights and indicators

The warning lights and indicators on the instrument cluster, center panel and outside rear view mirrors inform the driver of the status of the vehicle's various systems.

Warning lights and indicators displayed on the instrument cluster

▶ Except F SPORT models



The location of warning lights and indicators may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

The image may differ from the actual condition.

▶ F SPORT models



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

The location of warning lights and indicators may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle and the selected main meter location.

The image may differ from the actual condition.

Warning lights

Warning lights inform the driver of malfunctions in the indicated vehicle's systems.


(red) Brake system warning light *1 (→P.412)


(yellow) Brake system warning light *1 (→P.412)


High coolant temperature warning light *2 (→P.412)


Charging system warning light *2 (→P.412)


Low engine oil pressure warning light *2 (→P.413)


Malfunction indicator lamp *1 (→P.413)


SRS warning light *1 (→P.413)


Pop Up Hood warning light *1 (→P.413)


ABS warning light *1 (→P.414)


Inappropriate pedal operation warning light *2 (→P.414)


(red) Electric power steering system warning light *1 (→P.414)


(yellow) Electric power steering system warning light *1 (→P.414)


Low fuel level warning light (→P.414)


Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (→P.415)



Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights *2 (→P.415)


Tire pressure warning light *1 (→P.416)


(orange) LTA indicator *2 (if equipped) (→P.416)



(flashes) Stop & Start cancel indicator *1 (if equipped) (→P.417)



(flashes) Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator *1 (→P.417)



(flashes) RCTA OFF indicator *1 (if equipped) (→P.417)



(flashes or illuminates) RCD OFF indicator (if equipped) (→P.417)



(flashes) PKSB OFF indicator *1 (if equipped) (→P.418)



(flashes or illuminates) PCS warning light *1 (if equipped) (→P.418)


Slip indicator *1 (→P.418)


(flashes) Parking brake indicator (→P.419)

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

HOLD (flashes) Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.419)

Master warning light*1 (→P.419)

*1: These lights come on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

WARNING

■ **If a safety system warning light does not come on**

Should a safety system light such as the ABS and SRS warning light not come on when you start the engine, this could mean that these systems are not available to help protect you in an accident, which could result in death or serious injury. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

Indicators

The indicators inform the driver of the operating state of the vehicle's various systems.

Turn signal indicator (→P.184)

Tail light indicator (→P.190)

Headlight high beam indicator (→P.192)

AHS indicator (if equipped) (→P.193)

Automatic High Beam indicator (if equipped) (→P.197)

Multi Weather Lights indicator (if equipped) (→P.200)

Rear fog light indicator (if equipped) (→P.201)

PCS warning light*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.215)

Cruise control indicator*3 (→P.235, 246, 256)

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.235, 246)

SET Cruise control "SET" indicator*3 (→P.235, 246, 256)

(white) LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.231)

(green) LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.216, 231)

(orange) (flashes) LTA indicator*3 (if equipped) (→P.231)

BSM outside rear view mirror indicators*1, 4 (if equipped) (→P.258, 280)

BSM BSM indicator (if equipped) (→P.258)

OFF Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator*1, 2 (→P.273)

RCTA OFF RCTA OFF indicator*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.281)

RCD OFF RCD OFF indicator*2 (if equipped) (→P.286)

OFF PKSB OFF indicator*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.290)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92


Stop & Start indicator*1 (if equipped) (→P.265)


Stop & Start cancel indicator*1, 2 (if equipped) (→P.270)


Slip indicator*1 (→P.301)
(flashes)


VSC OFF indicator*1, 2 (→P.301)


Smart entry & start system indicator*3 (→P.171)


Parking brake indicator (→P.185)


Brake hold standby indicator*1 (→P.187)


Brake hold operated indicator*1 (→P.187)


Eco Driving Indicator Light*1, 5 (→P.108)


Low outside temperature indicator*3, 6 (→P.96, 100)


"PASSENGER AIR BAG" indicator*1, 7 (if equipped) (→P.49)

● Drive mode indicators

▶ Except F SPORT models


Eco drive mode indicator (→P.263)


Sport mode indicator (→P.263)

▶ F SPORT models


Custom mode indicator (→P.263)


Eco drive mode indicator (→P.263)


Sport S mode indicator (→P.263)


Sport S+ mode indicator (→P.263)

*1: These lights come on when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode to indicate that a system check is being performed. They will turn off after the engine is started, or after a few seconds. There may be a malfunction in a system if the lights do not come on, or turn off. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

*2: This light comes on when the system is turned off.

*3: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*4: This light illuminates on the outside rear view mirrors.

*5: Except F SPORT models: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

*6: When the outside temperature is approximately 3°C (37°F) or lower, this indicator will flash for approximately 10 seconds, then stay on.

*7: This light illuminates on the center panel.

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Gauges and meters (except F SPORT models)

Meter display

Locations of gauges and meters



The location of some displayed items and the units of measure may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

A Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.105)
Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.421)

B Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)
Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute
When sport mode is selected for the driving mode, the periphery of the tachometer will change color and the scale of the tachometer will be emphasized.

D Speedometer

E Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the center panel. (→P.333)

F Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

G Fuel gauge

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

In the following situations, the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank may not be displayed correctly. Refer to P.97 if the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank is not displayed correctly.

- A small amount of fuel is added.
- Fuel is added with the fuel gauge near or at "F".
- The vehicle is stopped on an uneven surface, such as a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope or around a curve.

H Shift position and shift range (→P.175, 179)

I Odometer and trip meter display (→P.98)

Manually updating the fuel gauge and possible driving range

The fuel gauge and the possible driving range are linked. If the displays of the fuel gauge and possible driving range do not update after adding a small amount of fuel, the displays can be updated by performing the following procedure.

1. Stop the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Press the "ODO TRIP" switch to change the odometer and trip meter display to odometer.
3. Turn the engine switch off.
4. While pressing and holding the "ODO TRIP" switch, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
5. Continue to hold the "ODO TRIP" switch for approximately 5 seconds, and then release it once the odometer begins flashing.

Updating is complete once the odometer flashes for approximately 5 seconds and then the display returns to normal.

Outside temperature display

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

Liquid crystal display

→P.106

Customization

The gauges and meters can be customized on  of the multi-information display. (→P.110)

WARNING

The information display at low temperatures

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

To prevent damage to the engine and its components

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.445)

Odometer and trip meter display

Display items

- Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

- Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

- Stop & Start system operation time (if equipped)

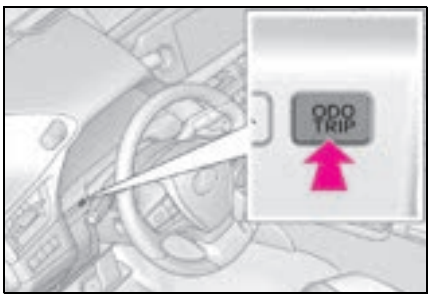
Displays the total idling stop time (engine stop time via the Stop & Start system) after resetting and engine startup.

- Distance until next engine oil change (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

Changing the display

Each time the "ODO TRIP" switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.



Pop-up display

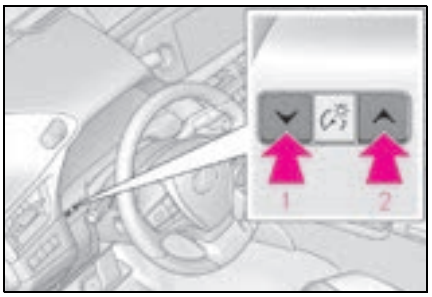
In some situations the following will be temporarily displayed:

- Stop & Start system operating state (if equipped) (→P.265)
- Distance until next engine oil change (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2 Brighter

■ **Brightness of the meter lights (day mode and night mode)**

The brightness of the meter lights can be adjusted individually.

In the following situations, the meters changes between day mode and night mode.

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

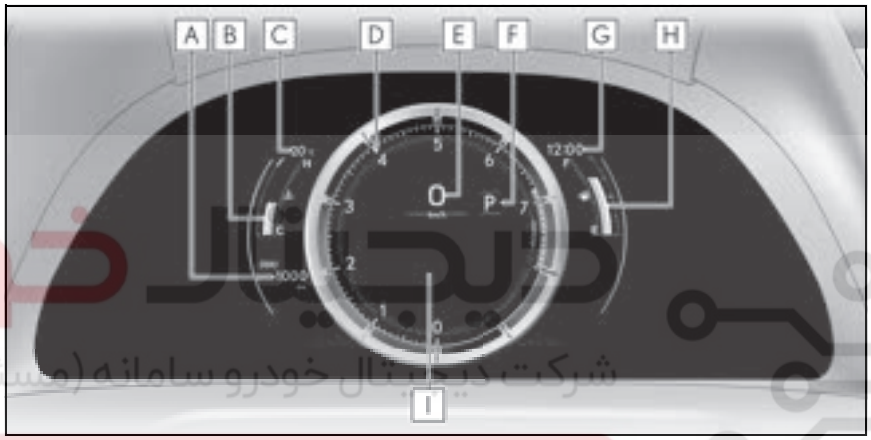
Gauges and meters (F SPORT models)

Meter display

■ Locations of gauges and meters

When the main meter is moved to the right, some of the meter displays and the gauge layout will change. (→P.105)

▶ Main meter in center position



The location of some displayed items and the units of measure may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

A Odometer and trip meter display (→P.104)

B Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

C Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)

Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower

D Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

When sport mode is selected for the driving mode, the periphery of the tachometer will change color and the scale of the tachometer will be emphasized.

- Rev indicator (→P.102)
- Rev peak (→P.102)

E Speedometer

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

F Shift position and shift range (→P.175)

G Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the center panel. (→P.333)

H Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

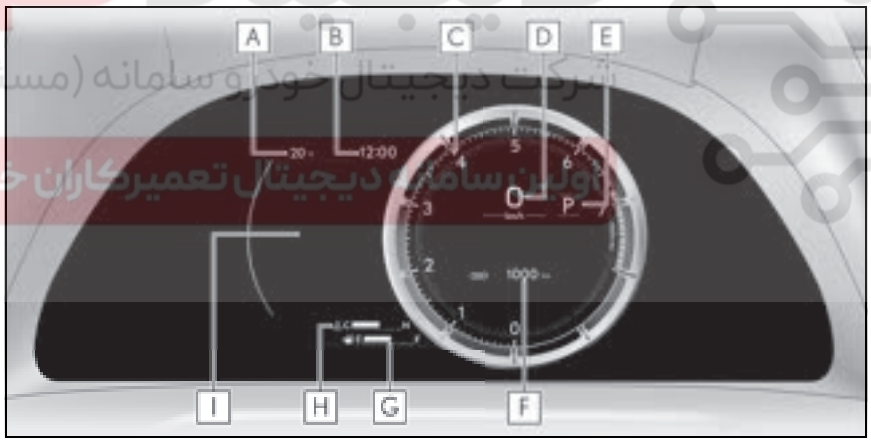
In the following situations, the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank may not be displayed correctly. Refer to P.103 if the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank is not displayed correctly.

- A small amount of fuel is added.
- Fuel is added with the fuel gauge near or at "F".
- The vehicle is stopped on an uneven surface, such as a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope or around a curve.

I Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.105)
Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.421)

▶ Main meter moved to the right



The location of some displayed items and the units of measure may differ depending on the intended destination of the vehicle.

A Outside temperature

Displays the outside temperature within the range of -40°C (-40°F) to 50°C (122°F)

Low outside temperature indicator comes on when the ambient temperature is 3°C (37°F) or lower

B Clock

Time displayed is linked to the analog clock on the center panel. (→P.333)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

C Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute

When sport mode is selected for the driving mode, the periphery of the tachometer will change color and the scale of the tachometer will be emphasized.

- Rev indicator (→P.102)
- Rev peak (→P.102)

D Speedometer

E Shift position and shift range (→P.175)

F Odometer and trip meter display (→P.104)

G Fuel gauge

Displays the quantity of fuel remaining in the tank

In the following situations, the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank may not be displayed correctly. Refer to P.103 if the actual quantity of fuel remaining in the tank is not displayed correctly.

- A small amount of fuel is added.
- Fuel is added with the fuel gauge near or at "F".
- The vehicle is stopped on an uneven surface, such as a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope or around a curve.

H Engine coolant temperature gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature

I Multi-information display

Presents the driver with a variety of vehicle data (→P.105)

Displays warning messages if a malfunction occurs (→P.421)

Rev indicator

When the engine speed reaches a set speed or the red zone, a ring-shaped indicator (A) will be displayed on the tachometer.

The indicators will be displayed in amber when the engine speed reaches a set speed, and in red when the engine speed reaches the red zone.

The engine speed at which the rev indicator will begin to be displayed can be set on of the multi-information display. (→P.110)



Rev peak

When the engine speed reaches or exceeds 5000 r/min, an afterimage of the tachometer will be displayed at the highest engine speed for approxi-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

mately 1 second.



■ **Manually updating the fuel gauge and possible driving range**

The fuel gauge and the possible driving range are linked. If the displays of the fuel gauge and possible driving range do not update after adding a small amount of fuel, the displays can be updated by performing the following procedure.

1. Stop the vehicle on a level surface.
2. Press the "ODO TRIP" switch to change the odometer and trip meter display to odometer.
3. Turn the engine switch off.
4. While pressing and holding the "ODO TRIP" switch, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
5. Continue to hold the "ODO TRIP" switch for approximately 5 seconds, and then release it once the odometer begins flashing.

Updating is complete once the odometer flashes for approximately 5 seconds and then the display returns to normal.

■ **Outside temperature display**

- In the following situations, the correct outside temperature may not be displayed, or the display may take longer than normal to change:
  - When stopped, or driving at low speeds (less than 20 km/h [12 mph])
  - When the outside temperature has changed suddenly (at the entrance/exit of a garage, tunnel, etc.)
- When "--" or "E" is displayed, the system may be malfunctioning. Take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer.

■ **Liquid crystal display**

→P.106

■ **Customization**

The gauges and meters can be customized on  of the multi-information display. (→P.110)

WARNING

■ **The information display at low temperatures**

Allow the interior of the vehicle to warm up before using the liquid crystal information display. At extremely low temperatures, the information display monitor may respond slowly, and display changes may be delayed.

For example, there is a lag between the driver's shifting and the new gear number appearing on the display. This lag could cause the driver to downshift again, causing rapid and excessive engine braking and possibly an accident resulting in death or injury.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the engine and its components**

- Do not let the indicator needle of the tachometer enter the red zone, which indicates the maximum engine speed.
- The engine may be overheating if the engine coolant temperature gauge is in the red zone (H). In this case, immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place, and check the engine after it has cooled completely. (→P.445)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Odometer and trip meter display

Display items

- Odometer

Displays the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

- Trip meter A/trip meter B

Displays the distance the vehicle has been driven since the meter was last reset. Trip meters A and B can be used to record and display different distances independently.

- Stop & Start system operation time (if equipped)

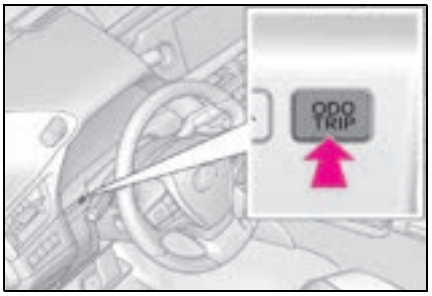
Displays the total idling stop time (engine stop time via the Stop & Start system) after resetting and engine startup.

- Distance until next engine oil change

Displays the distance the vehicle can be driven until an oil change is necessary.

Changing the display

Each time the "ODO TRIP" switch is pressed, the displayed item will be changed. When the trip meter is displayed, pressing and holding the switch will reset the trip meter.



Pop-up display

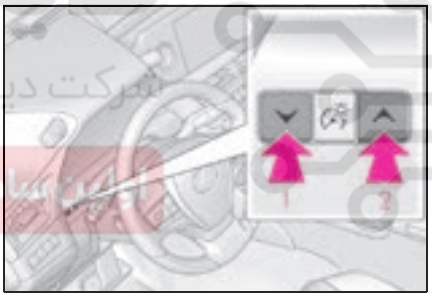
In some situations the following will be temporarily displayed:

- Stop & Start system operating state (if equipped) (→P.265)
- Distance until next engine oil change

When a warning message indicating that oil maintenance should be performed soon or is required is displayed.

Changing the instrument panel light brightness

The brightness of the instrument panel lights can be adjusted.



1 Darker
2 Brighter

Brightness of the meter lights (day mode and night mode)

The brightness of the meter lights can be adjusted individually.

In the following situations, the meters changes between day mode and night mode.

- Day mode: When the tail lights are off or when the tail lights are on but the surrounding area is bright
- Night mode: When the tail lights are on and the surrounding area is dark

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Changing the main meter location

The display can be switched between the center and side positions.



Multi-information display

Display and menu icons

■ Display (except F SPORT models)

By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.



■ Display (F SPORT models)

▶ Main meter in center position

The multi-information display presents the driver with a variety of driving-related information.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



▶ Main meter moved to the right

By selecting menu icons on the multi-information display, a variety of driving-related information can be displayed. The multi-information display can also be used to change display settings and other vehicle settings.

Warning or suggestion/advice pop-up displays are also displayed in certain situations.



Menu icons

The menu icons will be displayed by pressing or of the meter control switches.

F SPORT models: The menu icons can be displayed when the main meter is moved to the right.

Driving information display (→P.107)

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped) (→P.109)

Audio system-linked display (→P.109)

Driving support system information display (→P.109)

Warning message display (→P.421)

Settings display (→P.110)

Liquid crystal display

Small spots or light spots may appear on the display. This phenomenon is characteristic of liquid crystal displays, and there is no problem continuing to use the display.

WARNING

Caution for use while driving

- When operating the multi-information display while driving, pay extra attention to the safety of the area around the vehicle.
- Do not look continuously at the multi-information display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

The information display at low temperatures

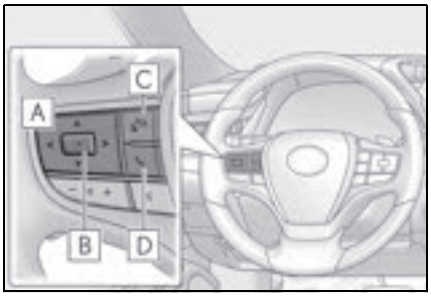
→P.97, 103

Changing the meter display

The multi-information display is operated using the meter control switches.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



A ◀ / ▶ : Select menu icons
▲ / ▼ : Change displayed content, scroll up/down the screen and move the cursor up/down

B Press: Enter/Set
Press and hold: Reset

C Move the main meter* and return to the previous screen

D Call sending/receiving and history display
Linked with the hands-free system, sending or receiving call is displayed. For details regarding the hands-free system, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

*: F SPORT models

Content of driving information

■ Display items (except F SPORT models)

Press ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches and select ⓘ. Then press ▲ or ▼ to display the following items:

- Drive information 1
- Drive information 2
- Eco Driving Indicator
- Tire pressure (→P.385)
- Display off

■ Display items (F SPORT models)

▶ Main meter in center position

Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches to display the following items:

- Drive information 1
- Drive information 2
- Gear position
- Tire pressure (→P.385)
- Display off

▶ Main meter moved to the right

Press ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches and select ⓘ. Then press ▲ or ▼ to display the following items:

- Drive information 1
- Drive information 2
- Eco Driving Indicator
- G-force
- Gear Position
- Tire pressure (→P.385)
- Display off

■ Drive information 1/Drive information 2

Displays drive information such as the following:

Use the displayed values as a reference only.

- Drive information 1

• Current fuel consumption

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Average fuel economy (after reset)

● Drive information 2

- Distance (driving range)
- Average vehicle speed (after reset)

Displayed items (listed below) can be changed on . (→P.110)

● Current fuel consumption

Bar type: Displays instantaneous current fuel consumption

● Average fuel economy

After reset: Displays average fuel consumption since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays average fuel consumption since engine start

After refuel: Displays average fuel consumption since refuel

● Average vehicle speed

After reset: Displays average vehicle speed since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays average vehicle speed since engine start

● Elapsed time

After reset: Displays elapsed time since the display was reset*1

After start: Displays elapsed time since engine start

● Distance

Driving range: Displays driving range with remaining fuel*2, 3

After start: Displays the distance driven since engine start

● Other

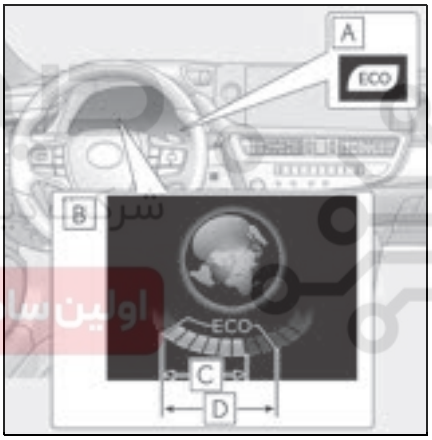
Blank: No item

*1: To reset, display the desired item and press and hold "OK" of the meter control switches.

*2: This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption. As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

*3: When only a small amount of fuel is added to the tank, the display may not be updated.
When refueling, turn the engine switch off. If the vehicle is refueled without turning the engine switch off, the display may not be updated.

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Light

During Eco-friendly acceleration (Eco driving), the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn on. When the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, or when the vehicle is stopped, the light turns off.

B Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

Suggests the Zone of Eco driving with current Eco driving ratio based on acceleration.

C Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

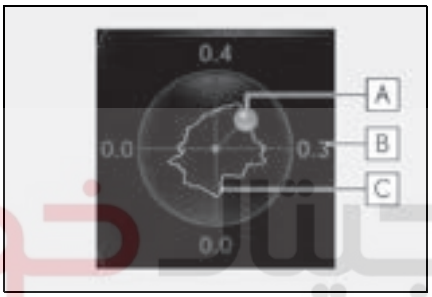
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If the acceleration exceeds the Zone of Eco driving, the right side of the Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display will illuminate. At this time, the Eco Driving Indicator Light will turn off.

D Zone of Eco driving

G-force (F SPORT models)

Displays lateral G-forces on the vehicle.



A Acceleration G-force on the vehicle

B Current G-force value (analyzed value of front/rear and left/right G-forces)

C Record of the maximum G-forces

This display is intended for use as a guideline. Depending on factors such as the road surface condition, temperature and vehicle speed, the display may not show the actual condition of the vehicle.

- Resetting the record of maximum G-forces

Press and hold "OK" of the meter control switches to reset the record.

- Peak hold function

If lateral G-forces of 0.5 G or greater are generated, the G-force value display will turn amber and be held for 2 seconds.

Gear Position (F SPORT models)

Displays the current shift range or gear position when the shift lever is in D or S.

Eco Driving Indicator

Eco Driving Indicator will not operate under the following conditions:

- The shift lever is in any position other than D.
- A paddle shift switch is operated.
- The driving mode is set to other than normal mode or Eco drive mode.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 130 km/h (80 mph) or higher.

Navigation system-linked display (if equipped)

Select to display the following navigation system-linked information.

- Route guidance to destination
- Compass display (heading-up display)

Audio system-linked display

Select to enable selection of an audio source or track on the meter using the meter control switches.

Driving support system information display

Select to display the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.226)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

(→P.235)

- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.246)
- Cruise control (if equipped) (→P.256)

Settings display

Meter display settings that can be changed

- Language

Select to change the language displayed.

- Units

Select to change the units of measure displayed.

- Speedometer display (except F SPORT models)

Select to set the display of the speedometer to digital or analog.

- Drive information 1/Drive information 2

Select to select up to 2 items (→P.107) that will be displayed on each Drive information screen (Drive information 1 screen and Drive information 2 screen) respectively.

- Clock

Select to switch between 12-hour display and 24-hour display.

- Pop-up display

Select to enable/disable some pop-up displays for each relevant system.

- Rev indicator (F SPORT models)

• Select to enable/disable the rev indicator.

• Select to set the engine speed at which the rev indicator (amber) will begin to be displayed.

- Rev peak (F SPORT models)

Select to enable/disable the rev peak.

- Eco Driving Indicator Light

Select to enable/disable the Eco Driving Indicator Light.

- Default setting

Select to reset the meter display settings to the default setting.

Vehicle functions and settings that can be changed

→P.462

Suspension of the settings display

- Some settings cannot be changed while driving. When changing settings, park the vehicle in a safe place.
- If a warning message is displayed, operation of the settings display will be suspended.

WARNING

Cautions during setting up the display

As the engine needs to be running during setting up the display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

During setting up the display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while setting up the display features.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Suggestion function

Displays suggestions to the driver in the following situations. To select a response to a displayed suggestion, use the meter control switches.

Suggestion to turn on the headlights

If the headlights turn off, and the vehicle speed is 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher for a certain amount of time when the surroundings are dark, a suggestion message will be displayed.

Suggestion to turn off the headlights

If the headlights are left on for a certain amount of time with the headlight switch in AUTO after the engine switch has been turned off, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to turn the headlights off.

To turn the headlights off, select "Yes".

If a front door is opened after the engine switch is turned off, this suggestion message will not be displayed.

Suggestion to close the power windows (linked to windshield wiper operation)

If the windshield wipers are operated with a power window open, a suggestion message will be displayed asking if you wish to close the power windows.

To close all of the power windows, select "Yes".

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (→P.462)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

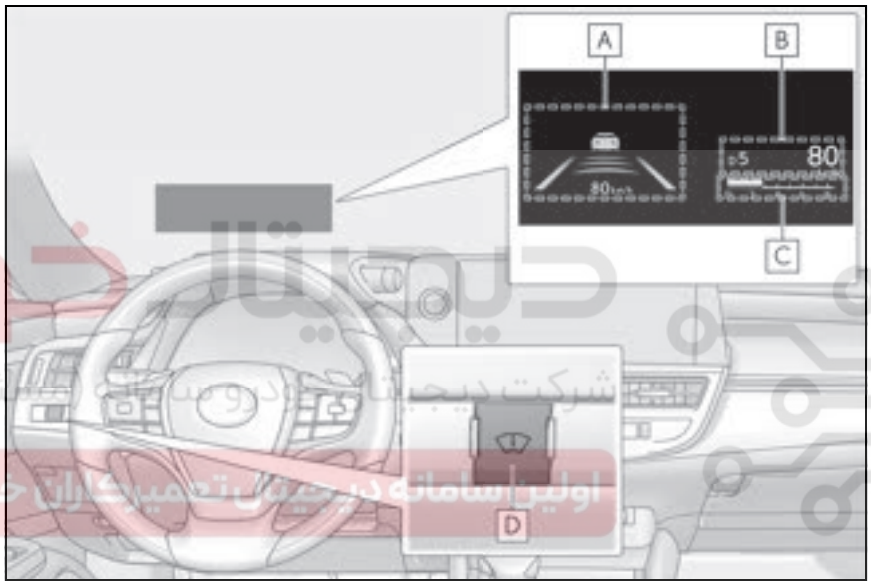
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Head-up display*

*: If equipped

The head-up display projects a variety of driving-related information and the operating state of the driving support systems on the windshield.

System components



Illustrations used in this text are intended as examples, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed by the head-up display.

A Driving support system display area (→P.114)

Navigation system-linked display area (if equipped)

Displays the following items which are linked to the navigation system:

- Route guidance to destination
- Street name
- Compass (heading-up display)

B Driving information display area

Displays the following items:

- Speedometer
- Shift position and shift range (→P.175, 179)

C Tachometer/Eco Driving Indicator display area (→P.115)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

D Head-up display switch

■ Head-up display will operate when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ When using the head-up display

The head-up display may seem dark or hard to see when viewed through sunglasses, especially polarized sunglasses. Adjust the brightness of the head-up display or remove your sunglasses.

■ Street name display

Only street names which are included in the map data will be displayed.

WARNING

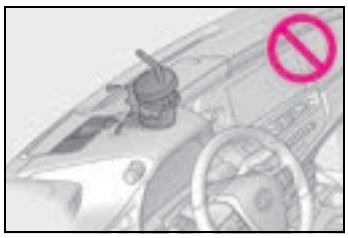
■ When using the head-up display

- Check that the position and brightness of the head-up display image does not interfere with safe driving. Incorrect adjustment of the image's position or brightness may obstruct the driver's view and lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Do not continuously look at the head-up display while driving as you may fail to see pedestrians, objects on the road, etc. ahead of the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ Head-up display projector

- Do not place any drinks near the head-up display projector. If the projector gets wet, electrical malfunctions may result.

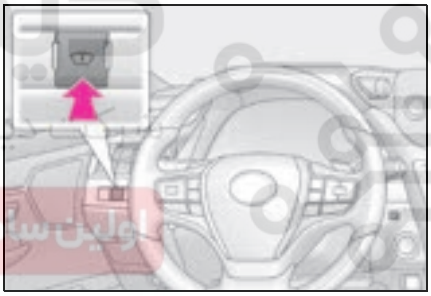


- Do not place anything on or put stickers onto the head-up display projector. Doing so could interrupt head-up display indications.
- Do not touch the inside of the head-up display projector or thrust sharp edges or the like into the projector. Doing so could cause mechanical malfunctions.

Using the head-up display

■ Enabling/disabling the head-up display

Press the head-up display switch.



■ Changing settings of the head-up display

The following settings can be changed on of the multi-information display. (→P.105)

- Brightness and vertical position of the head-up display

Select to adjust the brightness or vertical position of the head-up display.

- Tachometer/Eco Driving Indicator

Select to display the tachometer, Eco Driving Indicator or no content.

- Display content

2 Vehicle status information and indicators

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Select to enable/disable the following items:

- Route guidance to destination/street name
- Driving support system display*
- Compass (heading-up display)
- Audio system operation status

*: Make sure to enable this display when using the driving support systems

● Display angle

Select to adjust the angle of the head-up display.

■ Enabling/disabling of the head-up display

If the head-up display is disabled, it will remain disabled when the engine switch is turned off then back to IGNITION ON mode.

■ Display brightness

The brightness of the head-up display can be adjusted on  of the multi-information display. Also, it is automatically adjusted according to the ambient brightness.

■ Head-up display automatic position adjustment

If the display position is recorded into memory, the head-up display will be automatically adjusted to the desired position. (→P.143)

■ When the battery is disconnected

The customize settings of the head-up display will be reset.

WARNING

■ Caution for changing settings of the head-up display

As the engine needs to be running while changing the settings of the head-up display, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ When changing the settings of the head-up display

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while changing the settings of the head-up display.

Driving support system display area

Displays the operational status of the following systems:

- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped) (→P.226)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) (→P.235)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) (→P.246)

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of each system.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Pop-up display

Pop-up displays for the following systems will be displayed when necessary.

Driving support systems

Displays a warning/suggestion/advice message or the operating state of a relevant system.

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped) (→P.215)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.272)
- PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped) (→P.289)
- Brake Override System (→P.165)
- Drive-Start Control (DSC) (→P.169)

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display. For details, refer to the explanation of each system.

/ icons

These icons are linked to the multi-information display

: Master warning icon

Displayed when a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.421)

: Information icon

Displayed when a suggestion pop-up display (→P.111) or advice pop-up display is displayed on the multi-information display.

Warning message

Some warning messages are displayed when necessary, according to certain conditions.

Details of content displayed on the head-up display may differ from that displayed on the multi-information display.

Audio system operation status

Displayed when an audio remote control switch on the steering wheel is operated.

Hands-free system status

Displayed when the hands-free system is operated.

When a pop-up display is displayed

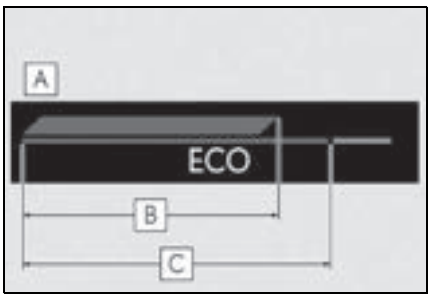
When a pop-up display is displayed, a current display may no longer be displayed. In this case, the display will return after the pop-up display disappears.

Tachometer/Eco Driving Indicator display area

Tachometer

Displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute.

Eco Driving Indicator



A Eco Driving Indicator Zone Display

B Eco driving ratio based on acceleration

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

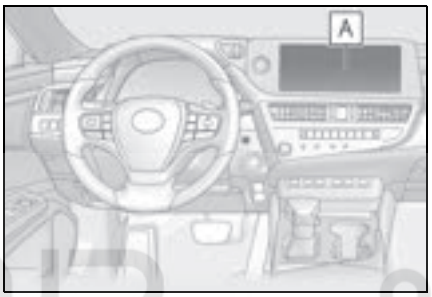
C Zone of Eco driving

Displayed content is the same as that displayed on the multi-information display (Eco Driving Indicator). For details, refer to P.108.

Fuel consumption information

Fuel consumption information can be displayed on the Center Display.

System components



A Center Display

Current screen

■ Display procedure

1 Select on the main menu.

2 Select “Trip information”.

3 Select “Current”.

■ Display



A Resetting the history data

B Fuel consumption in the past 15

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

minutes

C Current fuel consumption

D Average vehicle speed since the engine was started.

E Trip range

F Elapsed time since the engine was started.

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

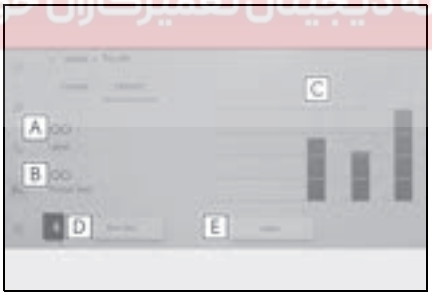
The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

History screen

Display procedure

1 Select on the main menu.
2 Select "Trip information".
3 Select "History".

Display



A Latest fuel consumption

B Best recorded fuel consumption

C Previous fuel consumption record

D Resetting the history data

E Updating the latest fuel consumption data

Use the displayed average fuel consumption as a reference.

The image is an example only, and may vary slightly from actual conditions.

Updating the history data

Update the latest fuel consumption by selecting "Update" to measure the current fuel consumption again.

Resetting the data

The fuel consumption data can be deleted by selecting "Clear data".

Trip range

Displays the estimated maximum distance that can be driven with the quantity of fuel remaining.

This distance is computed based on your average fuel consumption.
As a result, the actual distance that can be driven may differ from that displayed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

3-1. Key information

Keys 120

3-2. Opening, closing and locking the doors and trunk

Doors 124

Trunk 129

Smart entry & start system 136

3-3. Adjusting the seats

Front seats 141

Rear seats (reclining type) 142

Driving position memory 143

Head restraints 146

3-4. Adjusting the steering wheel and mirrors

Steering wheel 148

Inside rear view mirror 149

Outside rear view mirrors 150

3-5. Opening, closing the windows and moon roof

Power windows 153

Moon roof 155

Panoramic moon roof 158

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه هوشمند آموزش خودرو در ایران

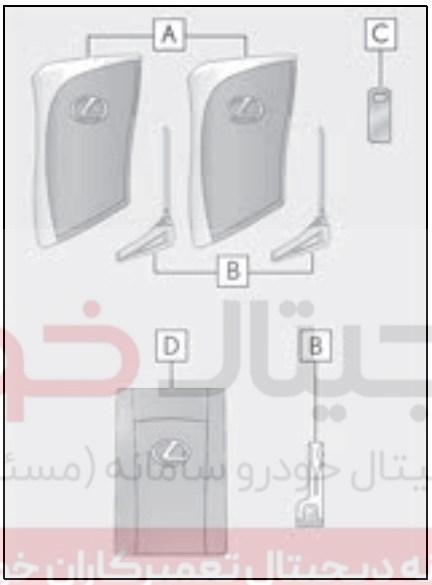
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Keys

Key types

The following keys are provided with the vehicle.



A Electronic keys

- Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.136)
- Operating the wireless remote control function

B Mechanical keys

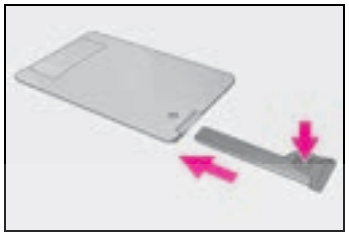
C Key number plate

D Card key (electronic key) (if equipped)

Operating the smart entry & start system (→P.136)

■ Card key (if equipped)

- The card key is not waterproof.
- The mechanical key that is stored inside the card key should be used only if a problem arises, such as when the card key does not operate properly.
- If it is difficult to take out the mechanical key, push down the lock release button using a pen tip etc. If it is still difficult to pull it out, use a coin etc.
- To store the mechanical key in the card key, insert it while pressing the lock release button.



- If the battery cover is not installed and the battery falls out or if the battery was removed because the key got wet, reinstall the battery with the positive terminal facing the Lexus emblem.



■ When riding in an aircraft

When bringing an electronic key onto an aircraft, make sure you do not press any buttons on the electronic key while inside the aircraft cabin. If you are carrying an electronic key in your bag etc., ensure that the buttons are not likely to be pressed accidentally. Pressing a button may cause the electronic key to emit radio waves that could interfere with the operation of the aircraft.

■ Electronic key battery depletion

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years. (The card key battery life is from one year to one year and a half.)
- If the battery becomes low, an alarm will

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

sound in the cabin when the engine is stopped.

- Battery-saving mode can reduce the power consumption of electronic keys that are not used for long periods of time. (→P.138)
- As the electronic key always receives radio waves, the battery will become depleted even if the electronic key is not used. The following symptoms indicate that the electronic key battery may be depleted. Replace the battery when necessary. (→P.395)
  - The smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The LED indicator on the key surface does not turn on.

You can replace the battery by yourself (→P.395). However, as there is a danger that the electronic key may be damaged, it is recommended that replacement be carried out by your Lexus dealer.

- To avoid serious deterioration, do not leave the electronic key within 1 m (3 ft.) of the following electrical appliances that produce a magnetic field:
  - TVs
  - Personal computers
  - Cellular phones, cordless phones and battery chargers
  - Recharging cellular phones or cordless phones
  - Table lamps
  - Induction cookers

■ Replacing the battery

→P.395

■ Confirmation of the registered key number

The number of keys already registered to the vehicle can be confirmed. Ask your Lexus dealer for details.

■ If "A New Key has been Registered Contact Your Dealer for Details" is shown on the multi-information display

This message will be displayed each time the driver's door is opened when the doors are unlocked from the outside for approximately 10 days after a new electronic key has been registered.

If this message is displayed but you have not had a new electronic key registered, ask your Lexus dealer to check if an unknown electronic key (other than those in your possession) has been registered.

NOTICE

■ To prevent key damage

- Do not drop the keys, subject them to strong shocks or bend them.
- Do not expose the keys to high temperatures for long periods of time.
- Do not get the keys wet or wash them in an ultrasonic washer etc.
- Do not attach metallic or magnetic materials to the keys or place the keys close to such materials.
- Do not disassemble the keys.
- Do not attach a sticker or anything else to the surface of the electronic key.
- Do not place the keys near objects that produce magnetic fields, such as TVs, audio systems and induction cookers.
- Do not place the keys near medical electrical equipment such as low-frequency therapy equipment or microwave therapy equipment, and do not receive medical attention with the keys on your person.

■ Carrying the electronic key on your person

Carry the electronic key 10 cm (3.9 in.) or more away from electric appliances that are turned on. Radio waves emitted from electric appliances within 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the electronic key may interfere with the key, causing the key to not function properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

■ **In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems**

→P.437

■ **When an electronic key is lost**

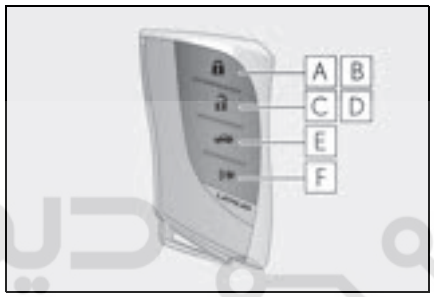
→P.436

■ **Handling the card key (if equipped)**

- Do not apply excess force when inserting the mechanical key into the card key. Doing so may damage the card key.
- If the battery or card key terminals get wet, the battery may corrode and the card key may stop working.
  If the key is dropped into water, or if drinking water, etc. is spilled on the key, immediately remove the battery cover and wipe the battery and terminals. (To remove the battery cover, lightly grasp and pull it.) If the battery is corroded, have your Lexus dealer replace the battery.
- Do not crush the battery cover or use a screwdriver to remove the battery cover. Forcibly removing the battery cover may bend or damage the key.
- If the battery cover is frequently removed, the battery cover may become loose.
- When installing the battery, make sure to check the direction of the battery. Installing the battery in the wrong direction may cause the battery to deplete rapidly.
- The surface of the card key may be damaged, or its coating may peel off in the following situations:
  - The card key is carried together with hard objects, such as coins and keys.
  - The card key is scraped with a sharp object, such as the tip of a mechanical pencil.
  - The surface of the card key is wiped with thinner or benzene.

Wireless remote control

The electronic keys are equipped with the following wireless remote control:



A Locks the doors (→P.124)

B Closes the windows and moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2 (→P.124)

C Unlocks the doors (→P.124)

D Opens the windows and moon roof*1, 2 or panoramic moon roof*1, 2 (→P.124)

E Opens the trunk (→P.132)

F Sounds the alarm*1

*1: If equipped

*2: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Theft deterrent panic mode (if equipped)**

When is pressed for longer than

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

about one second, an alarm will sound intermittently and the vehicle lights will flash to deter any person from trying to break into or damage your vehicle.

To stop the alarm, press any button on the electronic key.

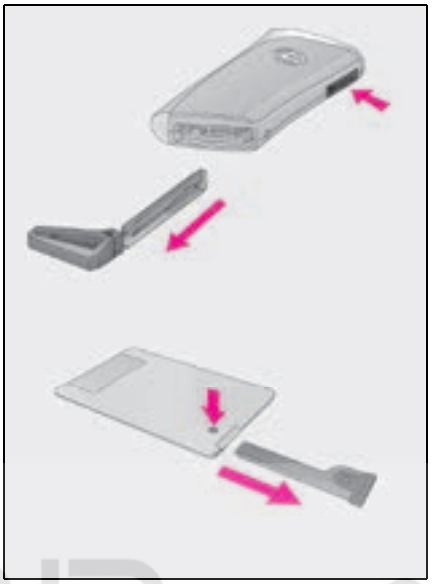


Using the mechanical key

To take out the mechanical key, push the release button and take the key out.

The mechanical key can only be inserted in one direction, as the key only has grooves on one side. If the key cannot be inserted in a lock cylinder, turn it over and re-attempt to insert it.

After using the mechanical key, store it in the electronic key. Carry the mechanical key together with the electronic key. If the electronic key battery is depleted or the entry function does not operate properly, you will need the mechanical key. (→P.437)



When required to leave the vehicle's key with a parking attendant

Turn the trunk opener main switch off (→P.135) and lock the glove box (→P.329) and armrest door (→P.344) as circumstances demand.
Remove the mechanical key for your own use and provide the attendant with the electronic key only.

If you lose your mechanical keys

→P.436

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

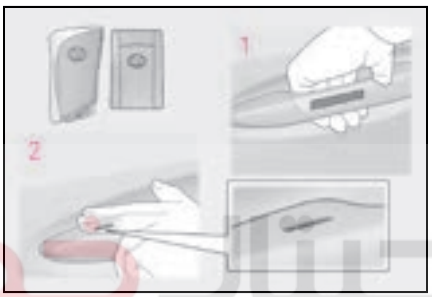
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Doors

Unlocking and locking the doors from the outside

■ Smart entry & start system

Carry the electronic key to enable this function.



1 Grip the door handle to unlock the doors.

Some models: Grip the driver's door handle to unlock the door. Holding the driver's door handle for approximately 2 seconds unlocks all the doors. Grip any passenger door handle to unlock all the doors.*

Make sure to touch the sensor on the back of the handle.

The doors cannot be unlocked for 3 seconds after the doors are locked.

*: The door unlock settings can be changed.

2 Touch the lock sensor (indentation on the upper part of the door handle) to lock all the doors.

Check that the door is securely locked.

■ Wireless remote control



1 Locks all the doors

Check that the door is securely locked.

Press and hold to close the windows and moon roof (if equipped) or panoramic moon roof (if equipped).*

2 Unlocks all the doors

Some models: Pressing the button unlocks the driver's door. Pressing the button again within 5 seconds unlocks the other doors.

Press and hold to open the windows and moon roof (if equipped) or panoramic moon roof (if equipped).*

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ Switching the door unlock function

It is possible to set which doors the entry function unlocks using the wireless remote control.

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Cancel the intrusion sensor and tilt sensor of the alarm system to prevent unintended triggering of the alarm while changing the settings. (if equipped) (→P.87)

3 When the indicator light on the key surface is not on, press and hold , or for approximately 5 seconds while pressing and holding .

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

The setting changes each time an operation is performed, as shown below. (When changing the setting continuously, release the buttons, wait for at least 5 seconds, and repeat step 3.)

Multi-information display/Beep	Unlocking function
*1 	Holding the driver's door handle unlocks only the driver's door.
*2  Exterior: Beeps 3 times Interior: Pings once	Holding a passenger's door handle unlocks all the doors.
 Exterior: Beeps twice Interior: Pings once	Holding a door handle unlocks all the doors.

*1: Left-hand drive vehicles

*2: Right-hand drive vehicles

To prevent unintended triggering of the alarm, unlock the doors using the wireless remote control and open and close a door once after the settings have been changed. (If a door is not opened within 30 seconds after is pressed, the doors will be locked again and the alarm will automatically be set.)

In a case that the alarm is triggered, immediately stop the alarm. (→P.85)

Impact detection door lock release system

In the event that the vehicle is subject to a strong impact, all the doors are unlocked. Depending on the force of the impact or the type of accident, however, the system may not operate.

Operation signals

The emergency flashers flash to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once; Unlocked: twice)

Some models: A buzzer sounds to indicate that the doors have been locked/unlocked. (Locked: once, Unlocked: twice)

A buzzer sounds to indicate that the windows and moon roof/panoramic moon roof are operating.

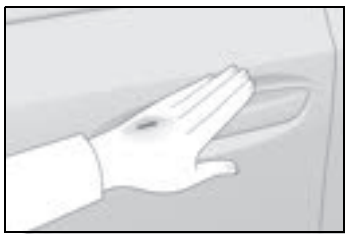
Security feature

If a door is not opened within approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is unlocked, the security feature automatically locks the vehicle again. (However, depending on the location of the electronic key, the key may be detected as being in the vehicle. In this case, vehicle may be unlocked.)

When the door cannot be locked by the lock sensor on the upper part of the door handle

When the doors cannot be locked even if the lock sensor on the surface of the door handle is touched by a finger, touch the lock sensor with the palm.

If you are wearing gloves, remove them.



Door lock buzzer

A buzzer sounds continuously for 5 seconds in the following situations. Fully close all the doors and lock the vehicle once more.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- If an attempt to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system is made when a door other than the door you are locking is open.
- If an attempt to lock the doors using the wireless remote control is made when a door is open.

■ Setting the alarm

Locking the doors will set the alarm system. (→P.85)

■ Conditions affecting the operation of the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control

→P.138

■ If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly

Use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the doors. (→P.437)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.395)

■ If the battery is discharged

The doors cannot be locked and unlocked using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control. Lock or unlock the doors using the mechanical key. (→P.437)

■ Rear seat reminder function

- In order to remind you not to forget luggage, etc. in the rear seat, when the engine switch is turned off after any of the following conditions are met, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display for approximately 6 seconds.
  - The engine is started within 10 minutes after opening and closing a rear door.
  - A rear door has been opened and closed after the engine was started.

However, if a rear door is opened and then closed within approximately 2 seconds, the rear seat reminder function may not operate.

- The rear seat reminder function determines that luggage, etc. has been placed in a rear seat based on opening and closing of a rear door. Therefore, depending on the situation, the rear seat reminder function may not operate and you may still forget luggage, etc. in the rear seat, or it may operate unnecessarily.
- The rear seat reminder function can be enabled/disabled. (→P.462)

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. unlocking function using a key) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462

⚠ WARNING

■ To prevent an accident

Observe the following precautions while driving the vehicle.
Failure to do so may result in a door opening and an occupant being thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Ensure that all doors are properly closed and locked.
- Do not pull the inside door handle while driving.
  For vehicles with model code* that has "W" as the last letter: Be especially careful for the front doors, as the doors may be opened even if the inside lock buttons are in locked position.
  Except for vehicles with model code* that has "W" as the last letter: Be especially careful for the driver's door, as the door may be opened even if the inside lock button is in locked position.

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

- Set the rear door child-protector locks when children are seated in the rear seats.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When opening or closing a door

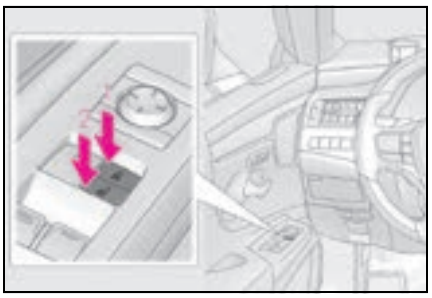
Check the surroundings of the vehicle such as whether the vehicle is on an incline, whether there is enough space for a door to open and whether a strong wind is blowing. When opening or closing the door, hold the door handle tightly to prepare for any unpredictable movement.

■ When using the wireless remote control and operating the power windows or moon roof or panoramic moon roof

Operate the power window or the moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window or moon roof or panoramic moon roof. Also, do not allow children to operate the wireless remote control. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window, moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Unlocking and locking the doors from the inside

■ Door lock switches (to lock/unlock)

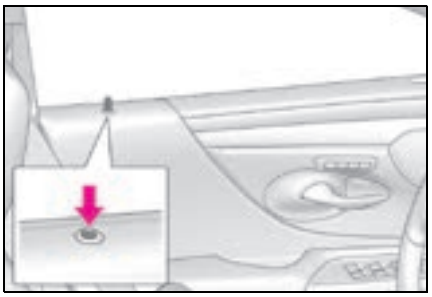


1 Locks all the doors

2 Unlocks all the doors

■ Inside lock buttons (to lock)

Push down the inside lock button to lock the door.



■ Inside door handles (to unlock)

▶ For vehicles with model code* that has "W" as the last letter

For the front doors: Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

For the rear doors: Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

▶ Except for vehicles with model code* that has "W" as the last letter

For the driver's door: Pull the handle to unlock and open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

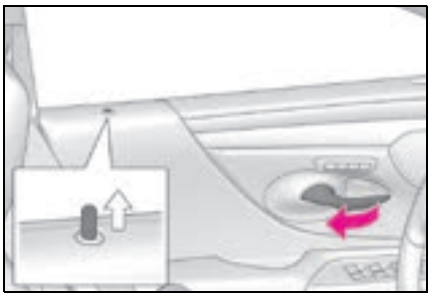
For the passenger doors: Pull the handle to unlock the door. Pull the handle a second time to open the door.

When the door is unlocked, the inside lock button will pop up.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)



■ Locking the front doors from the outside without a key

1 Push down the inside lock button.
2 Close the door while pulling the door handle.

The door cannot be locked if the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, or the electronic key is left inside the vehicle.

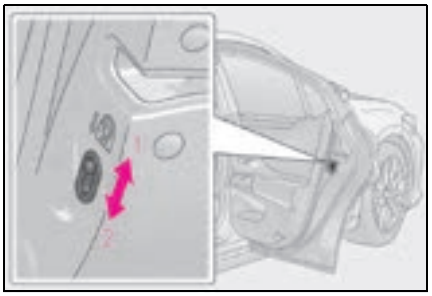
However, the key may not be detected correctly and the door may be locked.

■ Open door warning buzzer

If the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h (3 mph), a buzzer sounds to indicate that the door(s), the hood or the trunk is not fully closed.
The open door(s), the hood or the trunk is displayed on the multi-information display.

Rear door child-protector lock

The door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set.



1 Unlock
2 Lock

These locks can be set to prevent children from opening the rear doors. Push down on each rear door switch to lock both rear doors.

Automatic door locking and unlocking systems

The following functions can be set or canceled:

For instructions on customizing, refer to P.462.

Function	Operation
Speed linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when the vehicle speed is approximately 20 km/h (12 mph) or higher.
Shift position linked door locking function	All doors are automatically locked when the shift lever is shifted to a position other than P.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function	Operation
Shift position linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when the shift lever is shifted to P.
Driver's door linked door unlocking function	All doors are automatically unlocked when driver's door is opened within approximately 45 seconds after turning the engine switch off.

Trunk

The trunk can be opened using the trunk opener switch, entry function or wireless remote control.

If the vehicle is equipped with a power trunk lid, the trunk can be closed using the trunk closer.

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **Before driving**

- Make sure that the trunk lid is fully closed. If the trunk lid is not fully closed, it may open unexpectedly while driving and hit near-by objects or luggage in the trunk may be thrown out, causing an accident.
- Do not allow children to play in the trunk.
  If a child is accidentally locked in the trunk, they could suffer from heat exhaustion, suffocation or other injuries.
- Do not allow a child to open or close the trunk lid.
  Doing so may cause the trunk lid to open unexpectedly, or cause the child's hands, head, or neck to be caught by the closing trunk lid.

■ **Important points while driving**

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. In the event of sudden braking or a collision, they are susceptible to death or serious injury.

■ **Using the trunk**

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause parts of the body to be caught, resulting in serious injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Remove any heavy loads, such as snow and ice, from the trunk lid before opening it. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, thoroughly check to make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.
- Use caution when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather as it may move abruptly in strong wind.
- Vehicles without power trunk lid: The trunk lid may suddenly shut if it is not opened fully. It is more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on an incline than on a level surface, so beware of the trunk lid unexpectedly opening or closing by itself. Make sure that the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.



- When closing the trunk lid, take extra care to prevent your fingers etc. from being caught.



- Vehicles without power trunk lid: When closing the trunk lid, make sure to press it lightly on its outer surface. If the trunk grip is used to fully close the trunk lid, it may result in hands or arms being caught.
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. Such additional weight on the trunk lid may cause the lid to suddenly shut again after it is opened.

Trunk easy closer (vehicles with power trunk lid)

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position. It takes several seconds before the trunk easy closer begins to operate. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid, as this may cause bone fractures or other serious injuries.



Power trunk lid (if equipped)

Observe the following precautions when operating the power trunk lid.
Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Check the safety of the surrounding area to make sure there are no obstacles or anything that could cause any of your belongings to get caught.
- If anyone is in the vicinity, make sure they are safe and let them know that the trunk is about to open or close.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If the trunk closer switch is pressed while the trunk lid is opening during automatic operation, the trunk lid stops opening. Take extra care when on an incline, as the trunk lid may open or close suddenly.
- On an incline, the trunk lid may suddenly shut after it opens automatically. Make sure the trunk lid is fully open and secure before using the trunk.
- In the following situations, the power trunk lid may detect an abnormality and automatic operation may be stopped. In this case, the trunk lid has to be operated manually. Take extra care in this situation, as the stopped trunk lid may suddenly shut, causing an accident.
  - When the trunk lid contacts an obstacle
  - When the battery voltage suddenly drops, such as when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode or the engine is started during automatic operation
- Do not attach any accessories other than genuine Lexus parts to the trunk lid. The power trunk lid may not operate, causing itself to malfunction, or the trunk lid may suddenly shut again after it is opened.

■ Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes to become quite hot. When operating the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipe.
- Do not operate the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid if there is little space under the rear bumper.

■ Jam protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause serious injury.

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the trunk lid fully closes. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else in the trunk lid.
- The jam protection function may not work depending on the shape of the object that is caught. Be careful not to catch fingers or anything else.

NOTICE

■ To prevent trunk easy closer malfunctions (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Do not apply force to the trunk lid while the trunk easy closer is operating.

■ To prevent damage to the power trunk lid (vehicles with power trunk lid)

- Make sure that there is no luggage or snow on the trunk lid before operating the power trunk lid. In addition, make sure that there is no ice between the trunk lid and frame that prevents movement of the trunk lid. Operating the power trunk lid when excessive load is present on the trunk lid may cause a malfunction.
- Do not apply excessive force to the trunk lid while the power trunk lid is operating.

Opening/closing the trunk

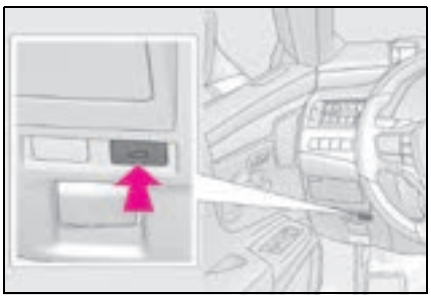
■ Trunk opener switch

Press the trunk opener switch.

3 Before driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

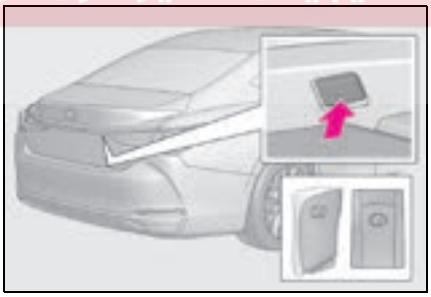


Smart entry & start system

While carrying the electronic key, press the button.

When all the doors are unlocked using one of the following methods, the trunk can be opened without the electronic key:

- Entry function
- Wireless remote control
- Door lock switches
- Automatic door unlocking system
- Mechanical key



Wireless remote control

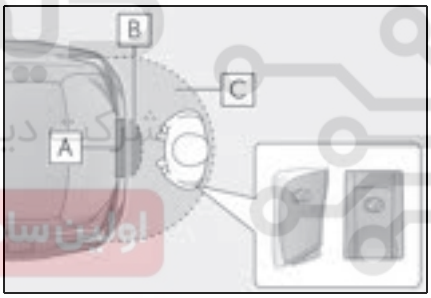
Press and hold the switch.

Some models: A buzzer sounds.



Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (vehicles with power trunk lid)

1 While carrying an electronic key, stand within the smart entry & start system operation range, approximately 30 to 50 cm (11.8 to 19.7 in.) from the rear bumper.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Trunk Lid operation detection area

C Smart entry & start system operation detection area (→P.137)

2 Perform a kick operation by moving your foot to within approximately 10 cm (3.9 in.) of the rear bumper, and then pulling your foot back after the buzzer sounds.

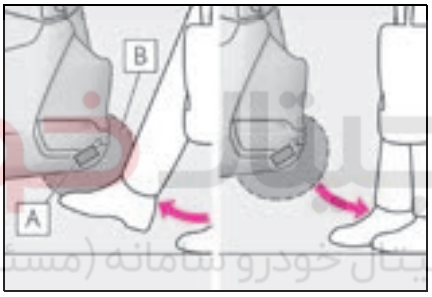
- Perform the entire kick operation within 1 second.
- The trunk lid will not start operating

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

while a foot is detected under the rear bumper.

- Operate the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid without contacting the rear bumper with your foot.
- If another electronic key is in the cabin or trunk, it may take slightly longer than normal for the operation to occur.
- If the buzzer sounds twice, wait for 3 seconds or more and then perform a kick operation again.



A Kick sensor

B Hands Free Power Trunk Lid operation detection area

3 When the kick sensor detects that your foot is pulled back, a buzzer will sound and the trunk will automatically fully open/close.

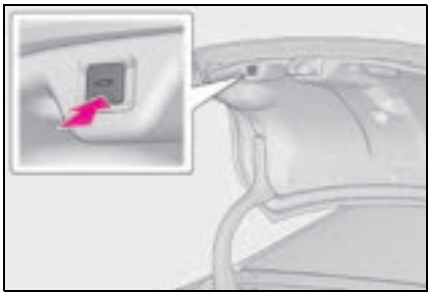
If a foot is moved under the rear bumper while the trunk lid is opening, the trunk lid will stop moving.
If a foot is moved under the rear bumper while the trunk lid is closing, the trunk lid will open.

■ Trunk closer switch (vehicles with power trunk lid)

Press the trunk closer switch.

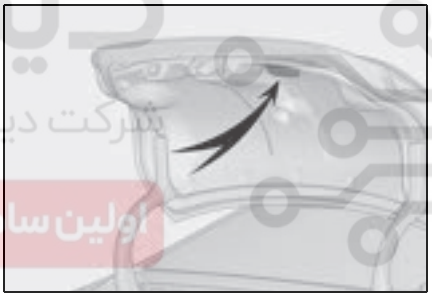
A buzzer will sound and the trunk lid will fully close.

Pressing the switch while the trunk lid is closing opens the trunk lid again.



■ Trunk grip

Using the trunk grip, pull down the trunk lid without applying sideways force and push the trunk lid down from the outside to close it.



■ Trunk light

The trunk light turns on when the trunk is opened.

■ Trunk easy closer (vehicles with power trunk lid)

In the event that the trunk lid is left slightly open, the trunk easy closer will automatically close it to the fully closed position.

- The trunk easy closer will operate regardless of the engine switch mode.
- If the trunk easy closer does not operate, open the trunk to the half open position or more and then close it.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Function to prevent the trunk being locked with the electronic key inside**

- When all doors are locked, closing the trunk lid with the electronic key left inside the trunk will sound an alarm.
  In this case, the trunk lid can be opened pressing the trunk release button on the trunk lid.
- If the spare electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors locked, the key confinement prevention function is activated so the trunk can be opened. In order to prevent theft, take all electronic keys with you when leaving the vehicle.
- If the electronic key is put in the trunk with all the doors locked, the key may not be detected depending on the location of the key and the surrounding radio wave conditions. In this case, the key confinement prevention function cannot be activated, causing the doors to lock when the trunk is closed. Make sure to check where the key is before closing the trunk.
- The key confinement prevention function cannot be activated if any one of the doors is unlocked. In this case, open the trunk using the trunk opener.

■ **Overload protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

The trunk lid will not operate when excessive load is present on the top of the trunk lid.

■ **Fall-down protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

While the trunk lid is opening automatically, applying excessive force to it will stop the opening operation to prevent the trunk lid from rapidly falling down.

■ **Jam protection function (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

While the trunk lid is closing automatically, the trunk lid will stop closing and open if something gets caught.

■ **Using the mechanical key**

The trunk can be also opened using the mechanical key. (→P.437)

If the trunk is unlocked using the mechanical key, the power trunk lid and trunk easy closer will not be operational. To return them to an operational state, fully close the trunk lid by hand.

■ **If the smart entry & start system or the wireless remote control does not operate properly**

Use the mechanical key to unlock the trunk. (→P.437)
Replace the key battery with a new one if it is depleted. (→P.395)

■ **Hands Free Power Trunk Lid operating conditions (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

- When the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (kick sensor) operation setting is turned on (→P.462) and the engine switch is turned off
- When an electronic key is carried within the operation range

■ **Situations in which the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid may not operate properly (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

In the following situations, the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid may not operate properly:

- When a foot remains under the rear bumper
- If the rear bumper is strongly hit with a foot or is touched for a while
  If the rear bumper has been touched for a while, wait for a short time before attempting to operate the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid again.
- When operated while a person is too close to the rear bumper
- When an external radio wave source interferes with the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle (→P.138)
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source or metallic object which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, fluorescent light, or above a steel plate.
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower,

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When mud, snow, ice, etc. is attached to the rear bumper
- When the vehicle has been parked for a while near objects that may move and contact the rear bumper, such as plants
- When an accessory is installed to the rear bumper
  If an accessory has been installed, turn the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (kick sensor) operation setting off.

■ **Preventing unintentional operation of the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (vehicles with power trunk lid)**

When an electronic key is in the operation range, the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid may operate unintentionally, so be careful in the following situations.

- When a large amount of water is applied to the rear bumper, such as when the vehicle is being washed or in heavy rain
- When dirt is wiped off the rear bumper
- When a small animal or small object, such as a ball, moves under the rear bumper
- When an object is moved from under the rear bumper
- If someone is swinging their legs while sitting on the rear bumper
- If the legs or another part of someone's body contacts the rear bumper while passing by the vehicle
- When the vehicle is parked near an electrical noise source which affects the sensitivity of the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid, such as a pay parking spot, gas station, electrically heated road, or fluorescent light
- When the vehicle is near a TV tower, electric power plant, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When the vehicle is parked in a place where objects such as plants are near the rear bumper
- If luggage, etc. is set near the rear bumper
- If accessories or a vehicle cover is installed/removed near the rear bumper
- When the vehicle is being towed

To prevent unintentional operation, turn the Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (kick sensor) operation setting off. (→P.462)

■ **Open door warning buzzer**

→P.128

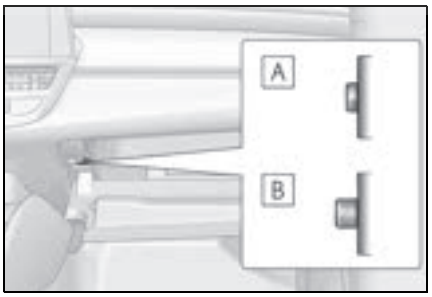
■ **Customization**

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.462)

Protecting luggage against theft

The trunk opener switch can be temporarily disabled to protect luggage stored in the trunk against theft.

Turn the trunk opener main switch in the glove box off to disable the trunk opener.



A On

B Off

When the trunk opener main switch is off, the trunk lid cannot be opened even with the wireless remote control, entry function

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

or Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (if equipped).

■ When leaving a key to the vehicle with a parking attendant

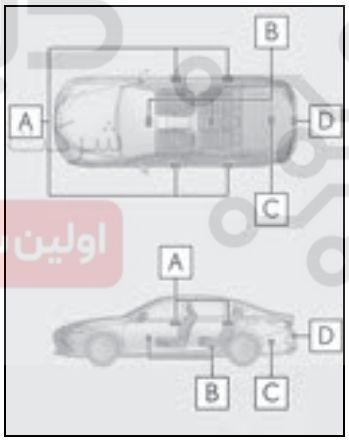
→P.123

Smart entry & start system

The following operations can be performed simply by carrying the electronic key (including the card key) on your person, for example in your pocket. The driver should always carry the electronic key.

- Locks and unlocks the doors (→P.124)
- Opens the trunk (→P.132)
- Starts the engine (→P.171)

■ Antenna location



A Antennas outside the cabin

B Antennas inside the cabin

C Antenna inside the trunk

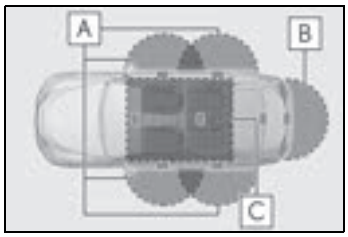
D Antenna outside the trunk

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Effective range (areas within which the electronic key is detected)**



A When locking or unlocking the doors
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of an outside door handle. (Only the doors detecting the key can be operated.)

B When opening the trunk
The system can be operated when the electronic key is within about 0.7 m (2.3 ft.) of the trunk release button.

C When starting the engine or changing engine switch modes
The system can be operated when the electronic key is inside the vehicle.

■ **If an alarm sounds or a warning message is displayed**

An alarm sounds and warning messages are displayed on the multi-information display to protect against unexpected accidents or theft of the vehicle resulting from erroneous operation. When a warning message is displayed, take appropriate measures based on the displayed message.

When only an alarm sounds, circumstances and correction procedures are as follows.

● When an exterior alarm sounds once for 5 seconds

Situation	Correction procedure
The trunk was closed while the electronic key was still inside the trunk and all the doors were locked.	Retrieve the electronic key from the trunk and close the trunk lid.
An attempt was made to lock the vehicle while a door was open.	Close all of the doors and lock the doors again.

● When an interior alarm sounds continuously

Situation	Correction procedure
The engine switch was turned to ACCESSORY mode while the driver's door was open (or the driver's door was opened while the engine switch was in ACCESSORY mode).	Turn the engine switch off and close the driver's door.
The engine switch was turned off while the driver's door was open.	Close the driver's door.

■ **If "Key Detected In Vehicle" is shown on the multi-information display**

An attempt was made to lock the doors using the smart entry & start system while the electronic key was still inside the vehicle. Retrieve the electronic key from the vehicle and lock the doors again.

■ **Battery-saving function**

The battery-saving function will be activated in order to prevent the electronic key battery and the battery from being discharged while the vehicle is not in operation for a long time.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

● In the following situations, the smart entry & start system may take some time to unlock the doors.
- The electronic key has been left within approximately 2 m (6 ft.) of the outside of the vehicle for 10 minutes or longer.
- The smart entry & start system has not been used for 5 days or longer.

● If the smart entry & start system has not been used for 14 days or longer, the doors cannot be unlocked at any doors except the driver's door. In this case, take hold of the driver's door handle, or use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key, to unlock the doors.

■ Turning an electronic key to battery-saving mode

● When battery-saving mode is set, battery depletion is minimized by stopping the electronic key from receiving radio waves.

Press twice while pressing and holding . Confirm that the electronic key indicator flashes 4 times.

While the battery-saving mode is set, the smart entry & start system cannot be used.

To cancel the function, press any of the electronic key buttons.



● Electronic keys that will not be used for long periods of time can be set to the battery-saving mode in advance.

■ When electronic key function stops

If the position of the electronic key has not changed for a certain amount of time such as when the electronic key is left somewhere, the function of the electronic key stops to reduce depletion of the battery.

■ Conditions affecting operation

The smart entry & start system uses weak radio waves. In the following situations, the communication between the electronic key and the vehicle may be affected, preventing the smart entry & start system, wireless remote control and engine immobilizer system from operating properly. (Ways of coping: →P.437)

● When the electronic key battery is depleted

● Near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise

● When the electronic key is in contact with, or is covered by the following metallic objects
- Cards to which aluminum foil is attached
- Cigarette boxes that have aluminum foil inside
- Metallic wallets or bags
- Coins
- Hand warmers made of metal
- Media such as CDs and DVDs

● When other wireless keys (that emit radio waves) are being used nearby

● When carrying the electronic key together with the following devices that emit radio waves
- Portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication devices
- Another electronic key or a wireless key that emits radio waves
- Personal computers or personal digital assistants (PDAs)
- Digital audio players
- Portable game systems

● If window tint with a metallic content or metallic objects are attached to the rear window

● When the electronic key is placed near a battery charger or electronic devices

● When the vehicle is parked in a pay parking spot where radio waves are emitted.

■ Notes for the entry function

● Even when the electronic key is within the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

effective range (detection areas), the system may not operate properly in the following cases:

- The electronic key is too close to the window or outside door handle, near the ground, or in a high place when the doors are locked or unlocked.
- The electronic key is near the ground or in a high place, or too close to the center of the rear bumper when the trunk is opened.
- The electronic key is on the instrument panel, rear package tray or floor, or in the door pockets or glove box when the engine is started or engine switch modes are changed.

● Do not leave the electronic key on top of the instrument panel or near the door pockets when exiting the vehicle. Depending on the radio wave reception conditions, it may be detected by the antenna outside the cabin and the doors will become lockable from the outside, possibly trapping the electronic key inside the vehicle.

● As long as the electronic key is within the effective range, the doors may be locked or unlocked by anyone. However, only the doors detecting the electronic key can be used to unlock the vehicle.

● Even if the electronic key is not inside the vehicle, it may be possible to start the engine if the electronic key is near the window.

● The doors may unlock or lock if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle, such as in the rain or in a car wash, when the electronic key is within the effective range. (The doors will automatically be locked after approximately 30 seconds if the doors are not opened and closed.)

● If the wireless remote control is used to lock the doors when the electronic key is near the vehicle, there is a possibility that the door may not be unlocked by the entry function. (Use the wireless remote control to unlock the doors.)

● Touching the door lock sensor while wearing gloves may delay or prevent lock operation. Remove the gloves and touch the lock sensor again.

● Some models: When the lock operation is performed using the lock sensor, recognition signals will be shown up to two consecutive times. After this, no recognition signals will be given.

● If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In this case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the electronic key in a location 2 m (6 ft.) or more away from the vehicle. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.138)

● If the electronic key is inside the vehicle and a door handle becomes wet during a car wash, a message may be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer will sound outside the vehicle. To turn off the alarm, lock all the doors.

● The lock sensor may not work properly if it comes into contact with ice, snow, mud, etc. Clean the lock sensor and attempt to operate it again.

● A sudden approach to the effective range or door handle may prevent the doors from being unlocked. In this case, return the door handle to the original position and check that the doors unlock before pulling the door handle again.

● If there is another electronic key in the detection area, it may take slightly longer to unlock the doors after the door handle is gripped.

■ When the vehicle is not driven for extended periods

● To prevent theft of the vehicle, do not leave the electronic key within 2 m (6 ft.) of the vehicle.

● The smart entry & start system can be deactivated in advance.

● Battery-saving mode can reduce the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

power consumption of electronic keys. (→P.138)

■ To operate the system properly

- Make sure to carry the electronic key when operating the system. Do not get the electronic key too close to the vehicle when operating the system from the outside of the vehicle.
  Depending on the position and holding condition of the electronic key, the key may not be detected correctly and the system may not operate properly. (The alarm may go off accidentally, or the door lock prevention function may not operate.)
- Do not leave the electronic key inside the trunk.
  The key confinement prevention function may not operate, depending on the location of the key (close to a spare tire, the inside edge of the trunk), conditions (inside a metal bag, close to metallic objects) and the radio waves in the surrounding area. (→P.134)

■ If an electronic key does not work properly

- If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked and the trunk cannot be opened, perform the following.
  - Bring the electronic key close to the door handle and perform a lock or unlock operation.
  - Bring the electronic key close to the button on the trunk (→P.132) and press the button.
  - Use the wireless remote control.

  If the doors cannot be locked or unlocked by perform the above, use the mechanical key. (→P.437)

  For Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt:
  However, if the mechanical key is used while the alarm system is set, the warning will sound. (→P.85)
- If the engine cannot be started, refer to P.439

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. smart entry & start system) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to the explanations for the following operations.

- Locking and unlocking the doors and opening the trunk:
  Use the wireless remote control or mechanical key. (→P.124, 132, 437)
- Starting the engine and changing engine switch modes: →P.439
- Stopping the engine: →P.172

WARNING

■ Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

- People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should maintain a reasonable distance between themselves and the smart entry & start system antennas. (→P.136)
  The radio waves may affect the operation of such devices. If necessary, the entry function can be disabled. Ask your Lexus dealer for details, such as the frequency of radio waves and timing of the emitted radio waves. Then, consult your doctor to see if you should disable the entry function.
- Users of any electrical medical device other than implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the manufacturer of the device for information about its operation under the influence of radio waves.
  Radio waves could have unexpected effects on the operation of such medical devices.

Ask your Lexus dealer for details on disabling the entry function.

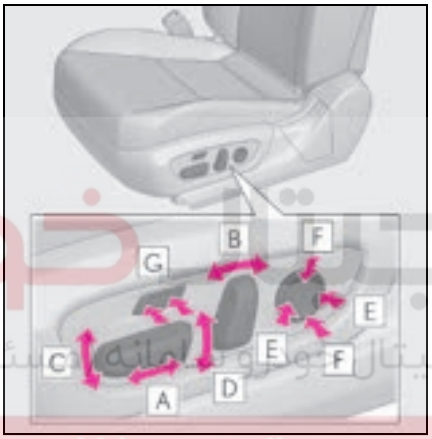
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Front seats

The seats can be adjusted (longitudinally, vertically, etc.). Adjust the seat to ensure the correct driving posture.

Adjustment procedure



A Seat position adjustment

B Seatback angle adjustment

C Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment

D Vertical height adjustment

E Lumbar support adjustment

F Pelvic support adjustment (if equipped)

G Seat cushion length adjustment (if equipped for driver's side)

When adjusting the seat

- Make sure that no surrounding passengers or objects are in contact with the seat.
- Take care when adjusting the seat so that the head restraint does not touch the ceiling.

Power easy access system (if equipped)

The driver's seat and steering wheel move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.143)

WARNING

When adjusting the seat position

- Take care when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other passengers are not injured by the moving seat.
- Do not put your hands under the seat or near the moving parts to avoid injury.
  Fingers or hands may become jammed in the seat mechanism.
- Make sure to leave enough space around the feet so they do not get stuck.

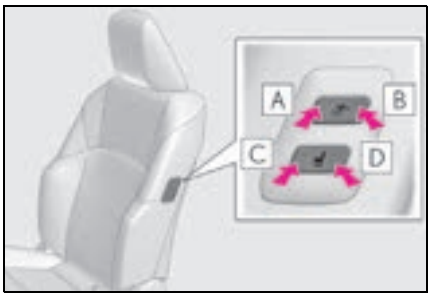
Seat adjustment

To reduce the risk of sliding under the lap belt during a collision, do not recline the seat more than necessary.
If the seat is too reclined, the lap belt may slide past the hips and apply restraint forces directly to the abdomen, or your neck may contact the shoulder belt, increasing the risk of death or serious injury in the event of an accident.
Adjustments should not be made while driving as the seat may unexpectedly move and cause the driver to lose control of the vehicle.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Seat operation switches on the side of the front passenger's seat (if equipped)



A Tilts the seatback forward

B Tilts the seatback backward

C Moves the seat forward

D Moves the seat backward

WARNING

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Do not operate the front passenger's seat when a passenger is seated in it. In addition, do not let anyone sit down in the front passenger's seat while the seat is being operated.

The front passenger may catch their legs between the instrument panel and seat, resulting in injury.

NOTICE

■ Operating the front passenger's seat from the driver's seat or rear seat

Before operating the front passenger's seat, make sure that there is no luggage or any other objects on the seat or in the footwell that could prevent its operation.

Such items may result in excess force being applied, causing damage to the seat and/or the luggage.

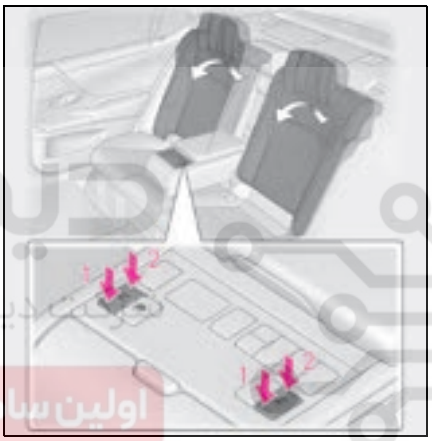
Rear seats (reclining type)*

*: If equipped

The seatbacks of the rear seats can be adjusted to a comfortable positions.

Adjusting seatback angle

Press the switch.



1 Tilts the seatback forward

2 Tilts the seatback backward

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Driving position memory*

*: If equipped

This feature automatically adjusts the positions of the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to make entering and exiting the vehicle easier or to suit your preferences.

Up to 3 different driving positions can be recorded.

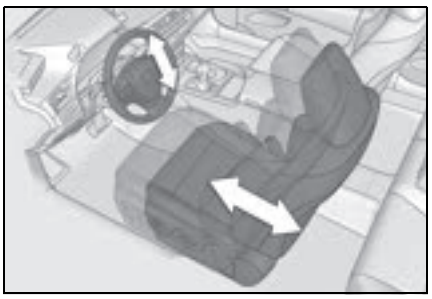
Each electronic key (including a card key) can be registered to recall your preferred driving position.

Power easy access system

The seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to allow the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

When all of the following have been performed, the seat and steering wheel are automatically adjusted to a position that allows the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.
- The driver's seat belt has been unfastened.



When any of the following has been performed, the driver's seat and steering wheel automatically return to their original positions.

- The engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode.
- The driver's seat belt has been fastened.

Operation of the power easy access system

- When exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system may not operate if the seat is already in the rearmost or uppermost position or close to the rear seat.
- If the seat position is adjusted during power easy access system operation, the automatic operation will stop. (The seat will change to manual operation.)
- If the seat position is adjusted during or after the power easy access system operation when the driver is exiting the vehicle, the power easy access system will not operate when entering the vehicle.

Customization

The seat movement amount settings of the power easy access system can be customized.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Recording a driving position into memory

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Adjust the driver's seat, steering wheel, outside rear view mirrors and head-up display (if equipped) to the desired positions.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, or within 3 seconds after the "SET" button is pressed, press button "1", "2" or "3" until the buzzer sounds.

If the selected button has already been preset, the previously recorded position will be overwritten.



Vehicles with position memory for the front passenger's seat: To record the position of the front passenger's seat, adjust the front passenger's seat to the desired position and perform step **4** using the buttons on the front passenger's side.

Seat positions that can be memorized (→P.141)

The positions adjusted by the following procedure can be recorded:

- Seatback angle adjustment
- Seat cushion (front) angle adjustment
- Vertical height adjustment

In order to correctly use the driving position memory function

If a seat position is already in the furthest possible position and the seat is operated in the same direction, the recorded position may be slightly different when it is recalled.

WARNING

Seat adjustment caution

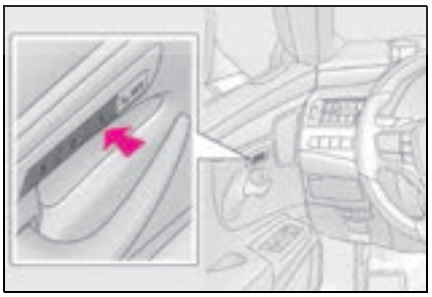
Take care during seat adjustment so that the seat does not strike the rear passenger or squeeze your body against the steering wheel.

Recalling a driving position

1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Press one of the buttons for the driving position you want to recall until the buzzer sounds.



To stop the position recall operation part-way through

Perform any of the following:

- Press the "SET" button.
- Press button "1", "2" or "3".
- Operate any of the seat adjustment

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

switches (only cancels seat position recall).

- Operate the tilt and telescopic steering control switch (only cancels steering wheel position recall).
- Vehicles with the head-up display: Operate the meter control switches to adjust the head-up display position (only cancels head-up display position recall).

■ Operating the driving position memory after turning the engine switch off

Driver's seat:
Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the driver's door is opened and another 60 seconds after it is closed again.

Front passenger's (if equipped):
Recorded seat positions can be activated up to 180 seconds after the front passenger's door is opened.

■ When the recorded seat position cannot be recalled

The seat position may not be recalled in some situations when the seat position is recorded in a certain range. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

Registering/canceling/recalling a driving position to an electronic key (including a card key) (memory recall function)

■ Registering procedure

Record your driving position to button "1", "2" or "3" before performing the following:

Carry only the key you want to register, and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be recorded properly.

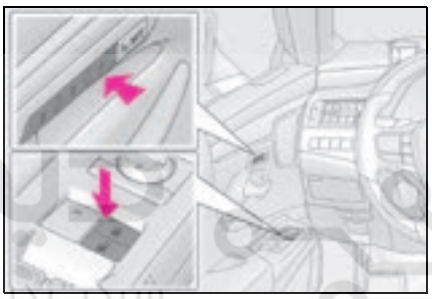
1 Check that the shift lever is in P.

2 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

3 Recall the driving position that you want to record.

4 While pressing the recalled button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds.

If the button could not be registered, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.



■ Cancelation procedure

1 Carry only the key you want to cancel and then close the driver's door.

If 2 or more keys are in the vehicle, the driving position cannot be canceled properly.

2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

4 While pressing the "SET" button, press and hold the door lock switch (either lock or unlock) until the buzzer sounds twice.

If the button could not be canceled, the buzzer sounds continuously for approximately 3 seconds.

■ Recall procedure

1 Make sure that the doors are locked before recalling the driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

position. Carry the electronic key that has been registered to the driving position, and then unlock and open the driver's door using the smart entry & start system or wireless remote control.

The driving position will move to the recorded position (not including the steering wheel and head-up display [if equipped]).However, the seat will move to a position slightly behind the recorded position in order to make entering the vehicle easier.

If the driving position is in a position that has already been recorded, the seat and outside rear view mirrors will not move.

2 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode, or fasten a seat belt.

The seat, steering wheel and head-up display (if equipped) will move to the recorded position.

■ **Recalling the driving position using the memory recall function**

- Different driving positions can be registered for each electronic key. Therefore, the driving position that is recalled may be different depending on the key being carried.
- If a door other than the driver's door is unlocked with the smart entry & start system, the driving position cannot be recalled. In this case, press the driving position button which has been set.

■ **Customization**

The unlock door settings of the memory recall function can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.462)

Head restraints

Head restraints are provided for all seats.

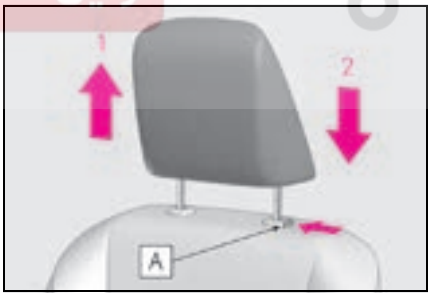
WARNING

■ **Head restraint precautions**

Observe the following precautions regarding the head restraints. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Use the head restraints designed for each respective seat.
- Adjust the head restraints to the correct position at all times.
- After adjusting the head restraints, push down on them and make sure they are locked in position.
- Do not drive with the head restraints removed.

Vertical adjustment



1 Up

Pull the head restraints up.

2 Down

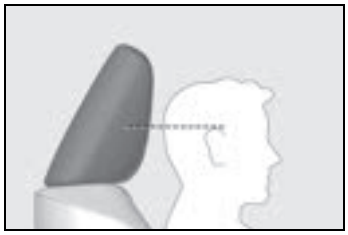
Push the head restraint down while pressing the lock release button A .

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Adjusting the height of the head restraints (front seats)**

Make sure that the head restraints are adjusted so that the center of the head restraint is closest to the top of your ears.



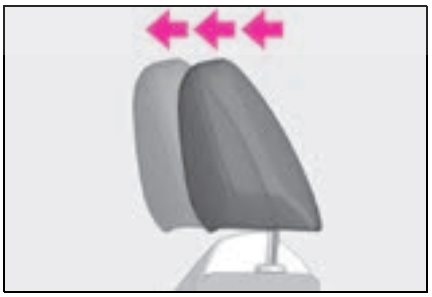
■ **Adjusting the outboard rear seat head restraint (except reclining type)**

Always raise the head restraint one level from the stowed position when using.

Horizontal adjustment (if equipped)

The position of the head restraint can be adjusted forward in 4 stages.

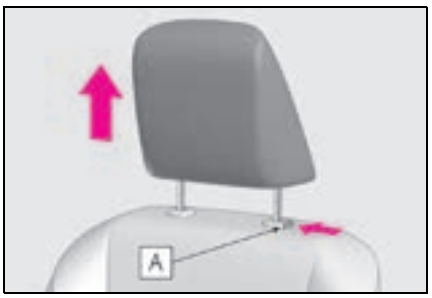
If the head restraint is pulled forward from the foremost position, it will return to the rearmost position.



Removing the head restraints

Pull the head restraint up while pressing the lock release button A.

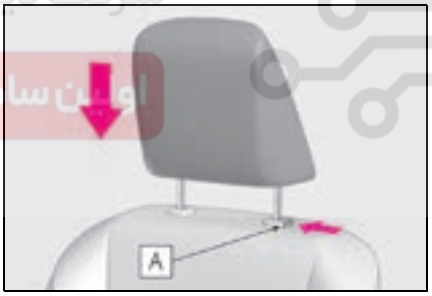
Front seats: If the head restraint touches the ceiling, making the removal difficult, change the seat height or angle. (→P.141)



Installing the head restraints

Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to the lock position.

Press and hold the lock release button A when lowering the head restraint.



3 Before driving

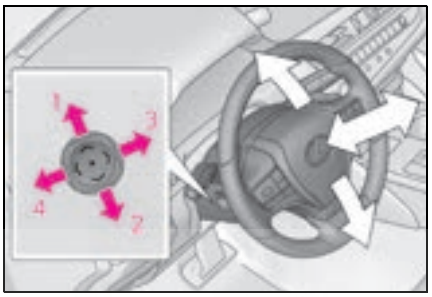
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Steering wheel

Adjustment procedure

Operating the switch moves the steering wheel in the following directions:



1 Up
2 Down
3 Toward the driver
4 Away from the driver

■ **The steering wheel can be adjusted when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Automatic adjustment of the steering position (vehicles with the driving position memory)**

A desired steering position can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory system. (→P.143)

■ **Power easy access system**

▶ Vehicles with the driving position memory

The steering wheel and driver's seat move in accordance with engine switch mode and the driver's seat belt condition. (→P.143)

▶ Vehicles without the driving position memory

The steering wheel moves in accordance with engine switch mode.

When all of the following have been performed, the steering wheel is automatically adjusted to a position that allows the driver to enter and exit the vehicle easily.

- The shift lever has been shifted to P.
- The engine switch has been turned off.

When the engine switch has been turned to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the steering wheel automatically returns to the original position.



■ **Customization**

The steering wheel movement can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.462)

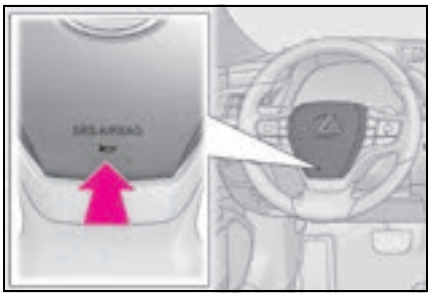
WARNING

■ **Caution while driving**

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.
Doing so may cause the driver to mishandle the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Sounding the horn

Press on or close to the mark.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Inside rear view mirror

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

Adjusting the height of rear view mirror

The height of the rear view mirror can be adjusted to suit your driving posture.

Adjust the height of the rear view mirror by moving it up and down.



WARNING

■ Caution while driving

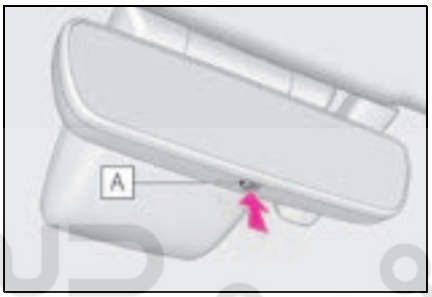
Do not adjust the position of the mirror while driving.
Doing so may lead to mishandling of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Anti-glare function

Responding to the level of brightness of the headlights of vehicles behind, the reflected light is automatically reduced.

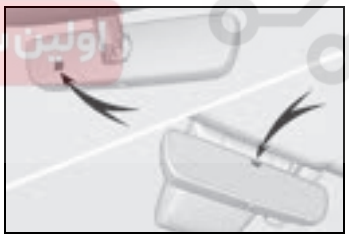
Turn the automatic anti-glare function mode on/off

When the automatic anti-glare function is in ON mode, the indicator A illuminates. The function will set to ON mode each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
Pressing the button turns the function to OFF mode. (The indicator A also turns off.)



■ To prevent sensor error

To ensure that the sensors operate properly, do not touch or cover them.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Outside rear view mirrors

The rear view mirror's position can be adjusted to enable sufficient confirmation of the rear view.

WARNING

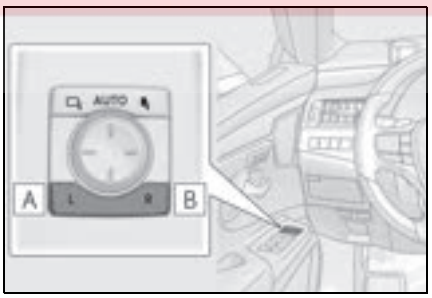
■ Important points while driving

Observe the following precautions while driving.
Failure to do so may result in loss of control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not adjust the mirrors while driving.
- Do not drive with the mirrors folded.
- Both the driver and passenger side mirrors must be extended and properly adjusted before driving.

Adjustment procedure

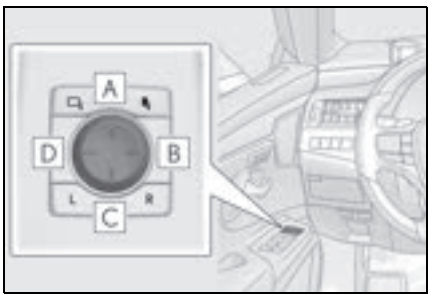
1 To select a mirror to adjust, press the switch.



A Left

B Right

2 To adjust the mirror, press the switch.



A Up

B Right

C Down

D Left

■ Mirror angle can be adjusted when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Defogging the mirrors

The outside rear view mirrors can be cleared using the mirror defoggers. Turn on the rear window defogger to turn on the outside rear view mirror defoggers. (→P.314)

■ Auto anti-glare function

When the anti-glare inside rear view mirror is set to automatic mode, the driver's side outside rear view mirror will activate in conjunction with the anti-glare inside rear view mirror to reduce reflected light. (→P.149)

■ Automatic adjustment of the mirror angle (vehicles with the driving position memory)

A desired mirror face angle can be entered to memory and recalled automatically by the driving position memory. (→P.143)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

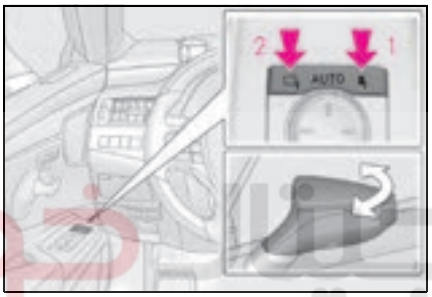
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ **When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating**

Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

Folding and extending the mirrors



1 Folds the mirrors

2 Extends the mirrors

Vehicles with automatic folding/extending mirror function:

Putting the outside rear view mirror folding switch in the neutral position sets the mirrors to automatic mode.

Automatic mode allows the folding or extending of the mirrors to be linked to locking/unlocking of the doors.

■ **Using automatic mode in cold weather (vehicles with automatic folding/extending mirror function)**

When automatic mode is used in cold weather, the door mirror could freeze up and automatic stowing and return may not be possible. In this case, remove any ice and snow from the door mirror, then either operate the mirror using manual mode or move the mirror by hand.

■ **Customization (vehicles with automatic folding/extending mirror function)**

The automatic mirror folding and extending operation can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

WARNING

■ **When a mirror is moving**

To avoid personal injury and mirror malfunction, be careful not to get your hand caught by the moving mirror.

Linked mirror function when reversing (vehicles with automatic folding/extending mirror function)

When the mirror select switch is in the "L" or "R" position, the outside rear view mirrors will automatically angle downwards when the vehicle is reversing in order to give a better view of the ground.

To disable this function, move the mirror select switch to the neutral position (between "L" or "R").

■ **Adjusting the mirror angle when the vehicle is reversing**

With the shift lever in R, adjust the mirror angle at a desired position. The adjusted angle will be memorized and the mirror will automatically tilt to the memorized angle whenever the shift lever is shifted to R from next time.

The memorized downward tilt position of the mirror is linked to the normal position (angle adjusted with the shift lever in other than R). Therefore, if the normal position is changed after adjustment, the tilt position

3 Before driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

will also change.

When the normal position is changed, readjust the angle in reversing.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

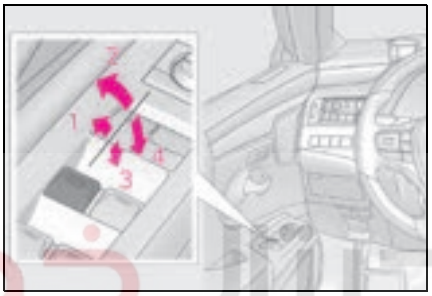
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Power windows

Opening and closing the power windows

The power windows can be opened and closed by one-touch operation of the switches.



1 Closing
2 One-touch closing*
3 Opening
4 One-touch opening*

*: To stop the window partway, operate the switch in the opposite direction.

The power windows can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

Operating the power windows after turning the engine off

The power windows can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. They cannot, however, be operated once either door is opened.

Jam protection function

If an object becomes jammed between the window and the window frame while the window is closing, window movement is stopped and the window is opened slightly.

Catch protection function

If an object becomes caught between the door and window while the window is opening, window movement is stopped.

When the power window cannot be opened or closed

When the jam protection function or catch protection function operates unusually and the door window cannot be opened or closed, perform the following operations with the power window switch of that door.

- Stop the vehicle. With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, within 4 seconds of the jam protection function or catch protection function activating, continuously operate the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction or one-touch opening direction so that the door window can be opened and closed.
- If the side window cannot be opened and closed even when performing the above operations, perform the following procedure for function initialization.

1. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
2. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction and completely close the side window.
3. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pulling the switch in the one-touch closing direction, and hold it there for approximately 6 seconds or more.
4. Press and hold the power window switch in the one-touch opening direction. After the side window is completely opened, continue holding the switch for an additional 1 second or more.
5. Release the power window switch for a moment, resume pushing the switch in the one-touch opening direction, and hold it there for approximately 4 seconds or more.
6. Pull and hold the power window switch in the one-touch closing direction again. After the door window is com-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

pletely closed, continue holding the switch for a further 1 second or more.

If you release the switch while the side window is moving, start again from the beginning.
If the side window reverses and cannot be fully closed or opened, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Door lock linked window operation

- The power windows can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.438)
- The power windows can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.124)
- The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the power window is closed using the door lock linked power window operation function. (→P.85)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

Power windows open warning buzzer

The buzzer sounds and "Window Open" is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the power windows open.

Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

Closing the windows

- The driver is responsible for all the power window operations, including the operation for the passengers. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the power windows. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the power window. Also, when riding with a child, it is recommended to use the window lock switch. (→P.155)
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when a window is being operated.
- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the power windows, operate the power window after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window. Also do not let a child operate window by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets jammed just before the window is fully closed. Be careful not to get any part of your body jammed in the window.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ **Catch protection function**

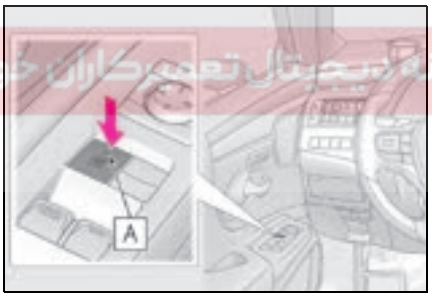
- Never use any part of your body or clothing to intentionally activate the catch protection function.
- The catch protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the window is fully opened. Be careful not to get any part of your body or clothing caught in the window.

Preventing accidental operation (window lock switch)

This function can be used to prevent children from accidentally opening or closing a passenger window.

Press the switch.

The indicator A will come on and the passenger window will be locked.



■ **The power windows can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When the battery is disconnected**

The window lock switch is disabled. If necessary, press the window lock switch after reconnecting the battery.

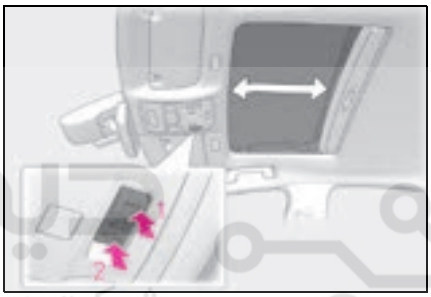
Moon roof*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to open and close the moon roof and tilt it up and down.

Operating the moon roof

■ **Opening and closing**



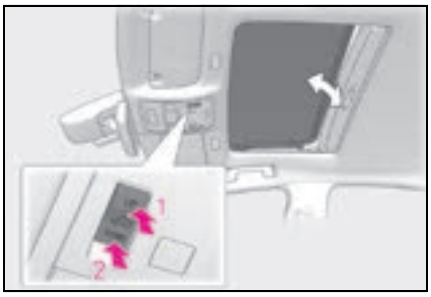
1 Opens the moon roof*

The moon roof stops slightly before the fully open position to reduce wind noise. Press the switch again to fully open the moon roof.

2 Closes the moon roof*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ **Tilting up and down**



1 Tilts the moon roof up*

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2 Tilts the moon roof down*

*: Lightly press either way of the moon roof switch to stop the moon roof partway.

■ The moon roof can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Operating the moon roof after turning the engine off

The moon roof can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once either front door is opened.

■ Jam protection function

If an object is detected between the moon roof and the frame while the moon roof is closing or tilting down, travel is stopped and the moon roof opens slightly.

■ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed manually. However, the sunshade will open automatically when the moon roof is opened.

■ Door lock linked moon roof operation

- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.438)
- The moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.124)
- The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the moon roof is closed using the door lock linked moon roof operation function. (→P.85)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ When the moon roof does not close normally

Perform the following procedure:

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "CLOSE" switch.*

The moon roof will close, reopen and pause for approximately 10 seconds. Then it will close again and stop at the completely closed position.

3 Check to make sure that the moon roof is completely closed and then release the switch.

*: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the moon roof does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If the moon roof does not move normally

If the moon roof does not open or close normally or the automatic opening function does not operate, perform the following initialization procedure.

1 Stop the vehicle.

2 Press and hold the "DOWN" switch.*

The moon roof will stop at the tilt-up position. After that, it will open, close, tilt up, tilt down, and stop at the fully closed position.

3 Confirm that the moon roof has completely stopped and release the switch.

*: If you release the switch while the moon roof is moving, perform the procedure again from the beginning.

If, after performing the above procedures correctly, the moon roof still does not open or close normally or the automatic opening function does not operate, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ Moon roof open warning buzzer

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the moon roof open.

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. linked door lock operation) can be changed.

(Customizable features: →P.462)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may cause death or serious injury.

■ Opening the moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the moon roof.

■ Opening and closing the moon roof

- The driver is responsible for moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the moon roof.
- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the moon roof is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the moon roof, operate the moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the moon roof. Also do not let a child operate moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the moon roof is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the moon roof switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Panoramic moon roof*

*: If equipped

Use the overhead switches to operate the panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade.

Operating the panoramic moon roof

■ Opening and closing the electronic roof sunshade



1 Opens the electronic roof sunshade*

Slide and hold the switch backward.

The electronic roof sunshade will fully open automatically.

2 Closes the electronic roof sunshade*

Slide and hold the switch forward.

The electronic roof sunshade will fully close automatically.

If the panoramic moon roof is not fully closed, it will close fully before the electronic roof sunshade closes.

*: Quickly slide and release the switch in either direction to stop the electronic roof sunshade partway.

■ Tilting the panoramic moon roof up and down

Press the switch to tilt the panoramic moon roof up.*

When the panoramic moon roof is tilted up, the electronic roof sunshade will open to the half-open position of the roof.

*: Lightly press the switch again to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.

Press and hold the switch to tilt the panoramic moon roof down

The panoramic moon roof can be tilted down only when it is in the tilt-up position.



■ Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

Opens the panoramic moon roof*

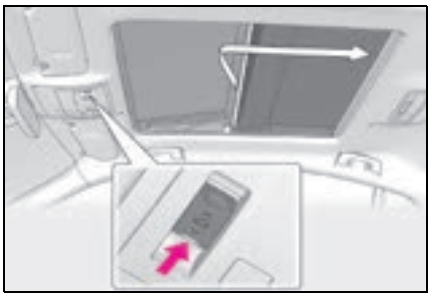
Slide and hold the switch backward. The panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade will open automatically.

The panoramic moon roof can be opened from the tilt-up position.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

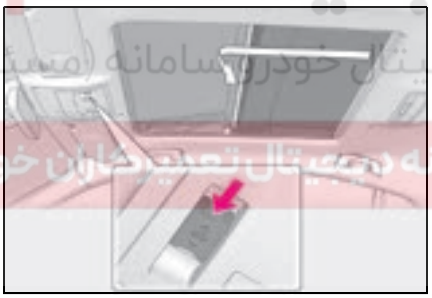
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

*: Quickly slide and release the switch in either direction to stop the panoramic moon roof partway.



Closes the panoramic moon roof

Slide and hold the switch forward. The panoramic moon roof will fully close automatically.



■ **The panoramic moon roof can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Operating the panoramic moon roof after turning the engine off**

The panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade can be operated for approximately 45 seconds after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off. It cannot, however, be operated once the driver's door is opened.

■ **Jam protection function**

If an object is detected between the panoramic moon roof and the frame in the following situations, travel is stopped and the panoramic moon roof opens slightly:

- The panoramic moon roof is closing or tilting down.
- The electronic roof sunshade is closing.

■ **Door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation**

- The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the mechanical key.* (→P.438)
- The panoramic moon roof can be opened and closed using the wireless remote control.* (→P.124)
- The alarm may be triggered if the alarm is set and the panoramic moon roof is closed using the door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation function. (→P.85)

*: These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

■ **Closing both the panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade**

Slide the switch forward.

The electronic roof sunshade will close to the half-open position and pause. The panoramic moon roof will then fully close. Then the electronic roof sunshade will fully close.

■ **When the panoramic moon roof or electronic roof sunshade does not close normally**

Perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.
3. Slide and hold the switch or switch forward. Continue pressing the switch for approximately 10 seconds after the panoramic moon roof or electronic roof sunshade closes and

3 Before driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

reopens. The panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade will start to close.*

4 Check that the panoramic moon roof and electronic roof sunshade are fully closed and release the switch.

*: If the switch is released at the incorrect time, the procedure will have to be performed again from the beginning.

If the panoramic moon roof or electronic roof sunshade does not fully close even after performing the above procedure correctly, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Panoramic moon roof open warning buzzer

A buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display when the engine switch is turned off and the driver's door is opened with the panoramic moon roof open.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.462)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions.Failing to do so may cause death or serious injury.

Opening and closing the electronic roof sunshade

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the electronic roof sunshade is being operated.
- Do not let a child operate the electronic roof sunshade. Closing the electronic roof sunshade on someone can cause death or serious injury.



Opening the panoramic moon roof

- Do not allow any passengers to put their hands or heads outside the vehicle while it is moving.
- Do not sit on top of the panoramic moon roof.

Opening and closing the panoramic moon roof

- The driver is responsible for panoramic moon roof opening and closing operations. In order to prevent accidental operation, especially by a child, do not let a child operate the panoramic moon roof. It is possible for children and other passengers to have body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Check to make sure that all passengers do not have any part of their body in a position where it could be caught when the panoramic moon roof is being operated.



- When using the wireless remote control or mechanical key and operating the panoramic moon roof, operate the panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the panoramic moon roof. Also, do not let a child operate panoramic moon roof by the wireless remote control or mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the panoramic moon roof.
- When exiting the vehicle, turn the engine switch off, carry the key and exit the vehicle along with the child. There may be accidental operation, due to mischief, etc., that may possibly lead to an accident.

■ Jam protection function

- Never use any part of your body to intentionally activate the jam protection function.
- The jam protection function may not work if something gets caught just before the panoramic moon roof or electronic roof sunshade is fully closed. Also, the jam protection function is not designed to operate while the switch is being pressed. Take care so that your fingers, etc. do not get caught.

■ To prevent burns or injuries

Do not touch the area between the underside of the panoramic moon roof and the electronic roof sunshade. Your hand may get caught and you could injure yourself. Also, if the vehicle is left in direct sunlight for a long time, the underside of the panoramic moon roof could become very hot and could cause burns.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the panoramic moon roof

- Before opening the panoramic moon roof, make sure that there are no foreign objects, such as stones or ice, around the opening.
- Do not hit the surface or edge of the panoramic moon roof with hard objects.
- Do not continuously press the switch after the panoramic moon roof has been fully opened or closed.

■ After the vehicle has been washed or rained on

Before opening the panoramic moon roof, wipe any water off the panoramic moon roof. Otherwise, water may enter the cabin when the panoramic moon roof is opened.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

4-1. Before driving

Driving the vehicle 164
Cargo and luggage 169
Trailer towing 170

4-2. Driving procedures

Engine (ignition) switch 171
Automatic transmission 175
CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) 179
Turn signal lever 184
Parking brake 185
Brake Hold 187

4-3. Operating the lights and wipers

Headlight switch 190
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 193
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
Multi Weather Lights 200
Rear fog lights 201
Windshield wipers and washer 202

4-4. Refueling

Opening the fuel tank cap 208

4-5. Using the driving support systems

Lexus Safety System + ... 210
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 215
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Cruise control 256
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 258
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Stop & Start system 265
PKSA (Parking Support Alert) 271
Lexus parking assist-sensor 272
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 280
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function 285
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 289
Parking Support Brake function (static objects) 295
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) 298
Driving assist systems 300

4-6. Driving tips

Winter driving tips 305
Eco-friendly driving tips 308

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Driving the vehicle

The following procedures should be observed to ensure safe driving:

Driving procedure

■ **Starting the engine**

→P.171

■ **Driving**

1 With the brake pedal depressed, shift the shift lever to D. (→P.176, 181)

2 If the parking brake is in manual mode, release the parking brake. (→P.185)

3 Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

■ **Stopping**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 If necessary, set the parking brake.

If the vehicle is to be stopped for an extended period of time, shift the shift lever to P. (→P.176, 181)

■ **Parking the vehicle**

1 With the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal.

2 Set the parking brake (→P.185), and shift the shift lever to P. (→P.176, 181)

3 Press the engine switch to stop the engine.

4 Lock the door, making sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

If parking on a hill, block the wheels as needed.

■ **Starting off on a steep uphill**

1 Make sure that the parking brake is set with the brake pedal depressed, and then shift the shift lever to D.

2 Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

3 Release the parking brake.

■ **When starting off on a uphill**

The hill-start assist control will activate. (→P.300)

■ **Driving in the rain**

- Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, the windows may become fogged-up, and the road will be slippery.
- Drive carefully when it starts to rain, because the road surface will be especially slippery.
- Refrain from high speeds when driving on an expressway in the rain, because there may be a layer of water between the tires and the road surface, preventing the steering and brakes from operating properly.

■ **Engine speed while driving**

In the following conditions, the engine speed may become high while driving. This is due to automatic up-shifting control or down-shifting implementation to meet driving conditions. It does not indicate sudden acceleration.

- The vehicle is judged to be driving uphill or downhill
- When the accelerator pedal is released
- When the brake pedal is firmly or quickly depressed

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Restraining the engine output (Brake Override System)**

● When the accelerator and brake pedals are depressed at the same time, the engine output may be restrained.

● A warning message is displayed on the multi-information display while the system is operating.

■ **Breaking in your new Lexus**

To extend the life of the vehicle, observing the following precautions is recommended:

● For the first 300 km (186 miles):
Avoid sudden stops.

● For the first 1000 km (621 miles):
- Do not drive at extremely high speeds.
- Avoid sudden acceleration.
- Do not drive continuously in low gears.
- Do not drive at a constant speed for extended periods.

■ **Operating your vehicle in a foreign country**

Comply with the relevant vehicle registration laws and confirm the availability of the correct fuel. (→P.453)

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ **When starting the vehicle**

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal while stopped with the engine running. This prevents the vehicle from creeping.

■ **When driving the vehicle**

● Do not drive if you are unfamiliar with the location of the brake and accelerator pedals to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.

- Accidentally depressing the accelerator pedal instead of the brake pedal will result in sudden acceleration that may lead to an accident.
- When backing up, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedals. Make sure to operate the pedals properly.
- Make sure to keep a correct driving posture even when moving the vehicle only slightly. This allows you to depress the brake and accelerator pedals properly.
- Depress the brake pedal using your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal using your left foot may delay response in an emergency, resulting in an accident.

● Do not drive the vehicle over or stop the vehicle near flammable materials such as leaves, paper or rags.
The exhaust system and exhaust gases can be extremely hot. These hot parts may cause a fire if there is any flammable material nearby.

● During normal driving, do not turn off the engine. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
In the event of an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way: →P.404

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Use engine braking (downshift) to maintain a safe speed when driving down a steep hill.
  Using the brakes continuously may cause the brakes to overheat and lose effectiveness. (→P.175, 179)
- Do not adjust the positions of the steering wheel, the seat, or the inside or outside rear view mirrors while driving.
  Doing so may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Always check that all passengers' arms, heads or other parts of their body are not outside the vehicle.

When driving on slippery road surfaces

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control the vehicle.
- Sudden acceleration, engine braking due to shifting, or changes in engine speed could cause the vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress the brake pedal to make sure that the brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake pads may prevent the brakes from functioning properly. If the brakes on only one side are wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected.

When shifting the shift lever

- Do not let the vehicle roll backward while the shift lever is in a driving position, or roll forward while the shift lever is in R.
  Doing so may cause the engine to stall or lead to poor brake and steering performance, resulting in an accident or damage to the vehicle.
- Do not shift the shift lever to P while the vehicle is moving.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to R while the vehicle is moving forward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Do not shift the shift lever to a driving position while the vehicle is moving backward.
  Doing so can damage the transmission and may result in a loss of vehicle control.
- Shifting the shift lever to N while the vehicle is moving will disengage the engine from the transmission. Engine braking is not available when N is selected.
- Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed. Shifting the shift lever to a gear other than P or N may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident and result in death or serious injury.

If you hear a squealing or scraping noise (brake pad wear indicators)

Have the brake pads checked and replaced by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Rotor damage may result if the pads are not replaced when needed. It is dangerous to drive the vehicle when the wear limits of the brake pads and/or those of the brake discs are exceeded.

When the vehicle is stopped

- Do not race the engine.
  If the vehicle is in any gear other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly and unexpectedly, causing an accident.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- In order to prevent accidents due to the vehicle rolling away, always keep depressing the brake pedal while the engine is running, and apply the parking brake as necessary.
- If the vehicle is stopped on an incline, in order to prevent accidents caused by the vehicle rolling forward or backward, always depress the brake pedal and securely apply the parking brake as needed.
- Avoid revving or racing the engine. Running the engine at high speed while the vehicle is stopped may cause the exhaust system to overheat, which could result in a fire if combustible material is nearby.

■ When the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave glasses, cigarette lighters, spray cans, or soft drink cans in the vehicle when it is in the sun. Doing so may result in the following:
  - Gas may leak from a cigarette lighter or spray can, and may lead to a fire.
  - The temperature inside the vehicle may cause the plastic lenses and plastic material of glasses to deform or crack.
  - Soft drink cans may fracture, causing the contents to spray over the interior of the vehicle, and may also cause a short circuit in the vehicle's electrical components.
- Do not leave cigarette lighters in the vehicle. If a cigarette lighter is in a place such as the glove box or on the floor, it may be lit accidentally when luggage is loaded or the seat is adjusted, causing a fire.
- Do not attach adhesive discs to the windshield or windows. Do not place containers such as air fresheners on the instrument panel or dashboard. Adhesive discs or containers may act as lenses, causing a fire in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a door or window open if the curved glass is coated with a metallized film such as a silver-colored one. Reflected sunlight may cause the glass to act as a lens, causing a fire.
- Always apply the parking brake, shift the shift lever to P, stop the engine and lock the vehicle.
  Do not leave the vehicle unattended while the engine is running.
  If the vehicle is parked with the shift lever in P but the parking brake is not set, the vehicle may start to move, possibly leading to an accident.
- Do not touch the exhaust pipes while the engine is running or immediately after turning the engine off.
  Doing so may cause burns.

■ When taking a nap in the vehicle

Always turn the engine off. Otherwise, if you accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, this could cause an accident or fire due to engine overheating. Additionally, if the vehicle is parked in a poorly ventilated area, exhaust gases may collect and enter the vehicle, leading to death or a serious health hazard.

■ When braking

- When the brakes are wet, drive more cautiously.
  Braking distance increases when the brakes are wet, and this may cause one side of the vehicle to brake differently than the other side. Also, the parking brake may not securely hold the vehicle.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If the brake booster device does not operate, do not follow other vehicles closely and avoid hills or sharp turns that require braking. In this case, braking is still possible, but the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual. Also, the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.
- Do not pump the brake pedal if the engine stalls. Each push on the brake pedal uses up the reserve for the power-assisted brakes.
- The brake system consists of 2 individual hydraulic systems; if one of the systems fails, the other will still operate. In this case, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. Have your brakes fixed immediately.

NOTICE

When driving the vehicle

- Do not depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time during driving, as this may restrain the engine output.
- Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator and brake pedals at the same time to hold the vehicle on a hill.

Avoiding damage to vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel fully in either direction and hold it there for an extended period of time. Doing so may damage the power steering motor.
- When driving over bumps in the road, drive as slowly as possible to avoid damaging the wheels, underside of the vehicle, etc.

If you get a flat tire while driving

A flat or damaged tire may cause the following situations. Hold the steering wheel firmly and gradually depress the brake pedal to slow down the vehicle.

- It may be difficult to control your vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds or vibrations.
- The vehicle will lean abnormally.

Information on what to do in case of a flat tire (→P.425)

When encountering flooded roads

Do not drive on a road that has flooded after heavy rain etc. Doing so may cause the following serious damage to the vehicle:

- Engine stalling
- Short in electrical components
- Engine damage caused by water immersion

In the event that you drive on a flooded road and the vehicle is flooded, be sure to have your Lexus dealer check the following:

- Brake function
- Changes in quantity and quality of oil and fluid used for the engine, transmission, differentials, etc.
- Lubricant condition for the bearings and suspension joints (where possible), and the function of all joints, bearings, etc.

When parking the vehicle

Always set the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle to move or the vehicle may accelerate suddenly if the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Sudden start restraint control (Drive-Start Control [DSC])

When the following unusual operation is performed with the accelerator pedal depressed, the engine output may be restrained.

- When the shift lever is shifted to R*.
- When the shift lever is shifted from P or R to forward drive shift position such as D*.

When the system operates, a message appears on the multi-information display. Read the message and follow the instruction.

*: Depending on the situation, the shift position may not be changed.

■ Drive-Start Control (DSC)

- When the TRC is turned off (→P.301), sudden start restraint control also does not operate. If your vehicle have trouble escaping from the mud or fresh snow due to sudden start restraint control operation, deactivate TRC (→P.301) so that the vehicle may become able to escape from the mud or fresh snow.

Cargo and luggage

Take notice of the following information about storage precautions, cargo capacity and load:

⚠ WARNING

■ Things that must not be carried in the trunk

The following things may cause a fire if loaded in the trunk:

- Receptacles containing gasoline
- Aerosol cans

■ Storage precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may prevent the pedals from being depressed properly, may block the driver's vision, or may result in items hitting the driver or passengers, possibly causing an accident.

- Stow cargo and luggage in the trunk whenever possible.
- Do not place cargo or luggage in or on the following locations.
  - At the feet of the driver
  - On the front passenger or rear seats (when stacking items)
  - On the package tray
  - On the instrument panel
  - On the dashboard
  - In front of Center Display
- Secure all items in the occupant compartment.

■ Load and distribution

- Do not overload your vehicle.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Do not apply loads unevenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control which may cause death or serious injury.

Trailer towing

Lexus does not recommend towing a trailer with your vehicle. Lexus also does not recommend the installation of a tow hitch or the use of a tow hitch carrier for a wheelchair, scooter, bicycle, etc. Your vehicle is not designed for trailer towing or for the use of tow hitch mounted carriers.



دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Engine (ignition) switch

Performing the following operations when carrying the electronic key on your person starts the engine or changes engine switch modes.

Starting the engine

1 Press the parking brake switch to check that the parking brake is set. (→P.185)

Parking brake indicator will come on.

2 Check that the shift lever is in P.

3 Firmly depress the brake pedal.

 and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.
If it is not displayed, the engine cannot be started.

4 Press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

When operating the engine switch, one short, firm press is enough. It is not necessary to press and hold the switch.

The engine will crank until it starts or for up to 30 seconds, whichever is less.

Continue depressing the brake pedal until the engine is completely started.

The engine can be started from any engine switch mode.



Engine switch illumination

According to the situation, the engine switch illumination operates as follows.

- When a door is opened, or the engine switch mode is changed from ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode to off, the engine switch illumination slowly blinks.
- When depressing the brake pedal with carrying the electronic key on your person, the engine switch illumination rapidly blinks.
- When the engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode, the engine switch illumination illuminates.

If the engine does not start

- The engine immobilizer system may not have been deactivated. (→P.83) Contact your Lexus dealer.
- If a message related to start-up is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.
- If the door is unlocked with the mechanical key, the engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.439 to start the engine. However, if the electronic key is carried inside the vehicle and the doors are locked (→P.127), the engine can be started.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **If the battery is discharged**

The engine cannot be started using the smart entry & start system. Refer to P.440 to restart the engine.

■ **Electronic key battery depletion**

→P.120

■ **Conditions affecting operation**

→P.138

■ **Notes for the entry function**

→P.138

■ **If there is a malfunction in the smart entry & start system**

If "Entry & Start System Malfunction See Owner's Manual" is displayed on the multi-information display, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Electronic key battery**

→P.395

■ **Operation of the engine switch**

- If the switch is not pressed shortly and firmly, the engine switch mode may not change or the engine may not start.
- If attempting to restart the engine immediately after turning the engine switch off, the engine may not start in some cases. After turning the engine switch off, please wait a few seconds before restarting the engine.

■ **Customization**

If the smart entry & start system has been deactivated in a customized setting, refer to P.439.

WARNING

■ **When starting the engine**

Always start the engine while sitting in the driver's seat. Do not depress the accelerator pedal while starting the engine under any circumstances.Doing so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When starting the engine**

- Do not race a cold engine.
- If the engine becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ **Symptoms indicating a malfunction with the engine switch**

If the engine switch seems to be operating somewhat differently than usual, such as the switch sticking slightly, there may be a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately.

Stopping the engine

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Set the parking brake (→P.185), and shift the shift lever to P. (→P.176, 181)
3. Press the engine switch.
4. Release the brake pedal and check that "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is not shown on the meter.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

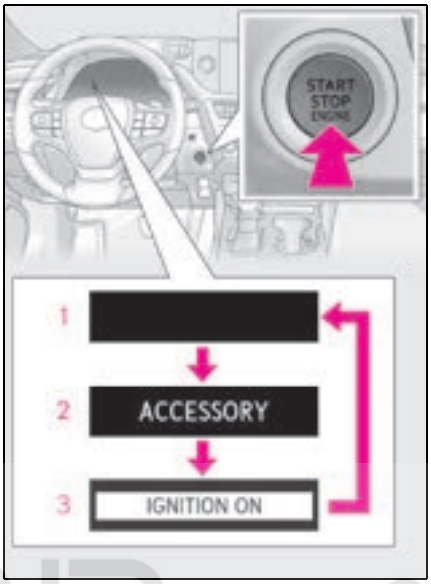
WARNING

■ **Stopping the engine in an emergency**

- If you want to stop the engine in an emergency while driving the vehicle, press and hold the engine switch for more than 2 seconds, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession. (→P.404)
  However, do not touch the engine switch while driving except in an emergency. Turning the engine off while driving will not cause loss of steering or braking control, however, power assist to the steering will be lost. This will make it more difficult to steer smoothly, so you should pull over and stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.
- If the engine switch is operated while the vehicle is running, a warning message will be shown on the multi-information display and a buzzer sounds.
- When restarting the engine after an emergency shutdown, shift the shift lever to N and press the engine switch shortly and firmly.

Changing engine switch modes

Modes can be changed by pressing the engine switch with the brake pedal released. (The mode changes each time the switch is pressed.)



1 Off*

The emergency flashers can be used.

2 ACCESSORY mode

Some electrical components such as the audio system can be used.

"ACCESSORY" will be displayed on the meter.

3 IGNITION ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

"IGNITION ON" will be displayed on the meter.

*: If the shift lever is in a position other than P when turning off the engine, the engine switch will be turned to ACCESSORY mode, not to off.

■ **Auto power off function**

If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode for more than 20 minutes or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for more than an hour with the shift lever in P, the engine switch will automatically turn off. However, this function cannot entirely prevent the battery discharge. Do not leave the

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

vehicle with the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time when the engine is not running.

When stopping the engine with the shift lever in a position other than P

If the engine is stopped with the shift lever in a position other than P, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. Perform the following procedure to turn the switch off:

1. If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.185)
2. Shift the shift lever to P.
3. Check that "Turn Power Off" is displayed on the multi-information display and then press the engine switch once.
4. Check that "Turn Power Off" on the multi-information display is off.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Do not leave the engine switch in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode for long periods of time without the engine running.
- If "ACCESSORY" or "IGNITION ON" is displayed on the meter, the engine switch is not off. Exit the vehicle after turning the engine switch off.
- Do not stop the engine when the shift lever is in a position other than P. If the engine is stopped in another shift lever position, the engine switch will not be turned off but instead be turned to ACCESSORY mode. If the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY mode, battery discharge may occur.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Automatic transmission*

*: If equipped

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and function

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral
D	Normal driving*1
S	S mode driving*2 (→P.178)

*1: Shifting to the D position allows the system to select a gear suitable for the driving conditions.
Setting the shift lever to the D position is recommended for normal driving. You can choose shift range suitable for your driving situation by operating the paddle shift switches.

*2: Selecting shift ranges using S mode restricts the upper limit of the possible gear ranges, controls engine braking force, and prevents unnecessary upshifting.

■ When driving with cruise control (if equipped), dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) activated

Even when performing the following actions with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not be activated because cruise control, dynamic radar cruise control or dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

- While driving in the D position or S mode, downshifting to S7, S6, S5 or S4. (→P.235, 246, 256)
- When switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position. (→P.263)

■ Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)

→P.169

■ AI-SHIFT

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear according to driver performance and driving conditions.
The AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the shift lever is in D. (Shifting the shift lever to the S position or using the paddle shift cancels the function.)

WARNING

■ When driving on slippery road surfaces

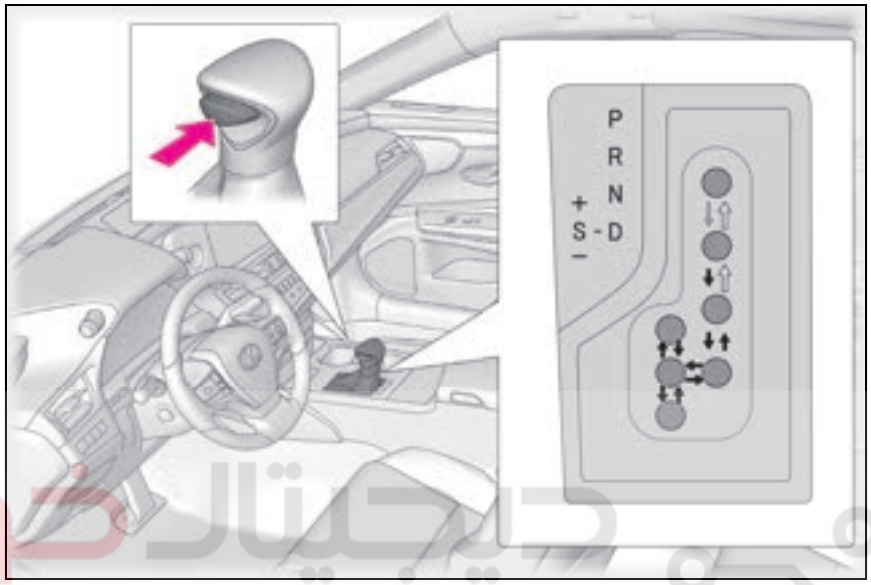
Do not accelerate or shift the shift lever suddenly.

Sudden changes in engine braking may cause the vehicle to spin or skid, resulting in an accident.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal depressed*, shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever normally.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped and the brake pedal is depressed.

*: For the vehicle be able to be shifted from P, the brake pedal must be depressed before the shift release button is pushed. If the shift release button is pushed first, the shift lock will not be released.

Shift lock system

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.

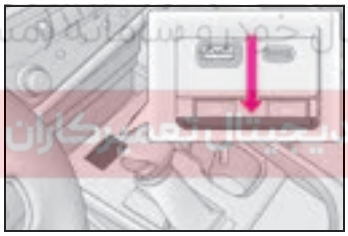
If the shift lever cannot be shifted even though the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1. If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.185)
2. Turn the engine switch off.
3. Depress the brake pedal.
4. Slide the lid towards the rear of the vehicle and hold it.

If you remove your hand and slide the lid again towards the rear, the lid will fully close.



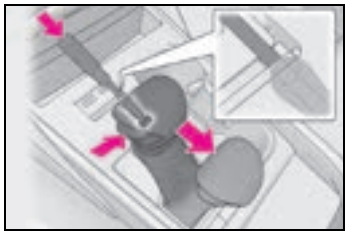
5. Slide the shift lock cover to the position where you can see the hole



6. Insert the flathead screwdriver into the hole and press and hold the shift lock override button and then push the button on the shift knob

To prevent damage to the shift lock override button, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

Selecting the driving mode

→P.263

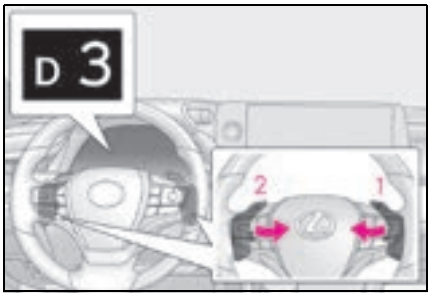
Selecting shift ranges in the D position

To drive using temporary shift range selection, operate the "-" paddle shift switch. The shift range can then be selected by operating the "-" and "+" paddle shift switches.

Changing the shift range allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The selected shift range, from D1 to D8, will be displayed on the meter.

■ Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

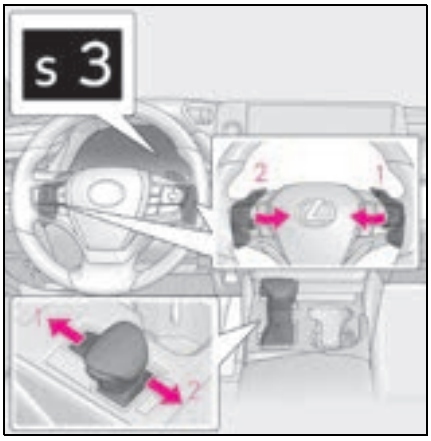
- The "+" paddle shift switch is held down for a period of time
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D

■ Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Selecting shift ranges in the S mode

To enter S mode, shift the shift lever to S. Shift ranges can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches, allowing you to drive in the shift range of your choosing.



1 Upshifting

2 Downshifting

The initial shift range in S mode is set automatically to S4, S5 or S6 according to vehicle speed. However, the initial shift range may be set to S3 if AI-SHIFT has operated while the shift lever was in the D position. (→P.175)

■ Shift ranges and their functions

Meter display	Function
S2 - S8	A gear in the range between S1 and the selected shift range is automatically chosen depending on vehicle speed and driving conditions
S1	Setting the shift range at S1

A lower shift range will provide greater engine braking forces than a higher shift range.

■ S mode

- When the shift range is S7 or lower, holding the shift lever toward "+" sets the shift range to S8.
- To prevent the engine from over-revving,

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

upshifting may automatically occur.

- To protect the automatic transmission, a function is adopted that automatically selects a higher shift range when the fluid temperature is high.

Downshifting restriction warning buzzer

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

If the S indicator does not come on or the D indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to S

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately. (In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle)*

*: If equipped

Select the shift position depending on your purpose and situation.

Shift position purpose and functions

Shift position	Objective or function
P	Parking the vehicle/starting the engine
R	Reversing
N	Neutral (Condition in which the power is not transmitted)
D	Normal driving*1
M	10-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode driving*2 (→P.183)

*1: To improve fuel efficiency and reduce noise, shift the shift lever to D for normal driving.

*2: Selecting gear steps using the M position achieves suitable engine braking forces by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches.

To protect the transmission

If the automatic transmission fluid temperature is high, "Transmission Oil Temp. High Stop in a Safe Place and See Owner's Manual" will be displayed on the multi-information display and the vehicle will go into transmission protection mode automatically. Have the vehicle inspected by your

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Lexus dealer.

■ **Continuously Variable Transaxle fail-safe control**

The system detects malfunctioning parts targeted (all of the solenoids that perform the shifting function) by the On-Board Diagnostics, and performs fail-safe mechanisms, such as restricting the shifting function or transmission ratio control. In this event, the malfunction indicator lamp turns on.

■ **When driving with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range activated**

Even when switching the driving mode to sport mode while driving in D position (→P.263) with the intent of enabling engine braking, engine braking will not activate because dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range will not be canceled.

■ **Restraining sudden start (Drive-Start Control)**

→P.169

■ **AI-SHIFT**

The AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear step according to driver performance and driving conditions.

AI-SHIFT automatically operates when the driving mode is set to normal mode or sport mode with the shift lever in the D position. (Shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

■ **G AI-SHIFT**

G AI-SHIFT automatically selects the suitable gear step according to driver's input and driving conditions. G AI-SHIFT operates automatically when the shift lever is in the D position and sport mode is selected for the driving mode. (Selecting normal mode or shifting the shift lever to the M position cancels the function.)

⚠ WARNING

■ **When driving on slippery road surfaces**

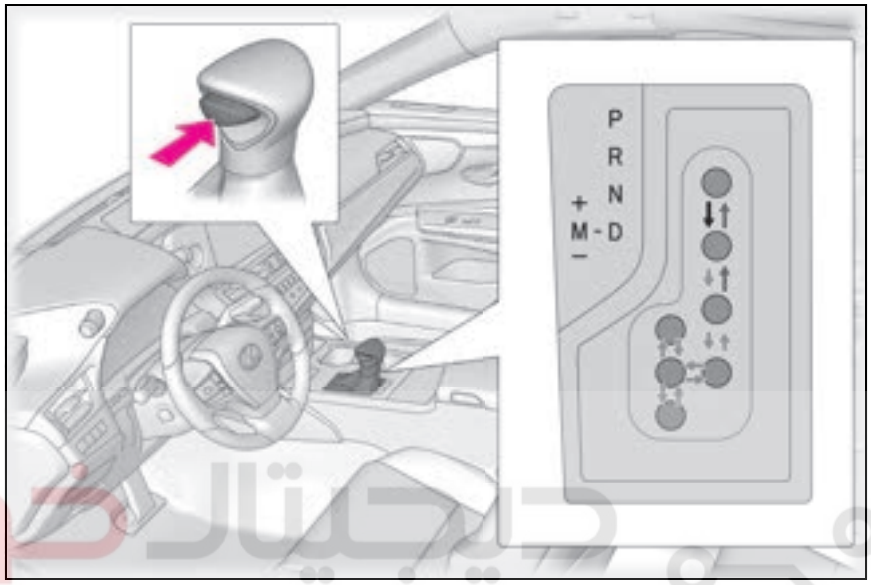
Be careful-of downshifting and sudden acceleration, as this could result in the vehicle skidding to the side or spinning.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکار خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Shifting the shift lever



While the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the brake pedal depressed*, shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever while pushing the shift release button on the shift knob.

Shift the shift lever normally.

When shifting the shift lever between P and D, make sure that the vehicle is completely stopped and the brake pedal is depressed.

*: For the vehicle be able to be shifted from P, the brake pedal must be depressed before the shift release button is pushed. If the shift release button is pushed first, the shift lock will not be released.

Shift lock system

The shift lock system is a system to prevent accidental operation of the shift lever in starting.

The shift lever can be shifted from P only when the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **If the shift lever cannot be shifted from P**

First, check whether the brake pedal is being depressed.

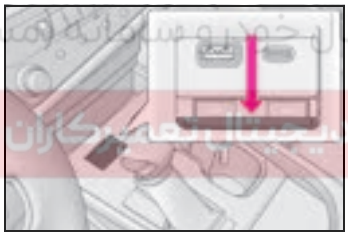
If the shift lever cannot be shifted even though the brake pedal is depressed and the shift release button is pushed, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

The following steps may be used as an emergency measure to ensure that the shift lever can be shifted.

Releasing the shift lock:

1 If the parking brake is in manual mode, set the parking brake. (→P.185)
2 Turn the engine switch off.
3 Depress the brake pedal.
4 Slide the lid towards the rear of the vehicle and hold it.

If you remove your hand and slide the lid again towards the rear, the lid will fully close.



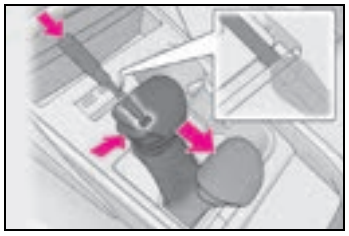
5 Slide the shift lock cover to the position where you can see the hole



6 Insert the flathead screwdriver into the hole and press and hold the shift lock override button and then push the button on the shift knob

To prevent damage to the shift lock override button, cover the tip of the screwdriver with a rag.

The shift lever can be shifted while the button is pressed.



WARNING

■ **To prevent an accident when releasing the shift lock**

Before pressing the shift lock override button, make sure to set the parking brake and depress the brake pedal.

If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed instead of the brake pedal when the shift lock override button is pressed and the shift lever is shifted out of P, the vehicle may suddenly start leading to an accident which may result in death or serious injury.

Selecting the driving mode

→P.263

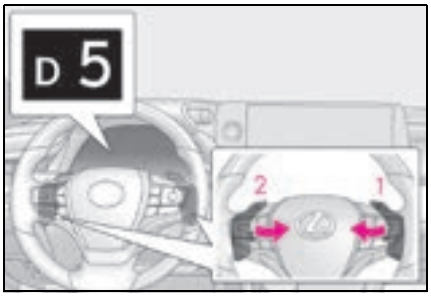
Selecting gear steps in the D position

To drive using temporary gear step selection, operate the "-" or "+" paddle shift switch when driving with the shift lever in D.

Changing the gear step allows restriction of the highest gear, preventing unnecessary upshifting and enabling the level of engine braking force to be selected.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The selected gear step, from D1 to D10, will be displayed in the meter.

To return to normal D position driving, the "+" paddle shift switch must be held down for a period of time.

■ **Gear step functions**

- 10 levels of accelerating force and engine braking can be selected.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

■ **Automatic deactivation of shift range selection in the D position**

Shift range selection in the D position will be deactivated in the following situations:

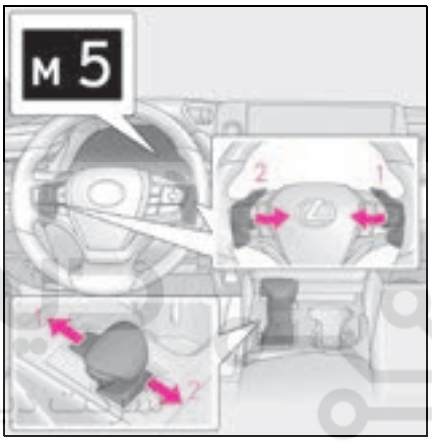
- When the vehicle comes to a stop
- If the accelerator pedal is depressed for more than a certain period of time
- When the shift lever is shifted to a position other than D
- When the "+" paddle shift switch is pressed and held

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

Changing gear steps in the M position

To enter 10-speed sport sequential shiftmatic mode, shift the shift lever to M. Gear steps can be selected by operating the shift lever or paddle shift switches.



1 Upshifting
2 Downshifting

The gear step changes once every time the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated.

The selected gear step, from M1 to M10, will be displayed in the meter.

However, even when in the M position, the gear steps will be automatically changed if the engine speed is too high, or too low.

■ **Gear step functions**

- 10 levels of accelerating force and engine braking can be selected.
- A lower gear step will provide greater accelerating force and engine braking force than a higher gear step, and the engine revolutions will also increase.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Downshifting restriction warning buzzer**

To help ensure safety and driving performance, downshifting operation may sometimes be restricted. In some circumstances, downshifting may not be possible even when the shift lever or paddle shift switch is operated. (A buzzer will sound twice.)

■ **When the vehicle comes to a stop with the shift lever in the M position**

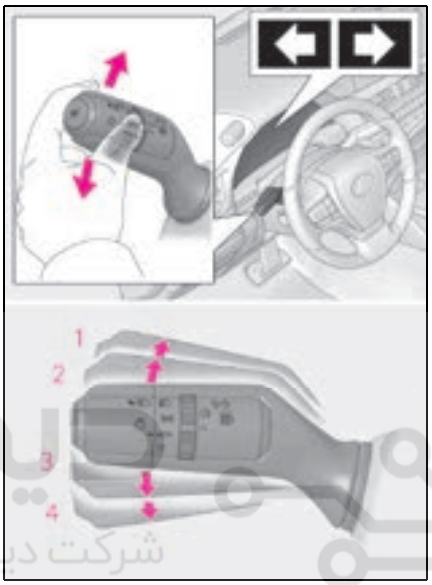
- The transmission will automatically downshift to M1 once the vehicle is stopped.
- After a stop, the vehicle will start off in M1.
- When the vehicle is stopped, the transmission is set at M1.

■ **If the "M" indicator does not come on or the "D" indicator is displayed even after shifting the shift lever to M**

This may indicate a malfunction in the automatic transmission system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
(In this situation, the transmission will operate in the same manner as when the shift lever is in D.)

Turn signal lever

Operating instructions



1 Right turn

2 Lane change to the right (move the lever partway and release it)

The right hand signals will flash 3 times.

3 Lane change to the left (move the lever partway and release it)

The left hand signals will flash 3 times.

4 Left turn

■ **Turn signals can be operated when**

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ **If the indicator flashes faster than usual**

Check that a light bulb in the front or rear turn signal lights has not burned out.

■ **If the turn signals stop flashing before a lane change has been performed**

Operate the lever again.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Parking brake

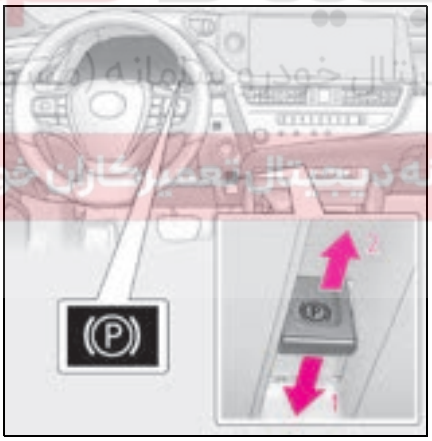
The parking brake can be set or released automatically or manually.

In automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released automatically according to shift lever operation. Also, even in automatic mode, the parking brake can be set or released manually.

Operating instructions

■ Using the manual mode

The parking brake can be set and released manually.



1 Press the switch to set the parking brake

The parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Press and hold the parking brake switch if an emergency occurs and it is necessary to operate the parking brake while driving.

2 Pull the switch to release the parking brake

- Operate the parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal.
- Using the parking brake automatic release function, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal. When using this function, slowly depress the accelerator pedal.

Make sure that the parking brake indicator light turn off.

■ Turning the automatic mode on

While the vehicle is stopped, press and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display



When the automatic mode is turned on, the parking brake operates as follows.

- When the shift lever is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released, and the parking brake indicator light will turn off.
- When the shift lever is shifted to P, the parking brake will be set, and the parking brake indicator light will turn on.

Operate the shift lever with the vehicle stopped and the brake pedal depressed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Turning the automatic mode off

While the vehicle is stopped, pull and hold the parking brake switch until a message is shown on the multi-information display



Parking brake operation

- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, the parking brake cannot be released using the parking brake switch.
- When the engine switch is not in IGNITION ON mode, automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) is not available.

Parking brake automatic release function

- When the shift lever is shifted from P, the parking brake will be released in automatic mode.
- When all of the following conditions are met in manual mode, the parking brake can be released by depressing the accelerator pedal.
  - The driver's door is closed
  - The driver is wearing the seat belt
  - The shift lever is in D, S or R

If "Parking Brake Temporarily Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

If the parking brake is operated repeatedly over a short period of time, the system may restrict operation to prevent overheating. If this happens, refrain from operating the parking brake. Normal operation will return after about 1 minute.

If "Parking Brake Unavailable" or "EPB Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display

Operate the parking brake switch. If the message does not disappear after operating the switch several times, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Parking brake operation sound

When the parking brake operates, a motor sound (whirring sound) may be heard. This does not indicate a malfunction.

Parking brake indicator light

- Depending on the engine switch mode, the parking brake indicator light will turn on and stay on as described below:
  IGNITION ON mode: Comes on until the parking brake is released.
  Not in IGNITION ON mode: Stays on for approximately 15 seconds.
- When the engine switch is turned off with the parking brake set, the parking brake indicator light will stay on for about 15 seconds. This does not indicate a malfunction.

When the parking brake switch malfunctions

Automatic mode (automatic brake setting and releasing) will be turned on automatically.

Parking the vehicle

→P.164

Parking brake engaged warning buzzer

A buzzer will sound if the vehicle is driven with the parking brake engaged. "EPB Applied" is displayed on the multi-information display (with the vehicle reaching a speed of 5 km/h [3 mph]).

If the brake system warning light comes on

→P.412

Usage in winter time

→P.305

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Do not leave a child in the vehicle alone. The parking brake may be released unintentionally and there is the danger of the vehicle moving that may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ **When parking the vehicle**

Before you leave the vehicle, shift the shift lever to P, set the parking brake and make sure that the vehicle does not move.

■ **When the system malfunctions**

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and check the warning messages.

■ **When the parking brake cannot be released due to a malfunction**

Driving the vehicle with the parking brake set will lead to brake components overheating, which may affect braking performance and increase brake wear. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately if this occurs.

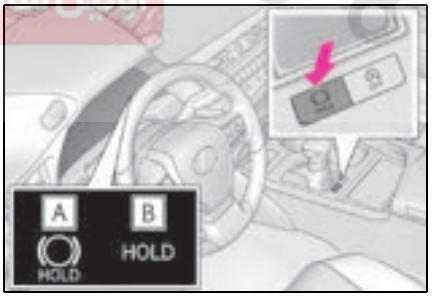
Brake Hold

The brake hold system keeps the brake applied when the shift lever is in D, S (vehicles with automatic transmission), M (vehicles with CVT) or N with the system on and the brake pedal has been depressed to stop the vehicle. The system releases the brake when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the shift lever in D, S or M to allow smooth start off.

Enabling the system

Turns the brake hold system on

The brake hold standby indicator (green) A comes on. While the system is holding the brake, the brake hold operated indicator (yellow) B comes on.



■ **Brake hold system operating conditions**

The brake hold system cannot be turned on in the following conditions:

- The driver's door is not closed.
- The driver is not wearing the seat belt.
- "Parking Brake Unavailable" or "EPB Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display.

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If any of the conditions above are detected when the brake hold system is enabled, the system will turn off and the brake hold standby indicator light will go off. In addition, if any of the conditions are detected while the system is holding the brake, a warning buzzer will sound and a message will be shown on the multi-information display. The parking brake will then be set automatically.

■ **Brake hold function**

- If the brake pedal is left released for a period of about 3 minutes after the system has started holding the brake, the parking brake will be set automatically. In this case, a warning buzzer sounds and a message is shown on the multi-information display.
- To turn the system off while the system is holding the brake, firmly depress the brake pedal and press the button again.
- The brake hold function may not hold the vehicle when the vehicle is on a steep incline. In this situation, it may be necessary for the driver to apply the brakes. A warning buzzer will sound and the multi-information display will inform the driver of this situation. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **When the parking brake is set automatically while the system is holding the brakes**

Perform any of the following operations to release the parking brake.

- Depress the accelerator pedal. (The parking brake will not be released automatically if the seat belt is not fastened.)
- Operate the parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. Make sure that the parking brake indicator light goes off. (→P.185)

■ **When an inspection at your Lexus dealer is necessary**

When the brake hold standby indicator (green) does not illuminate even when the brake hold switch is pressed with the brake hold system operating conditions met, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.

■ **If "Brake Hold Fault Depress Brake to Deactivate Visit Your Dealer" or "Brake Hold Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display**

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **Warning messages and buzzers**

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions.

■ **If the brake hold operated indicator flashes**

→P.419

⚠ WARNING

■ **When the vehicle is on a steep incline**

Take care when using the brake hold system on a steep incline, exercise caution. The brake hold function may not hold brakes in such situations.
Also, the system may not activate depending on the angle of the slope.

■ **When stopped on a slippery road**

The system cannot stop the vehicle when the gripping ability of the tires has been exceeded. Do not use the system when stopped on a slippery road.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

■ When parking the vehicle

The brake hold system is not designed for use when parking the vehicle for a long period of time. Turning the engine switch off while the system is holding the brake may release the brake, which would cause the vehicle to move. When operating the engine switch, depress the brake pedal, shift the shift lever to P and set the parking brake.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

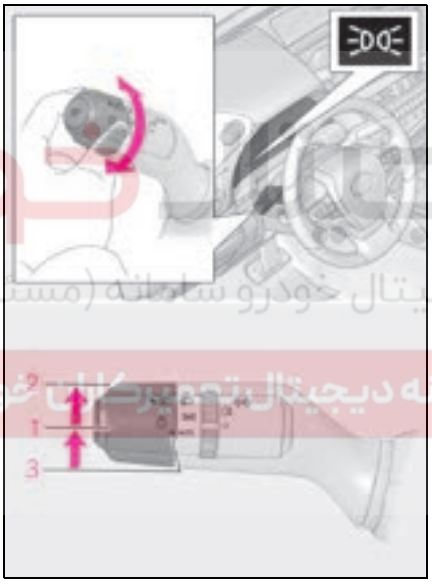
Headlight switch

The headlights can be operated manually or automatically.

Turning on the headlights

Operating the switch turns on the lights as follows:

▶ Type A

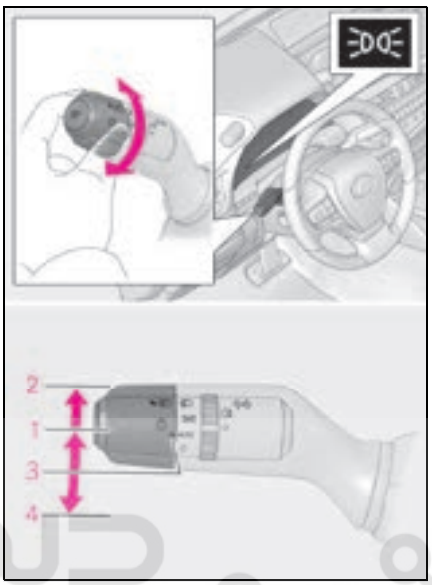


1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.190) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

▶ Type B



1 The front position, tail, license plate and instrument panel lights turn on.

2 The headlights and all the lights listed above turn on.

3 AUTO The headlights, daytime running lights (→P.190) and all the lights listed above turn on and off automatically.

4 The daytime running lights turn on. (→P.190)

■ AUTO mode can be used when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Daytime running light system

To make your vehicle more visible to other drivers during daytime driving, the daytime running lights turn on automatically when-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

ever the engine is started and the parking brake is released with the headlight switch

○ (Type B only) or in the AUTO position.

(Illuminate brighter than the front position lights.) Daytime running lights are not designed for use at night.

Headlight control sensor

The sensor may not function properly if an object is placed on the sensor, or anything that blocks the sensor is affixed to the windshield.
Doing so interferes with the sensor detecting the level of ambient light and may cause the automatic headlight system to malfunction.



Automatic light off system

▶ Type A

● When the light switch is in the or position: The headlights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

● When the light switch is in AUTO position: The headlights and all lights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or off.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode, or turn the light switch to AUTO position once and then back to or .

▶ Type B

The lights turn off after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or OFF and the driver's door is opened.

To turn the lights on again, turn the engine switch to ON, or turn the light switch to

○ or AUTO position once and then back to or position.

Light reminder buzzer (if equipped)

A buzzer sounds when the engine switch is turned off or turned to ACCESSORY mode and the driver's door is opened while the lights are turned on.

Automatic headlight leveling system

The level of the headlights is automatically adjusted according to the number of passengers and the loading condition of the vehicle to ensure that the headlights do not interfere with other road users.

Battery saving function

In order to prevent the battery of the vehicle from discharging, if the light switch is in the or AUTO position when the engine switch is turned off the battery saving function will operate and automatically turn off all the lights after approximately 20 minutes.

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the battery-saving function will be disabled.

When any of the following are performed, the battery-saving function is canceled once and then reactivated. All the lights will turn off automatically 20 minutes after the battery-saving function has been reactivated:

● When the headlight switch is operated

● When a door is opened or closed

Welcome light illumination control

The front position, tail lights and license plate lights automatically turn on at night when the doors are unlocked using the entry function or wireless remote control if

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

the light switch is in the AUTO position.

■ If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

→P.423

■ Customization

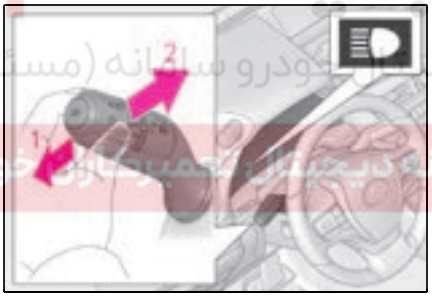
Settings (e.g. light sensor sensitivity) can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Turning on the high beam headlights



1 With the headlights on, push the lever away from you to turn on the high beams.

Pull the lever toward you to the center position to turn the high beams off.

2 Pull the lever toward you and release it to flash the high beams once.

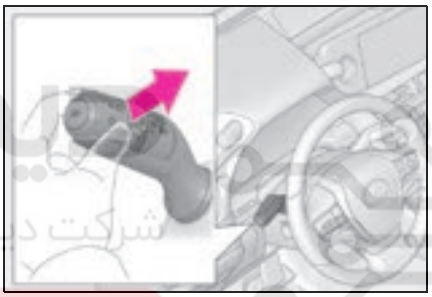
You can flash the high beams with the headlights on or off.

Extended Headlight Lighting system (if equipped)

This system allows the headlights and front position lights to be turned on for 30 seconds when the engine switch is off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it with the light switch is in AUTO after turning the engine switch off.

Pull the lever toward you and release it again to turn off the lights.



Cornering lights

When any of the following conditions is met, while the headlights (low beam) are on, the cornering lights will additionally turn on and light up the direction of movement for the vehicle. This is to ensure excellent visibility when either driving at intersections or parking at night.

- The steering wheel is operated
- The turn signal lever is operated
- The shift lever is in R (both left and right side cornering lights)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Cornering light control

- The lights illuminate when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or less. However, the lights turn off when the vehicle speed increases to approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.
- After the lights remain illuminated for 30 minutes, they automatically turn off.

AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*

*: If equipped

The Adaptive High-beam System uses a front camera located behind the upper portion of the windshield to assess the brightness of the lights of vehicles ahead, streetlights, etc., and automatically controls the headlight light distribution as necessary.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overly rely on the Adaptive High-beam System. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beams on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Adaptive High-beam System

Do not overload the vehicle.

System functions

The headlights operate as follows when the Adaptive High-beam System is operating.

- The lights switch automatically between high beams and low beams based on the conditions.
- Adjusts the brightness and illuminated area of the high beams according to the vehicle speed.
- Adjusts the intensity of the high beams, while driving on a curve, so that the area in the direction that the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than other areas.

- Operates the shaded high beams so that the area around vehicles ahead is partially not illuminated while all other areas continue to be illuminated with the high beams.

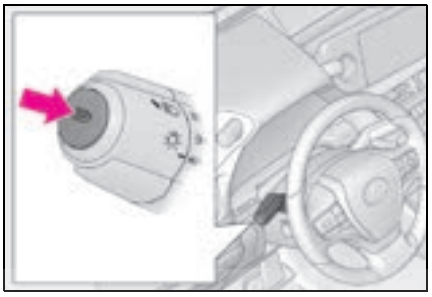
The shaded high beams help optimize forward visibility while reducing the dazzling effect on the drivers of vehicles ahead.



- Adjusts the distance that the low beams are projected according to the distance to a preceding vehicle.
- When driving at low speeds, the cornering lights will illuminate the area around both front corners of the vehicle.

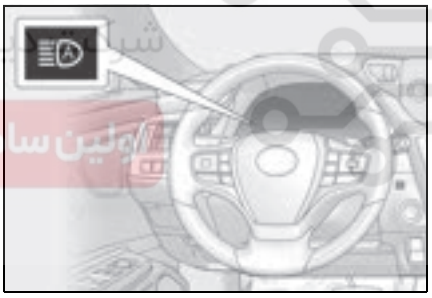
Activating the Adaptive High-beam System

1 Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the or AUTO position.

The AHS indicator will come on when the system is operating.



Conditions in which the light distribution control of the headlights changes automatically

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beams will be turned on automatically and the system will operate:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.*
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.

*: When the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the area in the direction that the vehicle is turning will be illuminated more brightly than

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

other areas while driving on a curve.

- When all of the following conditions are met, the shaded high beams will turn on and the distance that the low beams are projected will be adjusted automatically, depending on the location of vehicles ahead:
  - The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
- If any of the following conditions are met, the high beams or shaded high beams will be changed to the low beams automatically:
  - The vehicle speed is below approximately 12 km/h (7 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - There are many vehicles ahead.
  - Vehicles ahead are moving quickly and the high beams may blind the drivers of the other vehicles.
- When the vehicle speed is between approximately 3 and 15 km/h (1.9 and 9.3 mph), the cornering lights will turn on.

Front camera detection information

- The high beams may not be automatically changed to the shaded high beams in the following situations:
  - When vehicles ahead suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
  - When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
  - When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
  - When vehicles ahead have no lights
- The high beams may be changed to the shaded high beams if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without its headlights turned on is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs and other reflective objects may cause the high beams to change to the shaded high beams, cause the high beams not to change to the shaded high beams, or change the area that is not illuminated.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off, or the speed by which the areas not illuminated change:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
  - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
  - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
  - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The light distribution control of the headlights may change unexpectedly.
- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the following situations the system may not be able to correctly detect the surrounding brightness level. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to flash or dazzle pedestrians or vehicles ahead. In such a case, it is necessary to manually switch between the high and low beams.
  - When driving in inclement weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, sandstorms, etc.)
  - When the windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt, etc.
  - When the windshield is cracked or damaged
  - When the front camera is deformed or dirty
  - When the temperature of the front camera is extremely high
  - When the surrounding brightness level is equal to that of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
  - When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and dark-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

ness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads, etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- When there is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or mirror
- When the back of a preceding vehicle is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- When the vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty, or are not aimed properly
- When the vehicle is listing or tilting due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed, etc.
- When the headlights are changed between the high beams and low beams repeatedly in an abnormal manner
- When the driver believes that the high beams may be flashing or dazzling pedestrians or other drivers
- When the vehicle is used in an area in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle was designed, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic area, or vice versa

If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

→P.423

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.462)

Turning the high beams on/off manually

Switching to the high beams

Push the lever away from you.

The AHS indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



Switching to the low beams

Press the Adaptive High-beam System switch.

The AHS indicator will turn off.

Press the switch to activate the Adaptive High-beam System again.



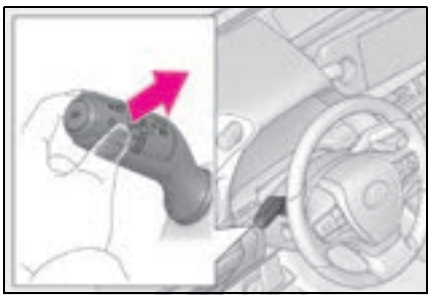
Temporarily switching to the low beams

Pull the lever toward you and then return it to its original position.

The high beams are on while the lever is pulled toward you. However, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams remain on for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the Adaptive High-beam System will be activated again.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



■ Temporarily switching to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when the high beam may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

AHB (Automatic High Beam)*

*: If equipped

The Automatic High Beam uses an in-vehicle front camera to assess the brightness of streetlights, the lights of a vehicle ahead, etc., and automatically turns the high beam on or off as necessary.

WARNING

■ Limitations of the Automatic High Beam

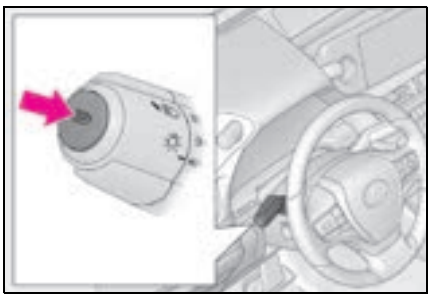
Do not rely on the Automatic High Beam. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings and turning the high beam on or off manually if necessary.

■ To prevent incorrect operation of the Automatic High Beam system

Do not overload the vehicle.

Activating the Automatic High Beam system

1 Press the Automatic High Beam switch.



2 Turn the headlight switch to the or AUTO position.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

The Automatic High Beam indicator will come on when the system is operating.



High beam automatic turning on or off conditions

- When all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):
  - Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more.
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
  - There are few streetlights on the road ahead.
- If any of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned off:
  - Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights turned on.
  - There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

Front camera detection information

- The high beam may not be automatically turned off in the following situations:
  - When oncoming vehicles suddenly appear from a curve
  - When the vehicle is cut in front of by another vehicle
  - When vehicles ahead are hidden from sight due to repeated curves, road dividers or roadside trees
  - When vehicles ahead appear from the faraway lane on wide road
  - When vehicles ahead have no lights
- The high beam may be turned off if a vehicle ahead that is using fog lights without using the headlights is detected.
- House lights, street lights, traffic signals, and illuminated billboards or signs may cause the high beam to switch to the low beams, or the low beams to remain on.
- The following factors may affect the amount of time taken to turn the high beam on or off:
  - The brightness of headlights, fog lights, and tail lights of vehicles ahead
  - The movement and direction of vehicles ahead
  - When a vehicle ahead only has operational lights on one side
  - When a vehicle ahead is a two-wheeled vehicle
  - The condition of the road (gradient, curve, condition of the road surface etc.)
  - The number of passengers and amount of luggage
- The high beam may be turned on or off when the driver does not expect it.
- Bicycles or similar objects may not be detected.
- In the situations shown below, the system may not be able to accurately detect surrounding brightness levels. This may cause the low beams to remain on or the high beams to cause problems for pedestrians, vehicles ahead or other parties. In these cases, manually switch between the high and low beams.
  - In bad weather (rain, snow, fog, sandstorms etc.)
  - The windshield is obscured by fog, mist, ice, dirt etc
  - The windshield is cracked or damaged
  - The front camera is deformed or dirty
  - When the temperature of the front camera is extremely high
  - Surrounding brightness levels are equal to those of headlights, tail lights or fog lights
  - When headlights or tail lights of vehicles ahead are turned off, dirty, changing color, or not aimed properly
  - When the vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc. from a preceding vehicle
  - When driving through an area of intermittently changing brightness and dark-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

ness
- When frequently and repeatedly driving ascending/descending roads, or roads with rough, bumpy or uneven surfaces (such as stone-paved roads, gravel roads etc.)
- When frequently and repeatedly taking curves or driving on a winding road
- There is a highly reflective object ahead of the vehicle, such as a sign or a mirror
- The back of a vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on a truck
- The vehicle's headlights are damaged or dirty
- The vehicle is listing or tilting, due to a flat tire, a trailer being towed etc
- The high beam and low beam are repeatedly being switched between in an abnormal manner
- The driver believes that the high beam may be causing problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby
- The vehicle is used in a territory in which vehicles travel on the opposite side of the road of the country for which the vehicle is approved, for example using a vehicle designed for right-hand traffic in a left-hand traffic territory, or vice versa

If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

→P.423

Turning the high beam on/off manually

Switching to high beam

Push the lever away from you.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off and the high beam indicator will turn on.

Pull the lever to its original position to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.

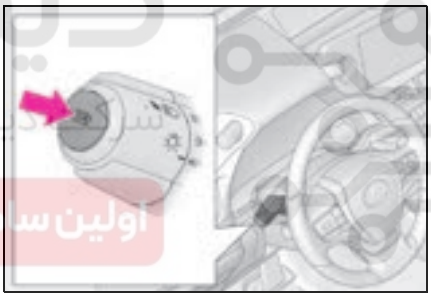


Switching to low beam

Press the Automatic High Beam switch.

The Automatic High Beam indicator will turn off.

Press the switch to activate the Automatic High Beam system again.



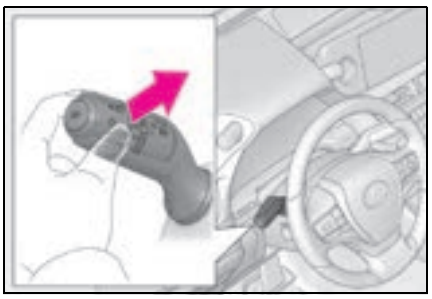
Temporarily switching to the low beams

Pull the lever toward you and then return it to its original position.

The high beams are on while the lever is pulled toward you. However, after the lever is returned to its original position, the low beams remain on for a certain amount of time. Afterwards, the Automatic High Beam will be activated again.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



■ Temporarily switching to the low beams

It is recommended to switch to the low beams when the high beam may cause problems or distress to other drivers or pedestrians nearby.

Multi Weather Lights*

*: If equipped

The Multi Weather Lights is a system that illuminates the cornering lights to ensure visibility when driving in inclement weather, such as rain or fog.

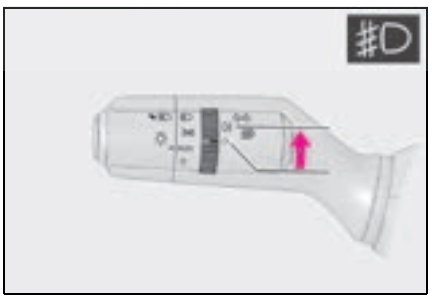
Enabling/disabling the Multi Weather Lights

1 Turn the headlight switch to the or AUTO position.

2 Turn the switch ring to the position.

When the switch is released, it returns to .

When the Multi Weather Lights system is enabled, the Multi Weather Lights indicator on the meter will illuminate.



Turn the switch ring to the position again to disable the system.

■ Operating conditions

The cornering lights will illuminate when the Multi Weather Lights are enabled and both of the following conditions are met:

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- The headlights are on
- The vehicle speed is lower than approximately 45 km/h (28 mph).

When the vehicle speed increases to approximately 45 km/h (28 mph) or higher, the lights will be temporarily turned off. The lights will turn on again when the vehicle speed becomes lower than approximately 35 km/h (22 mph).

■ **Rear fog lights**

When the Multi Weather Lights system is enabled, the rear fog lights may also be illuminated.(→P.201)

■ **If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed**

→P.423

■ **Customization**

Vehicles with rear fog lights: Settings (e.g. on/off operation of the Multi Weather Lights system) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.462)

Rear fog lights*

*: If equipped

When driving in inclement weather, such as rain or fog, the rear fog lights can be used to make your vehicle more visible to following vehicles.

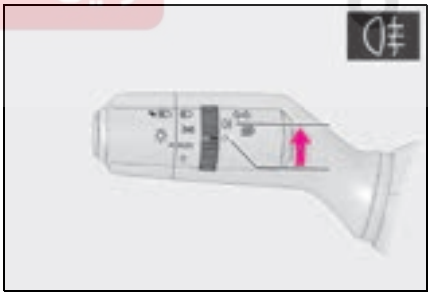
Operating instructions

1 Turn the headlight switch to the or AUTO position.

2 Turn the switch ring to the position.

When the switch is released, it returns to .

When the rear fog lights are enabled, the rear fog light indicator on the meter will illuminate.



Turn the switch ring to the position again to disable the rear fog lights.

■ **Operating conditions**

When the headlights are illuminated (When the rear fog lights are illuminated, even if the headlights are turned off, if the front position lights are illuminated, the rear fog

4 Driving

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

lights will not turn off.)

■ **Using the rear fog lights**

- When the rear fog lights are illuminated, the rear fog light indicator will illuminate in amber.
- Use the rear fog lights when driving in poor visibility conditions, such as rain or fog, to make your vehicle more visible to following vehicles. If the rear fog lights are used when visibility is not poor, they may impede the visibility of drivers in following vehicles. Use the rear fog lights only when necessary.

■ **Multi Weather Lights system-linked operation**

When the rear fog lights are illuminated, the Multi Weather Lights system may also operate. (→P.200)

Windshield wipers and washer

Operating the lever can switch between automatic operation and manual operation, or can use the washer.

NOTICE

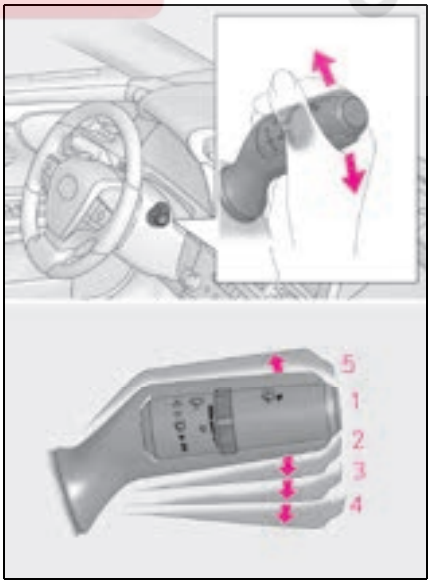
■ **When the windshield is dry**

Do not use the wipers, as they may damage the windshield.

Operating the wiper lever

▶ Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster

Operating the lever operates the wipers or washer as follows. When intermittent windshield wiper operation is selected, wiper interval can also be adjusted.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

1 Off

2 Intermittent operation
The intermittent windshield wiper operates more frequently as vehicle speed becomes higher.

3 Low speed operation

4 High speed operation

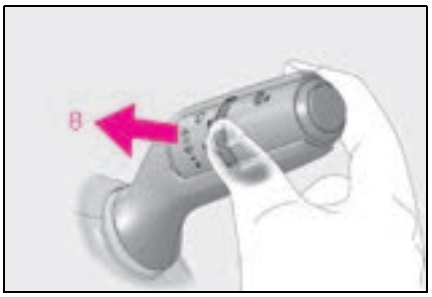
5 Temporary operation

Wiper intervals can be adjusted when intermittent operation is selected.



6 Increases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency

7 Decreases the intermittent windshield wiper frequency



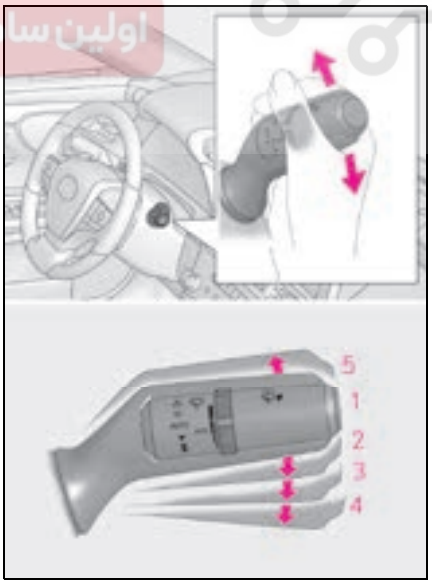
8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.
The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. (After operating several times, the wipers operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, the dripping prevention does not operate while the vehicle is moving.)

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

▶ Rain-sensing windshield wipers

Operate the lever and switch as follows to use the wipers. When AUTO is selected, the wipers will operate automatically when the sensor detects falling rain. The system automatically adjusts wiper timing in accordance with rain volume and vehicle speed.



1 Off

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

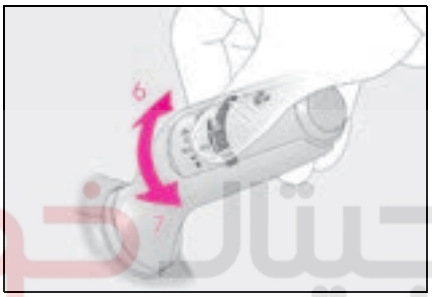
2 AUTO Rain-sensing operation

3 Low speed operation

4 High speed operation

5 Temporary operation

When AUTO is selected, the sensor sensitivity can be adjusted by turning the switch ring.



6 Increases the sensitivity

7 Decreases the sensitivity



8 Washer/wiper dual operation

Pulling the lever operates the wipers and washer.

The wipers will automatically operate a couple of times after the washer squirts. (After operating several times, the wipers operate once more time after a short delay to prevent dripping. However, the dripping prevention does not operate while the vehicle is moving.)

Vehicles with headlight cleaners: When the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode and the headlights are on, if the lever is pulled, the headlight cleaners will operate once. After this, the headlight cleaners will operate every 5th time the lever is pulled.

■ The windshield wiper and washer can be operated when

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Effects of vehicle speed on wiper operation (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Even when the wipers are not in AUTO mode, vehicle speed affects the time until the drip prevention wiper sweep occurs.

With low speed windshield wiper operation selected, wiper operation will be switched from low speed to intermittent wiper operation only when the vehicle is stationary. (However, when the sensor sensitivity is adjusted to the highest level, the mode cannot be switched.)

■ Raindrop sensor (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

- The raindrop sensor judges the amount of raindrops.
  An optical sensor is adopted. It may not operate properly when sunlight from the rising or setting of the sun intermittently strikes the windshield, or if bugs etc. are present on the windshield.



- If the wiper switch is turned to AUTO position while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the wipers will

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

operate once to show that AUTO mode is activated.

- If the temperature of the raindrop sensor is 85°C (185°F) or higher, or -30°C (-22°F) or lower, automatic operation may not occur. In this case, operate the wipers in any mode other than AUTO.

If no windshield washer fluid sprays

Check that the washer nozzles are not blocked if there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.

Front door opening linked windshield wiper stop function (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

When AUTO is selected and the windshield wipers are operating, if a front door is opened while the vehicle is stopped and the P position is selected, operation of the windshield wipers will be stopped to prevent anyone near the vehicle from being sprayed by water from the wipers. When the front door is closed, wiper operation will resume.

To protect the windshield wipers

If movement of the windshield wipers is largely restricted by a foreign object such as snow, the operation of the windshield wipers may be stopped automatically to protect the windshield wipers. In this case, turn the windshield wiper switch off and remove the foreign object, and then use the windshield wipers.

When stopping the engine in an emergency while driving

If the windshield wipers are operating when the engine is stopped, the windshield wipers will operate in high speed operation. After the vehicle is stopped, operation will return to normal when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, or operation will stop when the driver's door is opened.

WARNING

Caution regarding the use of windshield wipers in AUTO mode

The windshield wipers may operate unexpectedly if the sensor is touched or the windshield is subject to vibration in AUTO mode. Take care that your fingers or anything else do not become caught in the windshield wipers.

Caution regarding the use of washer fluid

When it is cold, do not use the washer fluid until the windshield becomes warm. The fluid may freeze on the windshield and cause low visibility. This may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

When there is no washer fluid spray from the nozzle

Damage to the washer fluid pump may be caused if the lever is pulled toward you and held continually.

When a nozzle becomes blocked

In this case, contact your Lexus dealer. Do not try to clear it with a pin or other object. The nozzle will be damaged.

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the wipers on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Changing the windshield wiper rest position/Lifting the windshield wipers

When the windshield wipers are not being used, they retract to below the hood. To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when parking in cold conditions or when replacing a windshield

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

wiper insert, change the rest position of the windshield wipers to the service position using the wiper lever.

Raising the wipers to the service position

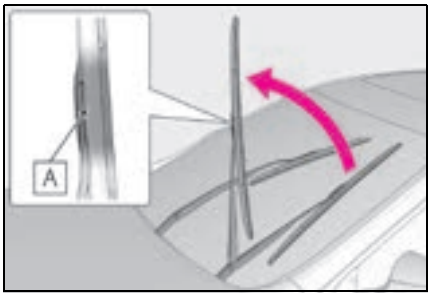
Within approximately 45 seconds of turning the engine switch off, move the wiper lever to the △ position and hold it for approximately 2 seconds or more.

The wipers will move to the service position.



Lifting the windshield wipers

While holding the hook portion A of the wiper arm, lift the windshield wiper from the windshield.



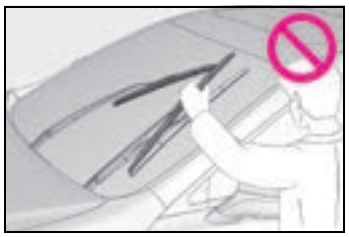
Lowering the windshield wipers to the retracted position

With the windshield wipers placed on the windshield, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then move the wiper lever to an operating position. When the wiper switch is turned off, the windshield wipers will stop at the retracted position. Even if the wipers deviate while the engine switch is off, the wipers will return to the normal position.

NOTICE

When lifting the windshield wipers

- Do not lift the windshield wipers when they are in the retracted position below the hood. Otherwise, they may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to a windshield wiper and/or the hood.
- Do not lift a windshield wiper by the wiper blade. Otherwise, the wiper blade may be deformed.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- Do not operate the wiper lever when the windshield wipers are lifted. Otherwise, the windshield wipers may contact the hood, possibly resulting in damage to the windshield wipers and/or hood.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Opening the fuel tank cap

Before refueling the vehicle

- Close all the doors and windows, and turn the engine switch off.
- Confirm the type of fuel.

Fuel types

→P.461

Fuel tank opening for unleaded gasoline

To help prevent incorrect fueling, your vehicle has a fuel tank opening that only accommodates the special nozzle on unleaded fuel pumps.

WARNING

When refueling the vehicle

Observe the following precautions while refueling the vehicle. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel door, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Always hold the grips on the fuel tank cap and turn it slowly to remove it. A whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. Wait until the sound cannot be heard before fully removing the cap. In hot weather, pressurized fuel may spray out the filler neck and cause injury.
- Do not allow anyone that has not discharged static electricity from their body to come close to an open fuel tank.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel. Fuel contains substances that are harmful if inhaled.
- Do not smoke while refueling the vehicle. Doing so may cause the fuel to ignite and cause a fire.
- Do not return to the vehicle or touch any person or object that is statically charged. This may cause static electricity to build up, resulting in a possible ignition hazard.

When refueling

Observe the following precautions to prevent fuel overflowing from the fuel tank:

- Securely insert the fuel nozzle into the fuel filler neck.
- Stop filling the tank after the fuel nozzle automatically clicks off.
- Do not top off the fuel tank.

NOTICE

Refueling

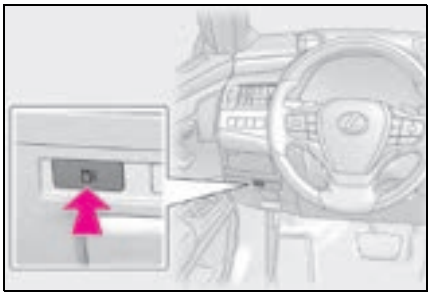
Do not spill fuel during refueling.
Doing so may damage the vehicle, such as causing the emission control system to operate abnormally or damaging fuel system components or the vehicle's painted surface.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Opening the fuel tank cap

1 Press the opener switch.



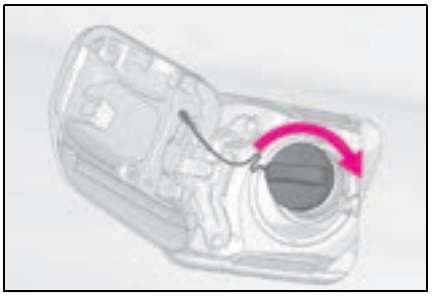
2 Turn the fuel tank cap slowly and remove it, then hang it on the back of the fuel filler door.



■ If the fuel filler door cannot be opened
→P.437

Closing the fuel tank cap

After refueling, turn the fuel tank cap until you hear a click. Once the cap is released, it will turn slightly in the opposite direction.



■ When "Check Fuel Cap" is displayed on the multi-information display (For Taiwan)

The fuel tank cap may be unfastened or loose. Turn the engine switch off, check the cap and tighten it securely. If the message remains, wait a few seconds and then turn the engine switch off once again.

WARNING

■ When replacing the fuel tank cap

Do not use anything but a genuine Lexus fuel tank cap designed for your vehicle. Doing so may cause a fire or other incident which may result in death or serious injury.

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Lexus Safety System +*

*: If equipped

The Lexus Safety System + consists of the following drive assist systems and contributes to a safe and comfortable driving experience:

Driving assist system

- PCS (Pre-Collision System)
→P.215
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)
→P.226
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*
→P.193
- AHB (Automatic High Beam)*
→P.197
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*
→P.235
- Dynamic radar cruise control*
→P.246

*: If equipped

WARNING

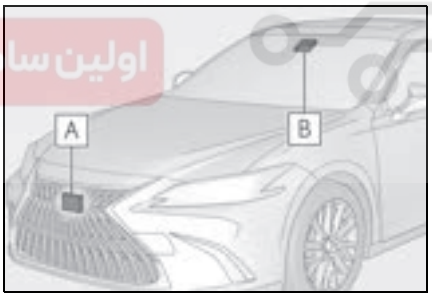
■ Lexus Safety System +

The Lexus Safety System + is designed to operate under the assumption that the driver will drive safely, and is designed to help reduce the impact to the occupants and the vehicle in the case of a collision or assist the driver in normal driving conditions.

As there is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

Sensors

Two types of sensors, located behind the front grille and windshield, detect information necessary to operate the drive assist systems.



A Radar sensor

B Front camera

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

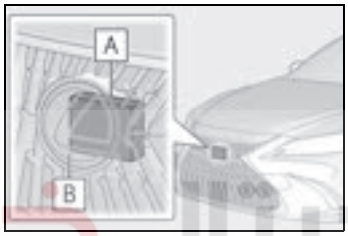
WARNING

■ **To avoid malfunction of the radar sensor**

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the radar sensor may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Keep the radar sensor and the radar sensor cover clean at all times.



A Radar sensor

B Radar sensor cover

If the front of the radar sensor or the front or back of the radar sensor cover is dirty or covered with water droplets, snow, etc., clean it.

Clean the radar sensor and radar sensor cover with a soft cloth to avoid damaging them.

- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers) or other items to the radar sensor, radar sensor cover or surrounding area.
- Do not subject the radar sensor or its surrounding area to a strong impact. If the radar sensor, front grille, or front bumper has been subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble the radar sensor.
- Do not modify or paint the radar sensor or radar sensor cover.
- In the following cases, the radar sensor must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
  - When the radar sensor or front grille are removed and installed, or replaced
  - When the front bumper is replaced

■ **To avoid malfunction of the front camera**

Observe the following precautions.

Otherwise, the front camera may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

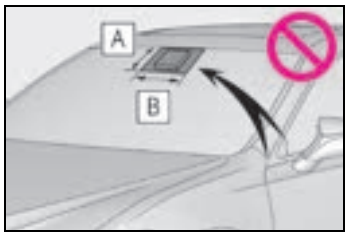
- Keep the windshield clean at all times.
  - If the windshield is dirty or covered with an oily film, water droplets, snow, etc., clean the windshield.
  - If a glass coating agent is applied to the windshield, it will still be necessary to use the windshield wipers to remove water droplets, etc. from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera.
  - If the inner side of the windshield where the front camera is installed is dirty, contact your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Do not attach objects, such as stickers, transparent stickers, etc., to the outer side of the windshield in front of the front camera (shaded area in the illustration).



A From the top of the windshield to approximately 1 cm (0.4 in.) below the bottom of the front camera

B Approximately 20 cm (7.9 in.) (Approximately 10 cm [4.0 in.] to the right and left from the center of the front camera)

- If the part of the windshield in front of the front camera is fogged up or covered with condensation or ice, use the windshield defogger to remove the fog, condensation or ice. (→P.314)
- If water droplets cannot be properly removed from the area of the windshield in front of the front camera by the windshield wipers, replace the wiper insert or wiper blade.
- Do not attach window tint to the windshield.
- Replace the windshield if it is damaged or cracked.
  After replacing the windshield, the front camera must be recalibrated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Do not allow liquids to contact the front camera.
- Do not allow bright lights to shine into the front camera.
- Do not dirty or damage the front camera.
  When cleaning the inside of the windshield, do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens of the front camera. Also, do not touch the lens.
  If the lens is dirty or damaged, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not subject the front camera to a strong impact.
- Do not change the installation position or direction of the front camera or remove it.
- Do not disassemble the front camera.
- Do not modify any components of the vehicle around the front camera (inside rear view mirror, etc.) or ceiling.
- Do not attach any accessories to the hood, front grille or front bumper that may obstruct the front camera. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- If a surfboard or other long object is to be mounted on the roof, make sure that it will not obstruct the front camera.
- Do not modify the headlights or other lights.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **If a warning message is displayed on the multi-information display**

A system may be temporarily unavailable or there may be a malfunction in the system.

● In the following situations, perform the actions specified in the table. When the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

Situation	Actions
When the area around a camera is covered with dirt, moisture (fogged up, covered with condensation, ice, etc.), or other foreign matter	Using the wiper and A/C function, remove the dirt and other attached matter. (→P.314)
When the temperature around the front camera is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment	If the front camera is hot, such as after the vehicle had been parked in the sun, use the air conditioning system to decrease the temperature around the front camera. If a sunshade was used when the vehicle was parked, depending on its type, the sunlight reflected from the surface of the sunshade may cause the temperature of the front camera to become excessively high.
	If the front camera is cold, such after the vehicle is parked in an extremely cold environment, use the air conditioning system to increase the temperature around the front camera.
The area in front of the front camera is obstructed, such as when the hood is open or a sticker is attached to the part of the windshield in front of the front camera.	Close the hood, remove the sticker, etc. to clear the obstruction.
When "PCS Radar In Self Calibr. Unavailable See Manual" is displayed.	Check whether there is attached materials on the radar sensor and radar sensor cover, and if there is, remove it.

● In the following situations, if the situation has changed (or the vehicle has been driven for some time) and the normal operating conditions are detected, the message will disappear and the system will become operational.

If the message does not disappear, contact your Lexus dealer.

- When the temperature around the radar sensor is outside of the operational range, such as when the vehicle is in the sun or in an extremely cold environment
- When the front camera cannot detect objects in front of the vehicle, such as when driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

in the dark, snow, or fog, or when bright lights are shining into the front camera
- Depending on the conditions in the vicinity of the vehicle, the radar may judge the surrounding environment can not be properly recognized. In that case, "PCS Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is displayed.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

PCS (Pre-Collision System)*

*: If equipped

The pre-collision system uses a radar sensor and front camera to detect objects (→P.215) in front of the vehicle. When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action and the potential brake pressure is increased to help the driver avoid the collision. If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with an object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

The pre-collision system can be disabled/enabled and the warning timing can be changed. (→P.219)

Detectable objects and function availability

The system can detect the following (The detectable objects differs depending on the function.):

Regions	Detectable objects	Function availability	Countries/areas
A	• Vehicles • Bicyclists • Pedestrians	The pre-collision warning, pre-collision brake assist, pre-collision braking, emergency steering assist, intersection right/left turn assistance and suspension control function are available	South Africa, Singapore, Taiwan, Brunei, Hong Kong, Macao, GCC countries*
B		The pre-collision warning, pre-collision brake assist, pre-collision braking and suspension control function are available	Malaysia, Panama, Peru
C	Vehicles		Jordan, Lebanon, Indonesia, Philippines, Viet Nam, Cambodia

*: Saudi Arabia, Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait

The countries and areas for each region listed in the table are current as of August 2022. However, depending on when the vehicle was sold, the countries and areas of each region may be different. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

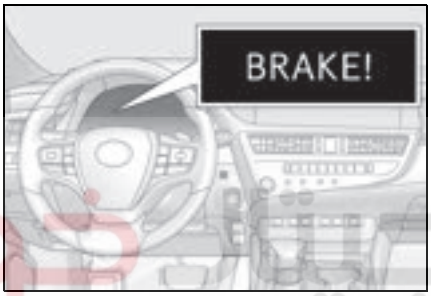
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

System functions

Pre-collision warning

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, a buzzer will sound and a warning message will be displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to take evasive action.



Pre-collision brake assist

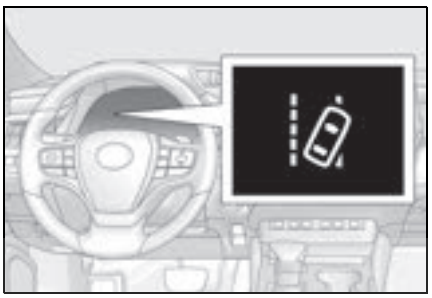
When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the system applies greater braking force in relation to how strongly the brake pedal is depressed.

Pre-collision braking

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or reduce the impact of the collision.

Emergency steering assist (for region A)

If the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high and that there is sufficient space for the vehicle to be steered into within its lane, and the driver has begun evasive maneuver or steering, emergency steering assist will assist the steering movements to help enhance the vehicle stability and for lane departure prevention. During operation, the indicator will illuminate in green.

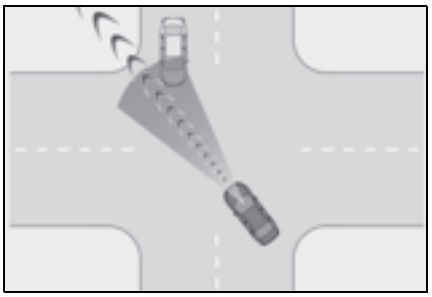


Intersection right/left turn assistance (for region A)

If the system determines that there is a high possibility of a collision in the following situations, it will assist with Pre-collision warning and, if necessary Pre-collision braking.

Depending on the configuration of the intersection, it may not be possible to support.

- When you turn right/left at an intersection and cross the path of an oncoming vehicle

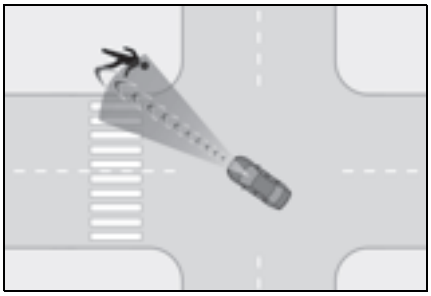


- When you turn right/left, pedestrian

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

is detected in the forward direction and estimated to enter your vehicle's path (bicyclists are not detected.)



Suspension control (if equipped)

When the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision is high, the AVS (→P.300) will control the damping force of the shock absorbers to help maintain an appropriate vehicle posture.

WARNING

Limitations of the pre-collision system

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. Do not use the pre-collision system instead of normal braking operations under any circumstances. This system will not prevent collisions or lessen collision damage or injury in every situation. Do not overly rely on this system. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Although this system is designed to help avoid a collision or help reduce the impact of the collision, its effectiveness may change according to various conditions, therefore the system may not always be able to achieve the same level of performance.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision: →P.222
  - Conditions under which the system may not operate properly: →P.223
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the pre-collision system yourself. Depending on the objects used for testing (dummies, cardboard objects imitating detectable objects, etc.), the system may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident.

Pre-collision braking

- When the pre-collision braking function is operating, a large amount of braking force will be applied.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the operation of the pre-collision braking function, the pre-collision braking function operation will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds. Depress the brake pedal as necessary.
- The pre-collision braking function may not operate if certain operations are performed by the driver. If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly or the steering wheel is being turned, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly prevent the pre-collision braking function from operating.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- In some situations, while the pre-collision braking function is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly or the steering wheel is turned and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- If the brake pedal is being depressed, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and possibly delay the operation timing of the pre-collision braking function.

Emergency steering assist (for region A)

- As emergency steering assist operation will be canceled when the system determines that lane departure prevention function has been completed.
- Emergency steering assist may not operate or may be cancel in the following cases as the system may determine the driver is taking actions.

- If the accelerator pedal is being depressed strongly, the steering wheel is being operated sharply, the brake pedal is being depressed or the turn signal lever is being operated. In this case, the system may determine that the driver is taking evasive action and the emergency steering assist may not operate.
- In some situations, while the emergency steering assist is operating, operation of the function may be canceled if the accelerator pedal is depressed strongly, the steering wheel is operated sharply or the brake pedal is being depressed and the system determines that the driver is taking evasive action.
- When the emergency steering assist is operating, if the steering wheel is held firmly or is operated in the opposite direction to that which the system is generating torque, the function may be canceled.

When to disable the pre-collision system

In the following situations, disable the system, as it may not operate properly, possibly leading to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- When the vehicle is being towed
- When your vehicle is towing another vehicle
- When transporting the vehicle via truck, boat, train or similar means of transportation
- When the vehicle is raised on a lift with the engine running and the tires are allowed to rotate freely
- When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester such as a chassis dynamometer or speedometer tester, or when using an on vehicle wheel balancer
- When a strong impact is applied to the front bumper or front grille, due to an accident or other reasons
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road
- When the tires are not properly inflated
- When the tires are very worn
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed
- When tire chains are installed

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- When a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit is used
- If equipment (snow plow, etc.) that may obstruct the radar sensor or front camera is temporarily installed to the vehicle

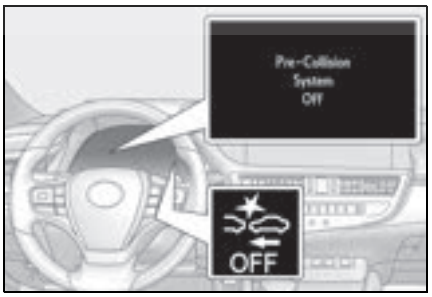
Changing settings of the pre-collision system

Enabling/disabling the pre-collision system

The pre-collision system can be enabled/disabled on (→P.105) of the multi-information display.

The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

If the system is disabled, the PCS warning light will turn on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.



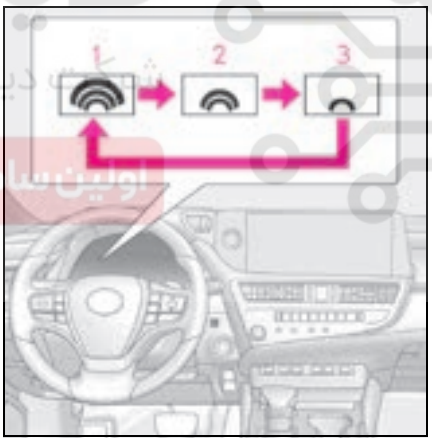
Changing the pre-collision warning timing

The pre-collision warning timing can be changed on (→P.105) of the multi-information display.

The warning timing setting is retained when the engine switch is turned off. However, if the pre-collision system is disabled and re-enabled, the operation timing will return to the default setting (middle).

For region A: If the pre-collision warning timing is changed, emergency steering assist timing will also be changed accordingly.

If late is selected, emergency steering assist would not operate in case of an emergency.



1 Early

2 Middle

This is the default setting.

3 Late

Operational conditions for each pre-collision function

The pre-collision system is enabled and the system determines that the possibility of a frontal collision with a detected object is high.

The system may not operate in the following situations:

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected and then the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- If the shift lever is in R
- When the VSC OFF indicator is illuminated (only the pre-collision warning function will be operational)

The operation speeds and operation cancellation for each function is listed below.

● Pre-collision warning

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

While the pre-collision warning function is operating, if the steering wheel is operated heavily or suddenly, the pre-collision warning may be cancelled.

● Pre-collision brake assist

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)	Approx. 30 to 180 km/h (20 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)	Approx. 30 to 80 km/h (20 to 50 mph)

● Pre-collision braking

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 180 km/h (7 to 110 mph)	Approx. 20 to 180 km/h (13 to 110 mph)
For region A and B: Bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)	Approx. 10 to 80 km/h (7 to 50 mph)

If either of the following occur while the pre-collision braking function is operating, it will be canceled:

- The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

• The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

● Emergency steering assist (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are flashing, emergency steering assist will not operate in case of an emergency.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Preceding and stopped vehicles, bicyclists and pedestrians	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)

If any of the following occur while the emergency steering assist function is operating, it will be canceled:

• The accelerator pedal is depressed strongly.

• The steering wheel is turned sharply or abruptly.

• The brake pedal is depressed.

● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision warning) (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 55 km/h (20 to 35 mph)	Approx. 40 to 80 km/h (25 to 50 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

● Intersection right/left turn assistance (pre-collision braking) (for region A)

When the turn signal lights are not flashing, support for turning left or right at an intersection which targets oncoming vehicles does not work.

Detectable objects	Vehicle speed	Oncoming vehicle speed	Relative speed between your vehicle and object
Oncoming vehicles	Approx. 15 to 25 km/h (10 to 15 mph)	Approx. 30 to 45 km/h (20 to 28 mph)	Approx. 45 to 70 km/h (28 to 43 mph)
Pedestrians	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)	—	Approx. 10 to 25 km/h (7 to 15 mph)

■ **Object detection function**

The system detects objects based on their size, profile, motion, etc. However, an object may not be detected depending on the surrounding brightness and the motion, posture, and angle of the detected object, preventing the system from operating

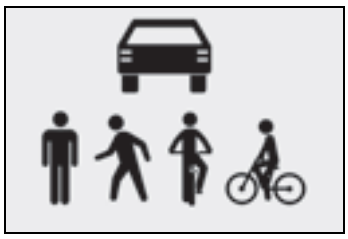
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

properly. (→P.223)

The illustration shows an image of detectable objects.

▶ Region A and B



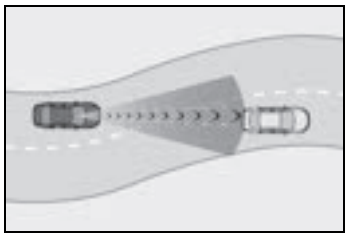
▶ Region C



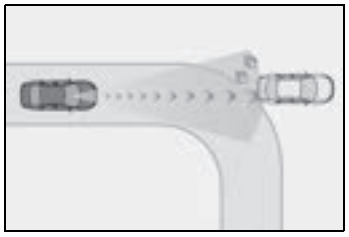
■ **Conditions under which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

● In some situations such as the following, the system may determine that there is a possibility of a frontal collision and operate.

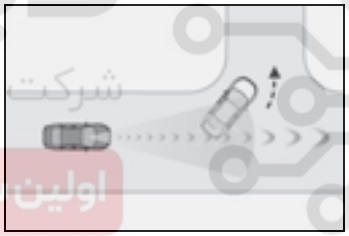
- When passing a detectable object, etc.
- When changing lanes while overtaking a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching a detectable object in an adjacent lane or on the roadside, such as when changing the course of travel or driving on a winding road



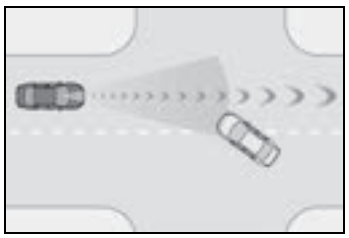
- When rapidly closing on a detectable object, etc.
- When approaching objects on the roadside, such as detectable objects, guardrails, utility poles, trees, or walls
- When there is a detectable object or other object by the roadside at the entrance of a curve



- When there are patterns or paint in front of your vehicle that may be mistaken for a detectable object
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When overtaking a detectable object that is changing lanes or making a right/left turn



- When passing a detectable object in an oncoming lane that is stopped to make a right/left turn

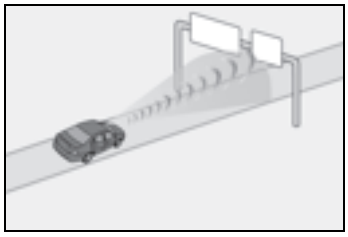


- When a detectable object approaches very close and then stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- If the front of your vehicle is raised or lowered, such as when on an uneven or undulating road surface
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on an iron

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

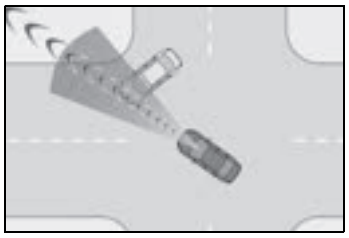
bridge
- When there is a metal object (manhole cover, steel plate, etc.), steps, or a protrusion in front of your vehicle
- When passing under an object (road sign, billboard, etc.)



- When approaching an electric toll gate barrier, parking area barrier, or other barrier that opens and closes
- When using an automatic car wash
- When driving through or under objects that may contact your vehicle, such as thick grass, tree branches, or a banner



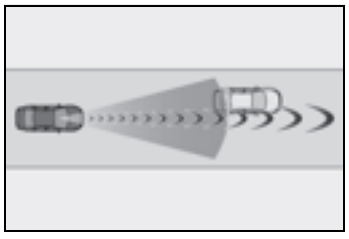
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When driving near an object that reflects radio waves, such as a large truck or guardrail
- When driving near a TV tower, broadcasting station, electric power plant, radar equipped vehicles, etc., or other location where strong radio waves or electrical noise may be present
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian has already exited the path of your vehicle
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, closely in front of an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian.
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle or a crossing pedestrian stops before entering the path of your vehicle
- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when an oncoming vehicle turns right/left in front of your vehicle



- For region A: While steering into the direction of oncoming traffic

Situations in which the system may not operate properly

In some situations such as the following, an object may not be detected by the radar sensor and front camera, preventing the system from operating properly:
- When a detectable object is approaching your vehicle
- When your vehicle or a detectable object is wobbling
- If a detectable object makes an abrupt maneuver (such as sudden swerving, acceleration or deceleration)
- When your vehicle approaches a detectable object rapidly
- When a detectable object is not directly in front of your vehicle



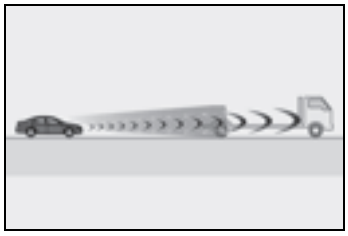
- When a detectable object is near a wall, fence, guardrail, manhole cover, vehicle, steel plate on the road, etc.
- When a detectable object is under a structure

4 Driving

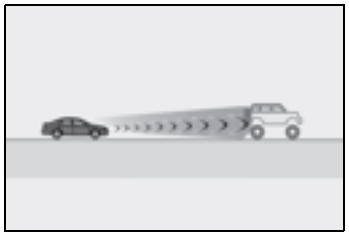
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- When part of a detectable object is hidden by an object, such as large baggage, an umbrella, or guardrail
- When there are many things which can reflect the radio waves of the radar in the vicinity (tunnels, truss bridges, gravel roads, snow covered road that have tracks, etc.)
- When there is an effect on the radio waves to the radar that is installed on another vehicle
- When multiple detectable objects are close together
- If the sun or other light is shining directly on a detectable object
- When a detectable object is a shade of white and looks extremely bright
- When a detectable object appears to be nearly the same color or brightness as its surroundings
- If a detectable object cuts or suddenly emerges in front of your vehicle
- When the front of your vehicle is hit by water, snow, dust, etc.
- When a very bright light ahead, such as the sun or the headlights of oncoming traffic, shines directly into the front camera
- When approaching the side or front of a vehicle ahead
- If a vehicle ahead is a motorcycle or bicycle (for region C)
- If a vehicle ahead is narrow, such as a personal mobility vehicle
- If a preceding vehicle has a small rear end, such as an unloaded truck
- If a preceding vehicle has a low rear end, such as a low bed trailer



- If a vehicle ahead has extremely high ground clearance

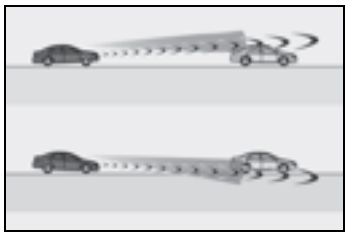


- If a vehicle ahead is carrying a load which protrudes past its rear bumper
- If a vehicle ahead is irregularly shaped, such as a tractor or side car
- For region A and B: If a vehicle ahead is a child sized bicycle, a bicycle that is carrying a large load, a bicycle ridden by more than one person, or a uniquely shaped bicycle (bicycle with a child seat, tandem bicycle, etc.)
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/or the riding height of a bicyclist ahead is shorter than approximately 1 m (3.2 ft.) or taller than approximately 2 m (6.5 ft.)
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/bicyclist is wearing oversized clothing (a rain coat, long skirt, etc.), making their silhouette obscure
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian is bending forward or squatting or bicyclist is bending forward
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian/bicyclist is moving fast
- For region A and B: If a pedestrian is pushing a stroller, wheelchair, bicycle or other vehicle
- When driving in inclement weather such as heavy rain, fog, snow or a sandstorm
- When driving through steam or smoke
- When the surrounding area is dim, such as at dawn or dusk, or while at night or in a tunnel, making a detectable object appear to be nearly the same color as its surroundings
- When driving in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a tunnel
- After the engine has started the vehicle has not been driven for a certain amount of time
- While making a left/right turn and for a few seconds after making a left/right turn
- While driving on a curve and for a few

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

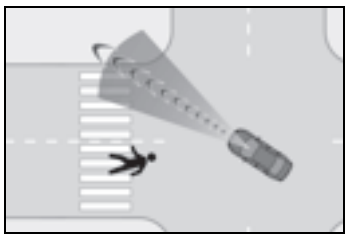
seconds after driving on a curve
- If your vehicle is skidding
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered



- If the wheels are misaligned
- If a wiper blade is blocking the front camera
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds
- When driving on a hill
- If the radar sensor or front camera is misaligned
- For region A: When driving in a traffic lane separated by more than one lane where oncoming vehicles are driving while making a right/left turn
- For region A: When largely out of place with the opposite facing targeted oncoming vehicle during a right/left turn



- For region A: While making a right/left turn, when a pedestrian approaches from behind or side of your vehicle



● For region A: In addition to the above, in some situations, such as the following, the emergency steering assist may not operate.
- For region A: When the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see, such as when they are faint, diverging/merging, or a shadow is cast upon them
- For region A: When the lane is wider or narrower than normal
- For region A: When there is a light and dark pattern on the road surface, such as due to road repairs
- For region A: When the target is too close
- For region A: When there is insufficient safe or unobstructed space for the vehicle to be steered into
- For region A: If oncoming vehicle is present
- For region A: If VSC function is operating

● In some situations such as the following, sufficient braking force or steering force (for region A) may not be obtained, preventing the system from performing properly:
- If the braking functions cannot operate to their full extent, such as when the brake parts are extremely cold, extremely hot, or wet
- If the vehicle is not properly maintained (brakes or tires are excessively worn, improper tire inflation pressure, etc.)
- When the vehicle is being driven on a gravel road or other slippery surface
- When the road surface has deep wheel tracks
- When driving on a hill road
- When driving on a road that has inclines to the left or right

If VSC is disabled

● If VSC is disabled (→P.301), the pre-collision brake assist and pre-collision braking functions are also disabled.

● The PCS warning light will turn on and "VSC Turned Off Pre-Collision Brake System Unavailable" will be displayed on the multi-information display.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

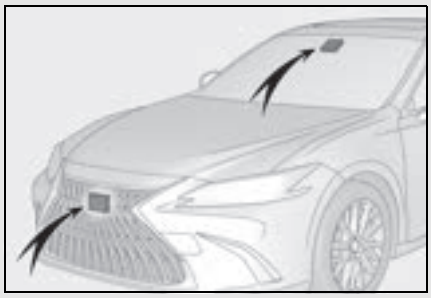
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*

*: If equipped

While driving on a road with clear white (yellow) lane lines, the LTA system warns the driver if the vehicle may deviate from the current lane or course*, and also can slightly operate the steering wheel to help avoid deviation from the lane or course*. Also, while the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (→P.235) or dynamic radar cruise control (→P.246) is operating, this system will operate the steering wheel to maintain the vehicle's lane position.

The LTA system recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course* using the front camera. Additionally, it detects preceding vehicles using the front camera and radar.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



⚠ WARNING

■ Before using LTA system

- Do not rely solely upon the LTA system. The LTA system does not automatically drive the vehicle or reduce the amount of attention that must be paid to the area in front of the vehicle. The driver must always assume full responsibility for driving safely by paying careful attention to the surrounding conditions and operating the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle. Also, the driver must take adequate breaks when fatigued, such as from driving for a long period of time.
- Failure to perform appropriate driving operations and pay careful attention may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Situations unsuitable for LTA system

In the following situations, use the LTA switch to turn the system off. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Vehicle is driven on a road surface which is slippery due to rainy weather, fallen snow, freezing, etc.
- Vehicle is driven on a snow-covered road.
- White (yellow) lines are difficult to see due to rain, snow, fog, dust, etc.
- Vehicle is driven in a temporary lane or restricted lane due to construction work.
- Vehicle is driven in a construction zone.
- A spare tire, tire chains, etc. are equipped.
- When the tires have been excessively worn, or when the tire inflation pressure is low.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- During emergency towing

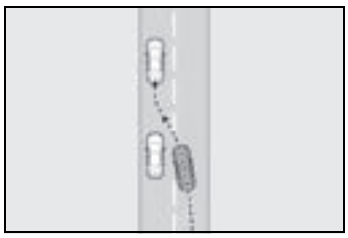
■ Preventing LTA system malfunctions and operations performed by mistake

- Do not modify the headlights or place stickers, etc. on the surface of the lights.
- Do not modify the suspension etc. If the suspension etc. needs to be replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not install or place anything on the hood or grille. Also, do not install a grille guard (bull bars, kangaroo bar, etc.).
- If your windshield needs repairs, contact your Lexus dealer.

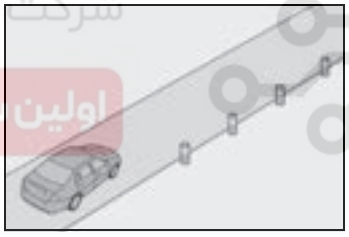
■ Conditions in which functions may not operate properly

In the following situations, the functions may not operate properly and the vehicle may depart from its lane. Drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel to correct the path of the vehicle without relying solely on the functions.

- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.231) and the preceding vehicle changes lanes. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and also change lanes.)



- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.231) and the preceding vehicle is swaying. (Your vehicle may sway accordingly and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.231) and the preceding vehicle departs from its lane. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- When the follow-up cruising display is displayed (→P.231) and the preceding vehicle is being driven extremely close to the left/right lane line. (Your vehicle may follow the preceding vehicle and depart from the lane.)
- Vehicle is being driven around a sharp curve.
- Objects or patterns that could be mistaken for white (yellow) lines are present on the side of the road (guardrails, reflective poles, etc.).

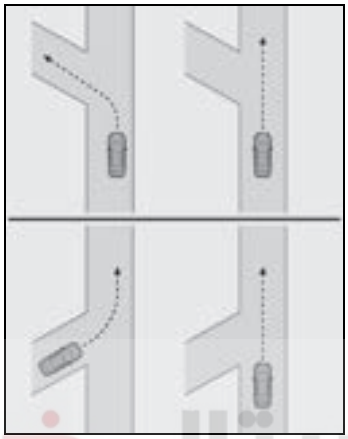


WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Vehicle is driven where the road diverges, merges, etc.



- Repair marks of asphalt, white (yellow) lines, etc. are present due to road repair.



- There are shadows on the road that run parallel with, or cover, the white (yellow) lines.
- The vehicle is driven in an area without white (yellow) lines, such as in front of a tollgate or checkpoint, or at an intersection, etc.
- The white (yellow) lines are cracked, "Raised pavement marker" or stones are present.
- The white (yellow) lines cannot be seen or are difficult to see due to sand, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a road surface that is wet due to rain, puddles, etc.
- The traffic lines are yellow (which may be more difficult to recognize than lines that are white).
- The white (yellow) lines cross over a curb, etc.
- The vehicle is driven on a bright surface, such as concrete.
- If the edge of the road is not clear or straight.
- The vehicle is driven on a surface that is bright due to reflected light, etc.
- The vehicle is driven in an area where the brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrances and exits of tunnels, etc.
- Light from the headlights of an oncoming vehicle, the sun, etc. enters the camera.
- The vehicle is driven on a slope.
- The vehicle is driven on a road which tilts left or right, or a winding road.
- The vehicle is driven on an unpaved or rough road.
- The traffic lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle is extremely tilted due to carrying heavy luggage or having improper tire pressure.
- The distance to the preceding vehicle is extremely short.
- The vehicle is moving up and down a large amount due to road conditions during driving (poor roads or road seams).
- When driving in a tunnel or at night with the headlights off or when a headlight is dim due to its lens being dirty or it being misaligned.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- The vehicle is struck by a crosswind.
- The vehicle is affected by wind from a vehicle driven in a nearby lane.
- The vehicle has just changed lanes or crossed an intersection.
- Tires which differ by structure, manufacturer, brand or tread pattern are used.
- When tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- Snow tires, etc. are equipped.
- The vehicle is being driven at extremely high speeds.

Functions included in LTA system

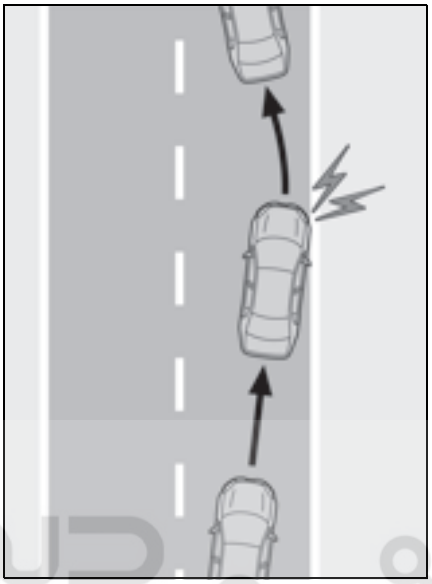
Lane departure alert function

When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, a warning is displayed on the multi-information display, and either a warning buzzer will sound or the steering wheel will vibrate to alert the driver.

When the warning buzzer sounds or the steering wheel vibrates, check the area around your vehicle and carefully operate the steering wheel to move the vehicle back to the center of the lane.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the lane departure alert will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb



Steering assist function

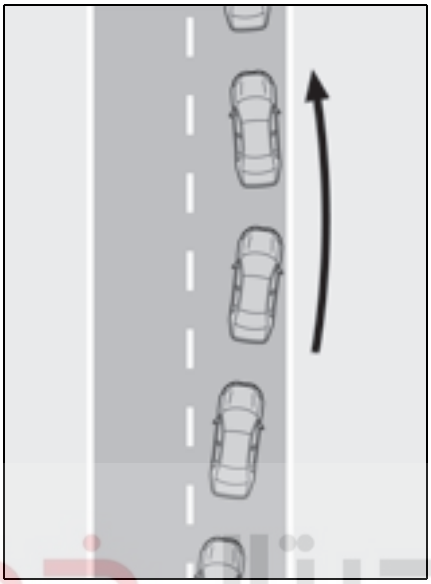
When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane or course*, the system provides assistance as necessary by operating the steering wheel in small amounts for a short period of time to keep the vehicle in its lane.

Vehicle with BSM: When the system determines that the vehicle might depart from its lane and that the possibility of a collision with an overtaking vehicle in the adjacent lane is high, the steering assist function will operate even if the turn signals are operating.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

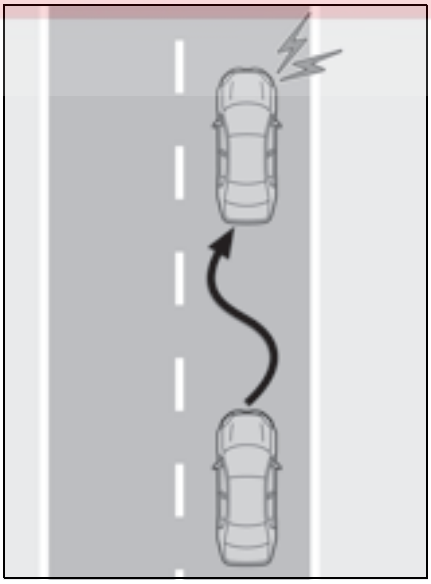
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



Vehicle sway warning function

When the vehicle is swaying within a lane, the warning buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display to alert the driver.



Lane centering function

This function is linked with dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control and provides the required assistance by operating the steering wheel to keep the vehicle in its current lane.

When dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control is not operating, the lane centering function does not operate.

In situations where the white (yellow) lane lines are difficult to see or are not visible, such as when in a traffic jam, this function will operate to help follow a preceding vehicle by monitoring the position of the preceding vehicle.



LTA system setting

Turning the lane centering function ON/OFF

Press the LTA switch.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

The lane centering function will change between ON/OFF each time the switch is pressed.

Lane centering function on: "LTA Steering Assist Active Lane Centring Active" is displayed.

When the LTA system is turned on, operation of the LTA system continues in the same condition the next time the engine is started.



Turning the LTA system OFF

Press and hold the LTA switch

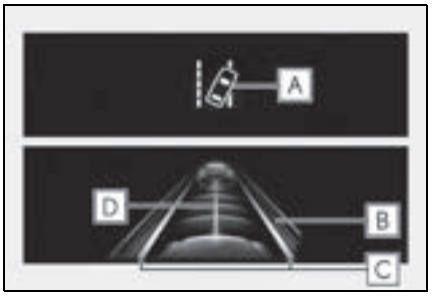
The LTA indicator light turns off when the LTA is turned OFF.

Press the switch again to turn the system on.

The LTA is turned ON each time the engine switch is turned to ON.

However, the lane centering function keeps either the ON/OFF state prior to the engine switch being turned OFF.

Indications on multi-information display



A LTA indicator

The illumination condition of the indicator informs the driver of the system operation status.

Illuminated in white:
LTA system is operating.

Illuminated in green:
Steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Flashing in orange:
Lane departure alert function is operating.

B Operation display of steering wheel operation support

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering wheel assistance of the steering assist function or lane centering function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are displayed:
Indicates that steering wheel assist of the lane centering function is operating.

One outer side of the lane is displayed:
Indicates that steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

Both outer sides of the lane are flashing:
Alerts the driver that their input is neces-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

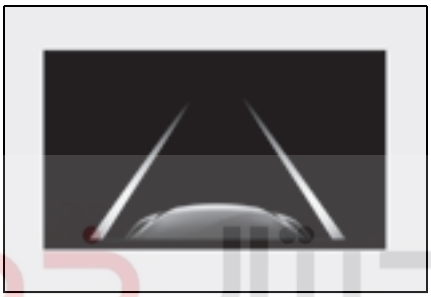
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

sary to stay in the center of the lane (lane centering function).

C Lane departure alert function display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is white



Indicates that the system is recognizing white (yellow) lines or a course*. When the vehicle departs from its lane, the white line displayed on the side the vehicle departs from flashes orange.

▶ Inside of displayed lines is black



Indicates that the system is not able to recognize white (yellow) lines or a course* or is temporarily canceled.

D Follow-up cruising display

Displayed when the multi-information display is switched to the driving support system information display.

Indicates that steering assist of the lane centering function is operating by monitoring the position of a preceding vehicle.

When the follow-up cruising display is displayed, if the preceding vehicle moves, your vehicle may move in the same way. Always pay careful attention to your surroundings and operate the steering wheel as necessary to correct the path of the vehicle and ensure safety.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

Operation conditions of each function

● Lane departure alert function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.*1
- System recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or a course*2. (When a white [yellow] line or course*2 is recognized on only one side, the system will operate only for the recognized side.)
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more
- Turn signal lever is not operated. (Vehicle with BSM: Except when another vehicle is in the lane on the side where the turn signal was operated)
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.234)

*1: The function operates even if the vehicle speed is less than approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) when the lane centering function is operating.

*2: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

● Steering assist function

This function operates when all of the fol-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

lowing conditions are met in addition to the operation conditions for the lane departure alert function.

- Vehicle is not accelerated or decelerated by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.

● Vehicle sway warning function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Setting for "Warning" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.105)
- Vehicle speed is approximately 50 km/h (32 mph) or more.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) or more.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.234)

● Lane centering function

This function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- LTA is turned on.
- Setting for "Lane Centre" in  of the multi-information display is set to "On". (→P.105)
- This function recognizes white (yellow) lane lines or the position of a preceding vehicle (except when the preceding vehicle is small, such as a motorcycle).
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range or dynamic radar cruise control is operating in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode.
- Width of traffic lane is approximately 3 to 4 m (10 to 13 ft.).
- Turn signal lever is not operated.
- Vehicle is not being driven around a sharp curve.
- No system malfunctions are detected. (→P.234)
- Vehicle does not accelerate or decelerate by a fixed amount or more.
- Steering wheel is not operated with a steering force level suitable for changing lanes.
- ABS, VSC, TRC and PCS are not operating.
- TRC or VSC is not turned off.
- Hands off steering wheel warning is not displayed. (→P.234)
- The vehicle is being driven in the center of a lane.
- Steering assist function is not operating.

■ **Temporary cancelation of functions**

● When operation conditions are no longer met, a function may be temporarily canceled. However, when the operation conditions are met again, operation of the function is automatically restored. (→P.232)

● If the operation conditions (→P.232) are no longer met while the lane centering function is operating, the steering wheel may vibrate and the buzzer may sound to indicate that the function has been temporarily canceled. However, if the "Alert" customization setting is set to , the system will notify the driver by vibrating the steering wheel instead of sounding the buzzer.

■ **Steering assist function/lane centering function**

● Depending on the vehicle speed, lane departure situation, road conditions, etc., the driver may not feel the function is operating or the function may not operate at all.

● The steering control of the function is overridden by the driver's steering wheel operation.

● Do not attempt to test the operation of the steering assist function.

■ **Lane departure alert function**

● The warning buzzer may be difficult to hear due to external noise, audio playback, etc. Also, it may be difficult to feel steering wheel vibrations due to the road conditions, etc.

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

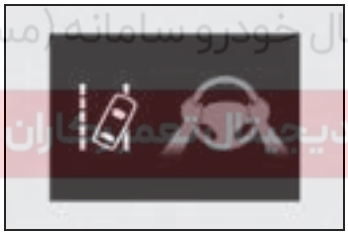
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- If the edge of the course* is not clear or straight, the lane departure alert function may not operate.
- Vehicle with BSM: It may not be possible for the system to determine if there is a danger of a collision with a vehicle in an adjacent lane.
- Do not attempt to test the operation of the lane departure alert function.

*: Boundary between asphalt and the side of the road, such as grass, soil, or a curb

Hands off steering wheel warning

In the following situations, a warning message urging the driver to hold the steering wheel and the symbol shown in the illustration are displayed on the multi-information display to warn the driver. The warning stops when the system determines that the driver holds the steering wheel. Always keep your hands on the steering wheel when using this system, regardless of warnings.



- When the system determines the driver is not holding the steering wheel while the lane centering function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel, the buzzer sounds, the driver is warned and the function is temporarily canceled. This warning also operates in the same way when the driver continuously operates the steering wheel only a small amount. The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

- When the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from the lane while driving around a curve while the lane centering function is operating.

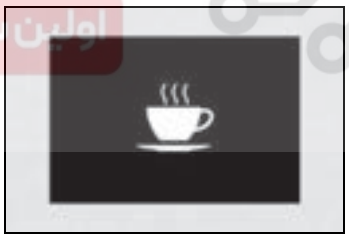
Depending on the vehicle condition and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

- When the system determines that the driver is driving without holding the steering wheel while the steering wheel assist of the steering assist function is operating.

If the driver continues to keep their hands off of the steering wheel and the steering wheel assist is operating, the buzzer sounds and the driver is warned. Each time the buzzer sounds, the continuing time of the buzzer becomes longer.
The buzzer also sounds even if the alert type is set to .

Vehicle sway warning function

When the system determines that the vehicle is swaying while the vehicle sway warning function is operating, a buzzer sounds and a warning message urging the driver to rest and the symbol shown in the illustration are simultaneously displayed on the multi-information display.



Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, the warning may not operate.

Warning message

If the following warning message is displayed on the multi-information display and the LTA indicator illuminates in orange, follow the appropriate troubleshooting procedure. Also, if a different warning message is displayed, follow the instructions displayed on the screen.

- "LTA Malfunction Visit Your Dealer"

The system may not be operating properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● "LTA Unavailable"

The system is temporarily canceled due to a malfunction in a sensor other than the front camera. Turn the LTA system off, wait for a little while, and then turn the LTA system back on.

● "LTA Unavailable at Current Speed"

The function cannot be used as the vehicle speed exceeds the LTA operation range. Drive slower.

■ **Customization**

Function settings can be changed.
(Customizable features: →P.462)

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*

*: If equipped

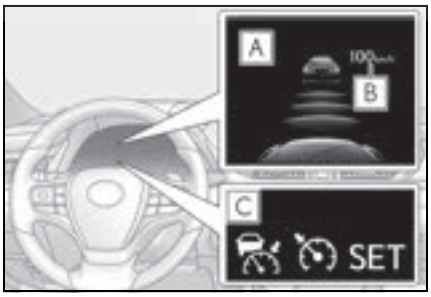
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates, decelerates and stops to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.238)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.242)

System Components

■ Meter display



A Multi-information display

B Set speed

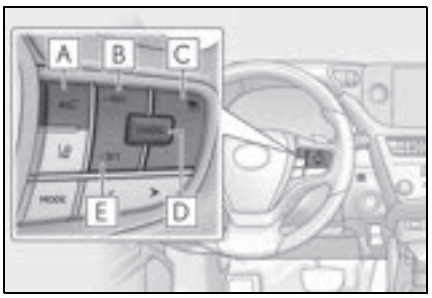
C Indicators

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Operation switches



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cruise control main switch

D Cancel switch

E "-SET" switch

WARNING

■ **Before using dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range**

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided.
  Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.244
  - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.245
- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range setting to off, using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ **Cautions regarding the driving assist systems**

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.
- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle
  The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in any of the following situations. Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

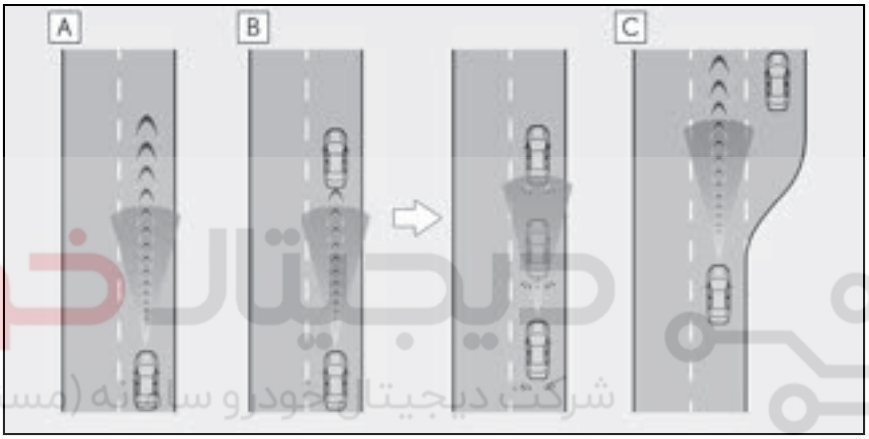
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising
When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising
When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the vehicle ahead of you stops, your vehicle will also stop (vehicle is stopped by system control). After the vehicle ahead starts off, pressing the "+RES" switch or depressing the accelerator pedal (start-off operation) will resume follow-up cruising. If the start-off operation is not performed, system control continues to keep your vehicle stopped.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to an overtaking lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

The system's identification of what is an overtaking lane may be determined solely based on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left side driver position versus right side driver position.) If the vehicle is driven to a region where the overtaking lane is on a different side from where the vehicle is normally driven, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated in the opposite direction to the overtaking lane (e.g., if the driver normally operates the vehicle in a region where the overtaking lane is to the right but then drives to a region where the overtaking lane is to the left, the vehicle may accelerate when the right turn signal is activated).

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

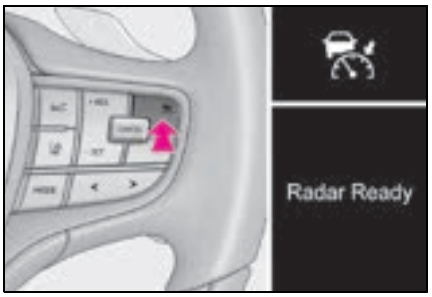
The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.242)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

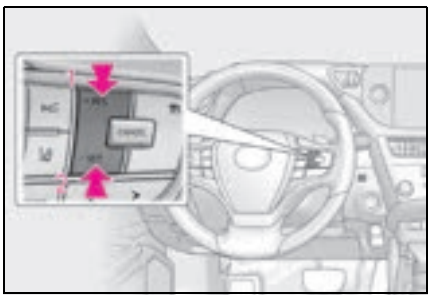
● Adjusting the set speed by the switch

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



1 Increases the speed (Except when the vehicle has been stopped by system control in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.242), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

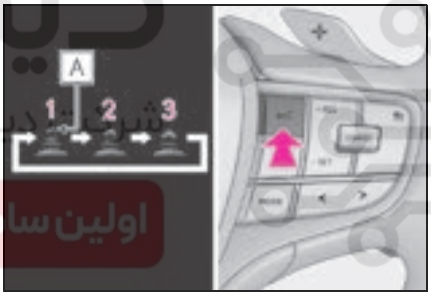
● Increasing the set speed by the accelerator pedal

1 Accelerate with accelerator pedal operation to the desired vehicle speed

2 Press the "-SET" switch

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:



1 Long

2 Medium

3 Short

If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

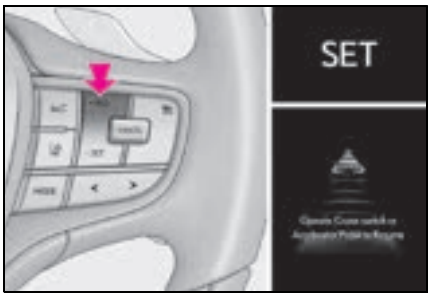
(50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed. When the vehicle is stopped by system control, the vehicle stops at a certain vehicle-to-vehicle distance depending on the situation.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

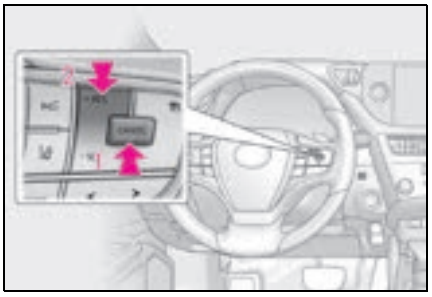
Resuming follow-up cruising when the vehicle has been stopped by system control (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

After the vehicle ahead of you starts off, press the "+RES" switch.

Your vehicle will also resume follow-up cruising if the accelerator pedal is depressed after the vehicle ahead of you starts off.



Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.
(When the vehicle has been stopped by system control, depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the setting.)

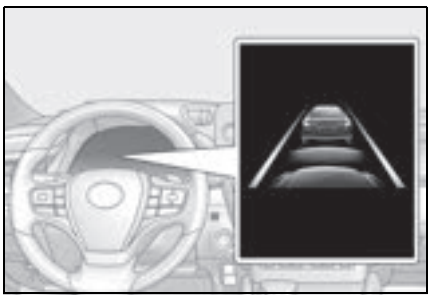
2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



■ **Warnings may not occur when**

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Curve speed reduction function

While driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, this function will reduce the vehicle speed, if it is determined to be necessary.

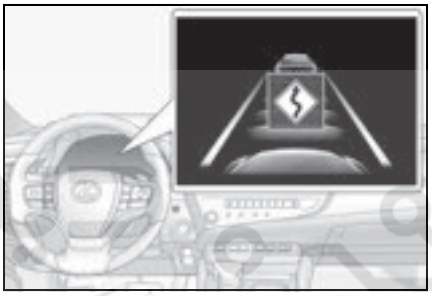
■ **Function operation**

When the steering wheel begins to be turned, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the steering wheel is returned to the center position, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode set speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.

■ **Operation display**



Displayed when the vehicle speed is being reduced.

When the vehicle speed reduction ends, the display will disappear.

■ **Changing the settings of the curve speed reduction function**

The curve speed reduction function can be enabled/disabled and the vehicle speed reduction strength can be adjusted on (→P.105) of the multi-information display.

The setting will change each time the "OK" meter control switch is pressed.

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch with the cruise control off.



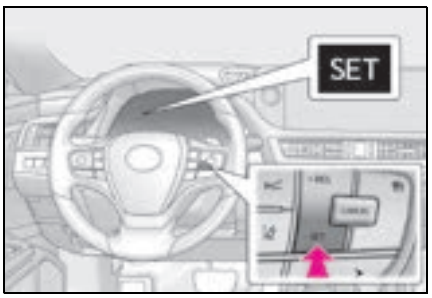
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.239

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.241



Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- The desired set speed can be set when the vehicle speed is approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more. (However, when the vehicle speed is set while driving at below approximately 30 km/h [20 mph], the set speed will be set to approximately 30 km/h [20 mph].)

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

When the vehicle stops while follow-up cruising

- Pressing the "+RES" switch while the vehicle ahead stops will resume follow-up cruising if the vehicle ahead starts off within approximately 3 seconds after the switch is pressed.
- If the vehicle ahead starts off within 3 seconds after your vehicle stops, follow-up cruising will be resumed.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The parking brake is operated.
- The vehicle is stopped by system control on a steep incline.
- The following are detected when the vehicle has been stopped by system control:
  - The driver is not wearing a seat belt.
  - The driver's door is opened.
  - The vehicle has been stopped for about 3 minutes

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The parking brake is operated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve.
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed.
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve.

Brake operation

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.213, 421)

When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

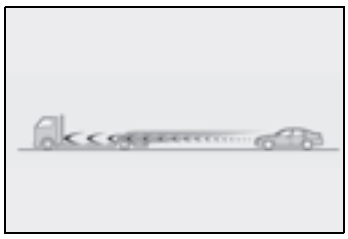
In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.241) may not be activated.

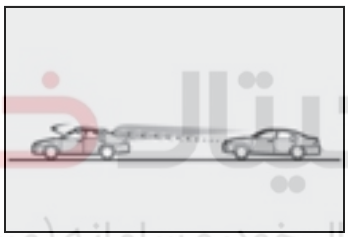
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)



- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance

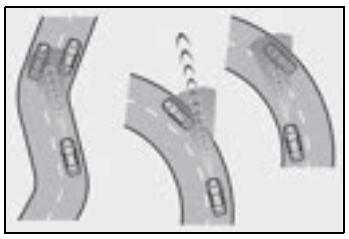


■ Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly

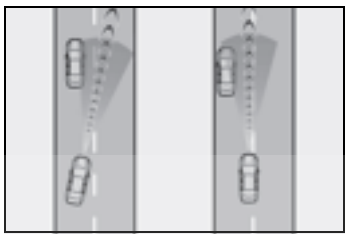
In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.

As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

■ Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a curve on an incline/decline
- When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of the curve
- When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve
- When the steering wheel is suddenly operated

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Dynamic radar cruise control*

*: If equipped

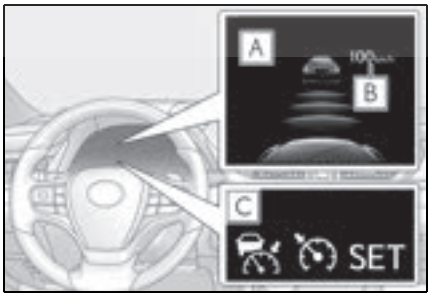
In vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle automatically accelerates and decelerates to match the speed changes of the preceding vehicle even if the accelerator pedal is not depressed. In constant speed control mode, the vehicle runs at a fixed speed.

Use the dynamic radar cruise control on freeways and highways.

- Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode (→P.248)
- Constant speed control mode (→P.252)

System Components

Meter display

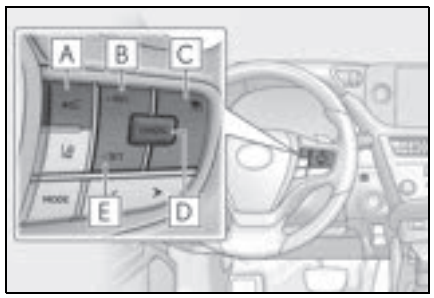


A Multi-information display

B Set speed

C Indicators

Operation switches



A Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch

B "+RES" switch

C Cruise control main switch

D Cancel switch

E "-SET" switch

WARNING

Before using dynamic radar cruise control

- Driving safely is the sole responsibility of the driver. Do not rely solely on the system, and drive safely by always paying careful attention to your surroundings.
- The dynamic radar cruise control provides driving assistance to reduce the driver's burden. However, there are limitations to the assistance provided. Read the following conditions carefully. Do not overly rely on this system and always drive carefully.
  - When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead: →P.254
  - Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly: →P.255

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Set the speed appropriately depending on the speed limit, traffic flow, road conditions, weather conditions, etc. The driver is responsible for checking the set speed.
- Even when the system is functioning normally, the condition of the preceding vehicle as detected by the system may differ from the condition observed by the driver. Therefore, the driver must always remain alert, assess the danger of each situation and drive safely. Relying solely on this system or assuming the system ensures safety while driving can lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Switch the dynamic radar cruise control setting to off, using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ Cautions regarding the driving assist systems

Observe the following precautions, as there are limitations to the assistance provided by the system.
Failure to do so may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Assisting the driver to measure following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control is only intended to help the driver in determining the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead. It is not a mechanism that allows careless or inattentive driving, and it is not a system that can assist the driver in low-visibility conditions. It is still necessary for driver to pay close attention to the vehicle's surroundings.

- Assisting the driver to judge proper following distance

The dynamic radar cruise control determines whether the following distance between the driver's own vehicle and a designated vehicle traveling ahead is within a set range. It is not capable of making any other type of judgement. Therefore, it is absolutely necessary for the driver to remain vigilant and to determine whether or not there is a possibility of danger in any given situation.

- Assisting the driver to operate the vehicle

The dynamic radar cruise control does not include functions which will prevent or avoid collisions with vehicles ahead of your vehicle. Therefore, if there is ever any possibility of danger, the driver must take immediate and direct control of the vehicle and act appropriately in order to ensure the safety of all involved.

■ Situations unsuitable for dynamic radar cruise control

Do not use dynamic radar cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in inappropriate speed control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Roads where there are pedestrians, cyclists, etc.
- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills, or where there are sudden changes between sharp up and down gradients
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

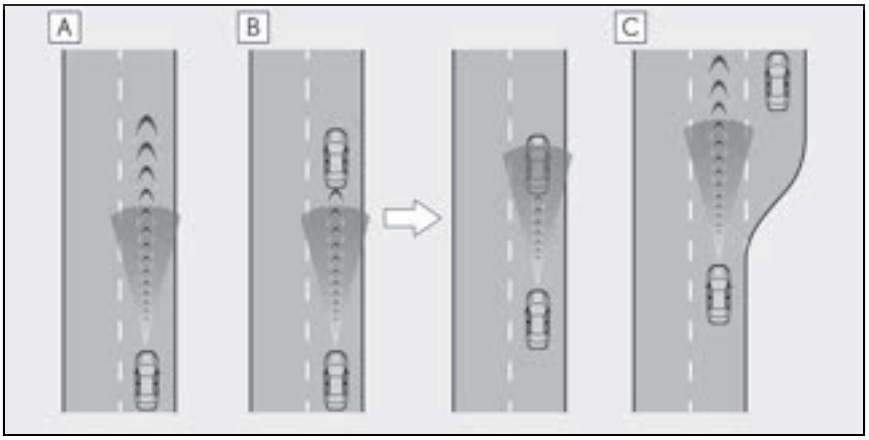
WARNING

- At entrances to freeways and highways
- When weather conditions are bad enough that they may prevent the sensors from detecting correctly (fog, snow, sandstorm, heavy rain, etc.)
- When there is rain, snow, etc. on the front surface of the radar or front camera
- In traffic conditions that require frequent repeated acceleration and deceleration
- During emergency towing
- When an approach warning buzzer is heard often

Driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

This mode employs a radar to detect the presence of vehicles up to approximately 100 m (328 ft.) ahead, determines the current vehicle-to-vehicle following distance, and operates to maintain a suitable following distance from the vehicle ahead. The desired vehicle-to-vehicle distance can also be set by operating the vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch.

When driving on downhill slopes, the vehicle-to-vehicle distance may become shorter.



A Example of constant speed cruising

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

When there are no vehicles ahead

The vehicle travels at the speed set by the driver.

B Example of deceleration cruising and follow-up cruising

When a preceding vehicle driving slower than the set speed appears

When a vehicle is detected running ahead of you, the system automatically decelerates your vehicle. When a greater reduction in vehicle speed is necessary, the system applies the brakes (the stop lights will come on at this time). The system will respond to changes in the speed of the vehicle ahead in order to maintain the vehicle-to-vehicle distance set by the driver. Approach warning warns you when the system cannot decelerate sufficiently to prevent your vehicle from closing in on the vehicle ahead.

When the turn signal lever is operated and your vehicle moves to an overtaking lane while driving at 80 km/h (50 mph) or more, the vehicle will accelerate to help to overtake a passing vehicle.

The system's identification of what is an overtaking lane may be determined solely based on the location of the steering wheel in the vehicle (left side driver position versus right side driver position.) If the vehicle is driven to a region where the overtaking lane is on a different side from where the vehicle is normally driven, the vehicle may accelerate when the turn signal lever is operated in the opposite direction to the overtaking lane (e.g., if the driver normally operates the vehicle in a region where the overtaking lane is to the right but then drives to a region where the overtaking lane is to the left, the vehicle may accelerate when the right turn signal is activated).

C Example of acceleration

When there are no longer any preceding vehicles driving slower than the set speed

The system accelerates until the set speed is reached. The system then returns to constant speed cruising.

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

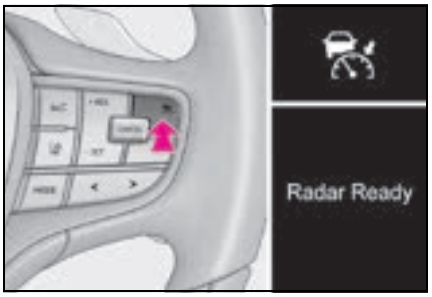
Setting the vehicle speed (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.

If the cruise control main switch is pressed and held for 1.5 seconds or more, the system turns on in constant speed control mode. (→P.252)



2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

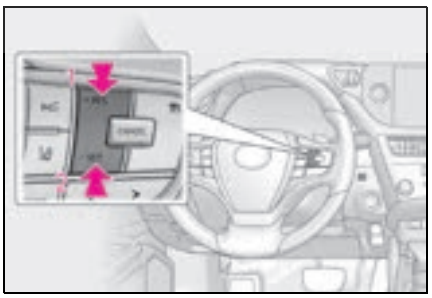
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.



Adjusting the set speed

● Adjusting the set speed by the switch

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is displayed.



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold the switch to change the speed, and release when the desired speed is reached.

In the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: Increases or decreases in 5 km/h (3.1 mph)*1 or 5 mph (8 km/h)*2 increments for as long as the switch is held

In the constant speed control mode (→P.252), the set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

Fine adjustment: By 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed

Large adjustment: The speed will continue to change while the switch is held.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

● Increasing the set speed by the accelerator pedal

1 Accelerate with accelerator pedal operation to the desired vehicle speed

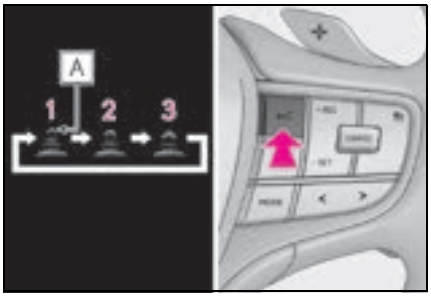
2 Press the "-SET" switch

Changing the vehicle-to-vehicle distance (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Pressing the switch changes the vehicle-to-vehicle distance as follows:

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



1 Long
2 Medium
3 Short

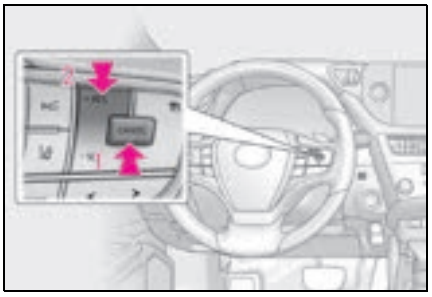
If a vehicle is running ahead of you, the preceding vehicle mark A will also be displayed.

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance settings (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

Select a distance from the table below. Note that the distances shown correspond to a vehicle speed of 80 km/h (50 mph). Vehicle-to-vehicle distance increases/decreases in accordance with vehicle speed.

Distance options	Vehicle-to-vehicle distance
Long	Approximately 50 m (160 ft.)
Medium	Approximately 40 m (130 ft.)
Short	Approximately 30 m (100 ft.)

Canceling and resuming the speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the speed control.

The speed control is also canceled when the brake pedal is depressed.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the cruise control and returns vehicle speed to the set speed.

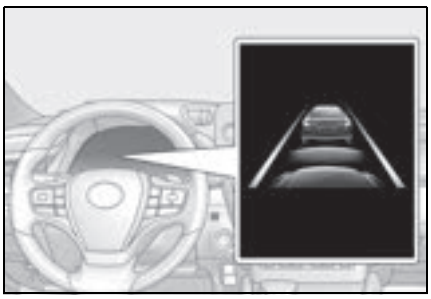
However, cruise control does not resume when the vehicle speed is approximately 25 km/h (16 mph) or less.

Approach warning (vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode)

When your vehicle is too close to a vehicle ahead, and sufficient automatic deceleration via the cruise control is not possible, the display will flash and the buzzer will sound to alert the driver. An example of this would be if another driver cuts in front of you while you are following a vehicle. Depress the brake pedal to ensure an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



■ **Warnings may not occur when**

In the following instances, warnings may not occur even when the vehicle-to-vehicle distance is small.

- When the speed of the preceding vehicle matches or exceeds your vehicle speed
- When the preceding vehicle is traveling at an extremely slow speed
- Immediately after the cruise control speed was set
- When depressing the accelerator pedal

Curve speed reduction function

While driving in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, this function will reduce the vehicle speed, if it is determined to be necessary.

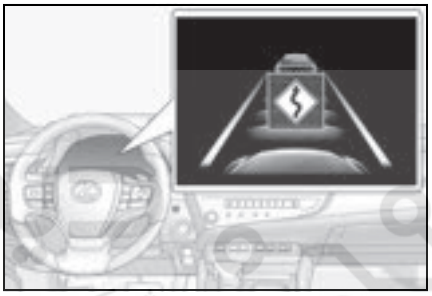
■ **Function operation**

When the steering wheel begins to be turned, the vehicle speed will begin being reduced. When the steering wheel is returned to the center position, the vehicle speed reduction will end.

Depending on the situation, the vehicle speed will then return to the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode set speed.

In situations where vehicle-to-vehicle distance control needs to operate, such as when a preceding vehicle cuts in front of your vehicle, the curve speed reduction function will be canceled.

■ **Operation display**



Displayed when the vehicle speed is being reduced.

When the vehicle speed reduction ends, the display will disappear.

■ **Changing the settings of the curve speed reduction function**

The curve speed reduction function can be enabled/disabled and the vehicle speed reduction strength can be adjusted on (→P.105) of the multi-information display.

The setting will change each time the "OK" meter control switch is pressed.

Selecting constant speed control mode

When constant speed control mode is selected, your vehicle will maintain a

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

set speed without controlling the vehicle-to-vehicle distance. Select this mode only when vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode does not function correctly due to a dirty radar, etc.

1 With the cruise control off, press and hold the cruise control main switch for 1.5 seconds or more.

Immediately after the switch is pressed, the dynamic radar cruise control indicator will come on. Afterwards, it switches to the cruise control indicator.

Switching to constant speed control mode is only possible when operating the switch with the cruise control off.



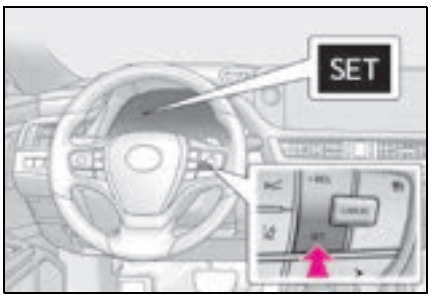
2 Accelerate or decelerate, with accelerator pedal operation, to the desired vehicle speed (at or above approximately 30 km/h [20 mph]) and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.

The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

Adjusting the speed setting: →P.250

Canceling and resuming the speed setting: →P.251



Dynamic radar cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D.
- Depending on the control mode, this item can be set at the following speeds.
  - Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more
  - Constant speed control mode: Approximately 30 km/h (20 mph) or more

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

The vehicle can accelerate by operating the accelerator pedal. After accelerating, the set speed resumes. However, during vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the vehicle speed may decrease below the set speed in order to maintain the distance to the preceding vehicle.

Automatic cancelation of vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode

Vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- The sensor cannot detect correctly because it is covered in some way.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)

- The parking brake is operated.

If vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Automatic cancelation of constant speed control mode

Constant speed control mode is automatically canceled in the following situations:

- Actual vehicle speed is more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the set vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed falls below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.
- When the brake control or output restriction control of a driving support system operates. (For example: Pre-Collision System, Drive-Start Control)
- The parking brake is operated.

If constant speed control mode is automatically canceled for any reasons other than the above, there may be a malfunction in the system. Contact your Lexus dealer.

Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a gentle curve
- When the accelerator pedal is being depressed
- When the vehicle is being driven around an extremely short curve

Brake operation

A brake operation sound may be heard and the brake pedal response may change, but these are not malfunctions.

Warning messages and buzzers for dynamic radar cruise control

Warning messages and buzzers are used to indicate a system malfunction or to inform the driver of the need for caution while driving. If a warning message is shown on the multi-information display, read the message and follow the instructions. (→P.213, 421)

When the sensor may not be correctly detecting the vehicle ahead

In the case of the following and depending on the conditions, operate the brake pedal when deceleration of the system is insufficient or operate the accelerator pedal when acceleration is required.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect these types of vehicles, the approach warning (→P.251) may not be activated.

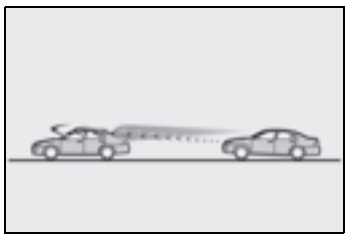
- Vehicles that cut in suddenly
- Vehicles traveling at low speeds
- Vehicles that are not moving in the same lane
- Vehicles with small rear ends (trailers with no load on board, etc.)



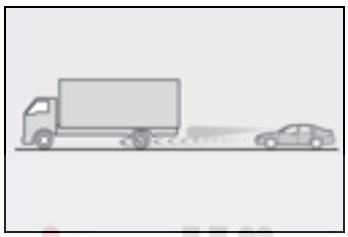
- Motorcycles traveling in the same lane
- When water or snow thrown up by the surrounding vehicles hinders the detecting of the sensor
- When your vehicle is pointing upwards (caused by a heavy load in the luggage compartment, etc.)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



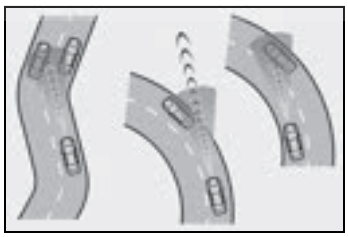
- Preceding vehicle has an extremely high ground clearance



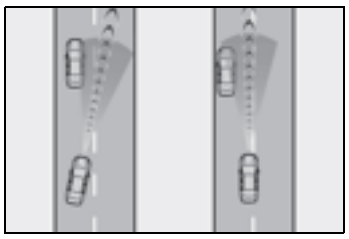
■ **Conditions under which the vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode may not function correctly**

In the case of the following conditions, operate the brake pedal (or accelerator pedal, depending on the situation) as necessary.
As the sensor may not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead, the system may not operate properly.

- When the road curves or when the lanes are narrow



- When steering wheel operation or your position in the lane is unstable



- When the vehicle ahead of you decelerates suddenly
- When driving on a road surrounded by a structure, such as in a tunnel or on a bridge
- While the vehicle speed is decreasing to the set speed after the vehicle accelerates by depressing the accelerator pedal

■ **Situations in which the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly**

In situations such as the following, the curve speed reduction function may not operate properly:

- When the vehicle is being driven around a curve on an incline/decline
- When the course of the vehicle differs from the shape of the curve
- When the vehicle speed is excessively high when entering a curve
- When the steering wheel is suddenly operated

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

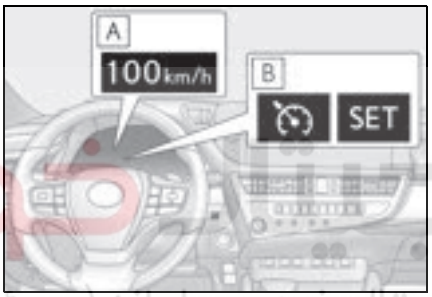
Cruise control*

*: If equipped

Use the cruise control to maintain a set speed without depressing the accelerator pedal.

System Components

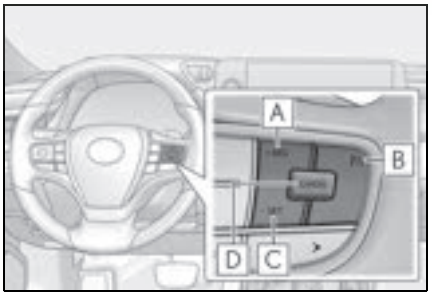
■ Meter display



A Set speed

B Indicators

■ Operation switches



A "+RES" switch

B Cruise control main switch

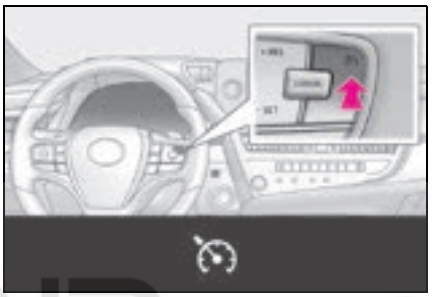
C "-SET" switch

D Cancel switch

Setting the vehicle speed

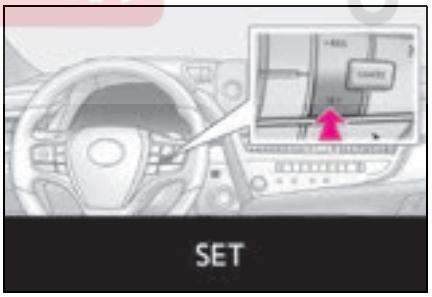
1 Press the cruise control main switch to activate the cruise control.

Cruise control indicator will come on. Press the switch again to deactivate the cruise control.



2 Accelerate or decelerate the vehicle to the desired speed, and press the "-SET" switch to set the speed.

Cruise control "SET" indicator will come on.
The vehicle speed at the moment the switch is released becomes the set speed.

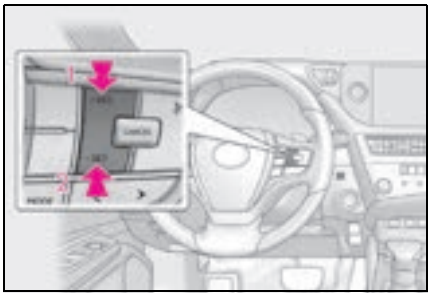


Adjusting the set speed

To change the set speed, press the "+RES" or "-SET" switch until the desired set speed is obtained.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



1 Increases the speed

2 Decreases the speed

Fine adjustment: Press the switch.

Large adjustment: Press and hold switch.

The set speed will be increased or decreased as follows:

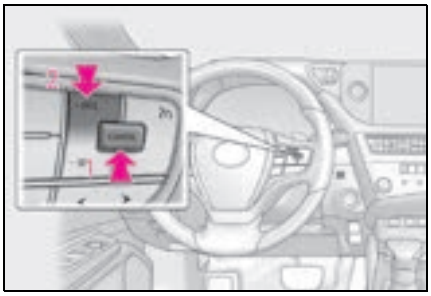
Fine adjustment: By approximately 1 km/h (0.6 mph)*1 or 1 mph (1.6 km/h)*2 each time the switch is pressed.

Large adjustment: The set speed can be increased or decreased continually until the switch is released.

*1: When the set speed is shown in "km/h"

*2: When the set speed is shown in "MPH"

Canceling and resuming the constant speed control



1 Pressing the cancel switch cancels the constant speed control.

The speed setting is also canceled when the brakes are applied.

2 Pressing the "+RES" switch resumes the constant speed control.

Resuming is available when the vehicle speed is more than approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

Cruise control can be set when

- The shift lever is in D or range 4 or higher of S has been selected.
- Range 4 or higher of D has been selected by using the paddle shift.
- Vehicle speed is at or above approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).

Accelerating after setting the vehicle speed

- The vehicle can be accelerated normally. After acceleration, the set speed resumes.
- Even without canceling the cruise control, the set speed can be increased by first accelerating the vehicle to the desired speed and then pressing the "-SET" switch to set the new speed.

Automatic cruise control cancelation

Cruise control will stop maintaining the vehicle speed in any of the following situations.

- Actual vehicle speed falls more than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph) below the preset vehicle speed.
- Actual vehicle speed is below approximately 30 km/h (20 mph).
- VSC is activated.
- TRC is activated for a period of time.
- When the VSC or TRC system is turned off.

If the warning message for the cruise control is shown on the multi-information display

Press the cruise control main switch once to deactivate the system, and then press the switch again to reactivate the system.
If the cruise control speed cannot be set or

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

if the cruise control cancels immediately after being activated, there may be a malfunction in the cruise control system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ **To avoid operating the cruise control by mistake**

Switch the cruise control off using the cruise control main switch when not in use.

■ **Situations unsuitable for cruise control**

Do not use cruise control in any of the following situations.
Doing so may result in loss of control and could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- In heavy traffic
- On roads with sharp bends
- On winding roads
- On slippery roads, such as those covered with rain, ice or snow
- On steep downhills
  Vehicle speed may exceed the set speed when driving down a steep hill.
- During emergency towing

BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)*

*: If equipped

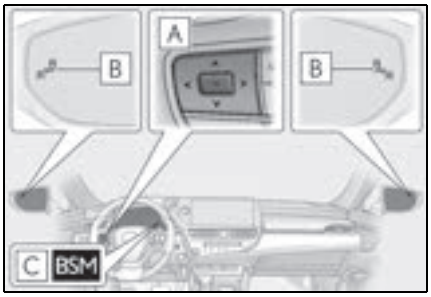
The Blind Spot Monitor is a system that uses rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper on the left and right side to assist the driver in confirming safety when changing lanes.

WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive safely, taking care to observe your surroundings. The Blind Spot Monitor is a supplementary function which alerts the driver that a vehicle is in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or is approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot. Do not overly rely on the Blind Spot Monitor. As the function cannot judge if it is safe to change lanes, over reliance could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury. As the system may not function correctly under certain conditions, the driver's own visual confirmation of safety is necessary.

System components



A Meter control switches

Turn the Blind Spot Monitor on/off.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle is detected in a blind spot of the outside rear view mirrors or approaching rapidly from behind into a blind spot, the outside rear view mirror indicator on the detected side will illuminate. If the turn signal lever is operated toward the detected side, the outside rear view mirror indicator will flash.

C BSM indicator

When the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on, the indicator comes on.

Turning the Blind Spot Monitor on/off

1 Press or of the meter control switches, select .

2 Press or of the meter control switches, select , and press "OK".

Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

When "Blind Spot Monitor Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.259) Remove the ice, snow, mud, etc., attached to the rear bumper around the sensors to return the function to normal. Additionally, the sensors may not operate normally when driving in extremely hot or cold environments.

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features: →P.462)

WARNING

To ensure the system can operate properly

Blind Spot Monitor sensors are installed behind the left and right sides of the rear bumper respectively. Observe the following to ensure the Blind Spot Monitor can function correctly.

- Keep the sensors and the surrounding areas on the rear bumper clean at all times.
  If a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper is dirty or covered with snow, the Blind Spot Monitor may not operate and a warning message (→P.259) will be displayed. In this situation, clear off the dirt or snow and drive the vehicle with the operation conditions of the Blind Spot Monitor (→P.261) satisfied for approximately 10 minutes. If the warning message does not disappear, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.



- Do not subject a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper to a strong impact.
  If a sensor is moved even slightly off position, the system may malfunction and vehicles may not be detected correctly.
  In the following situations, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
  - A sensor or its surrounding area is subject to a strong impact.
  - If the surrounding area of a sensor is scratched or dented, or part of them has become disconnected.

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

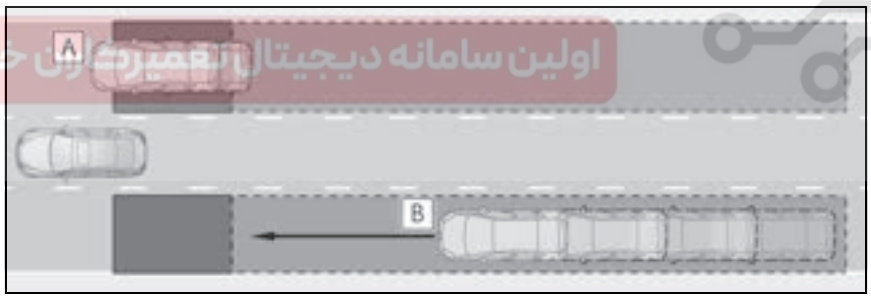
WARNING

- Do not disassemble the sensor.
- Do not attach accessories, stickers (including transparent stickers), aluminum tape, etc. to a sensor or its surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- Do not modify the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- If a sensor or the rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not paint the rear bumper any color other than an official Lexus color.

Blind Spot Monitor operation

■ Vehicles that can be detected by the Blind Spot Monitor

The Blind Spot Monitor uses rear side radar sensors to detect the following vehicles traveling in adjacent lanes and advises the driver of the presence of such vehicles via the indicators on the outside rear view mirrors.



A Vehicles that are traveling in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

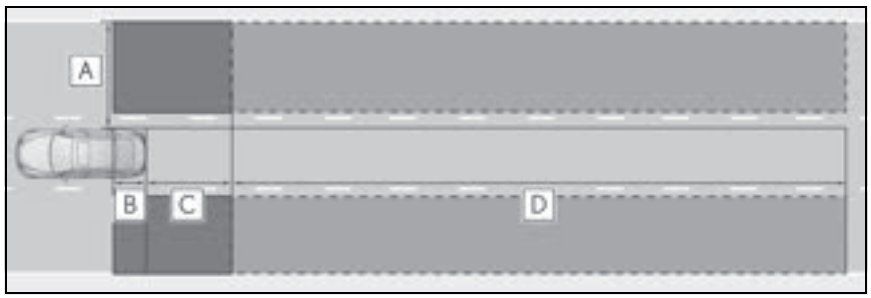
B Vehicles that are approaching rapidly from behind in areas that are not visible using the outside rear view mirrors (the blind spots)

■ The Blind Spot Monitor detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



The range of each detection area is:

A Approximately 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) to 3.5 m (11.5 ft.) from either side of the vehicle*1

B Approximately 1 m (3.3 ft.) forward of the rear bumper

C Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) from the rear bumper

D Approximately 3 m (9.8 ft.) to 60 m (197 ft.) from the rear bumper*2

*1: The area between the side of the vehicle and 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) from the side of the vehicle cannot be detected.

*2: The greater the difference in speed between your vehicle and the detected vehicle is, the farther away the vehicle will be detected, causing the outside rear view mirror indicator to illuminate or flash.

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when

The Blind Spot Monitor is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The Blind Spot Monitor is on.
- The shift lever is in a position other than R.
- The vehicle speed is greater than approximately 16 km/h (10 mph).

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle when

The Blind Spot Monitor will detect a vehicle present in the detection area in the following situations:

- A vehicle in an adjacent lane overtakes your vehicle.
- You overtake a vehicle in adjacent lane slowly.
- Another vehicle enters the detection area when it changes lanes.

Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle

The Blind Spot Monitor is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles traveling in the opposite direction
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Following vehicles that are in the same lane*
- Vehicles traveling 2 lanes away from your vehicle*
- Vehicles which are being overtaken rapidly by your vehicle*

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Conditions under which the system may not function correctly**

● The Blind Spot Monitor may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc. is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When there is a significant difference in speed between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- When the difference in speed between your vehicle and another vehicle is changing
- When a vehicle enters a detection area traveling at about the same speed as your vehicle
- As your vehicle starts from a stop, a vehicle remains in the detection area
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When vehicle lanes are wide, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and the vehicle in an adjacent lane is far away from your vehicle
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) or towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area
- Immediately after the Blind Spot Monitor is turned on

● Instances of the Blind Spot Monitor unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area
- When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc. that enters the detection area is short
- When driving up and down consecutive steep inclines, such as hills, dips in the road, etc.
- When vehicle lanes are narrow, or when driving on the edge of a lane, and a vehicle traveling in a lane other than the adjacent lanes enters the detection area
- When driving on roads with sharp bends, consecutive curves, or uneven surfaces
- When the tires are slipping or spinning
- When the distance between your vehicle and a following vehicle is short
- When an accessory (such as a bicycle carrier) or towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

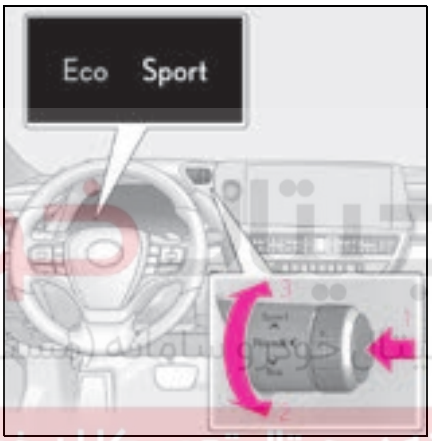
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Driving Mode Select switch

The driving modes can be selected to suit driving condition.

Selecting the driving mode

▶ Vehicles without Adaptive Variable Suspension system



1 Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance.

Suitable for city driving.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode while in Eco drive mode or sport mode.

2 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

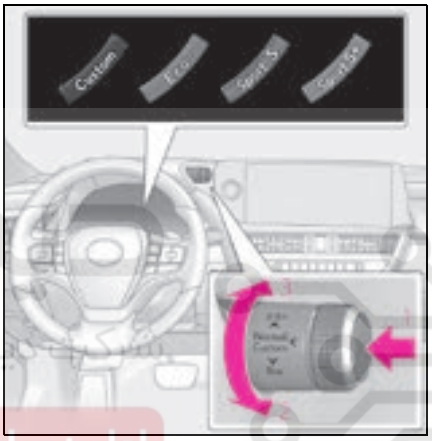
When not in Eco drive mode, if the Driving Mode Select switch is turned toward you, the Eco drive mode indicator comes on.

3 Sport mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in sport mode, if the Driving Mode Select switch is turned away from you, the Sport mode indicator comes on.

▶ Vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension System



1 Normal mode/Custom mode

Normal mode and custom mode are selected by pressing the Driving Mode Select switch. Each time the switch is pressed, the driving mode changes between normal mode and custom mode.

When custom mode is selected, the custom mode indicator comes on.

Press the switch to change the driving mode to normal mode when not in normal mode.

• Normal mode

Provides an optimal balance of fuel economy, quietness, and dynamic performance. Suitable for city driving.

• Custom mode

Allows you to drive with the powertrain,

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

chassis and air conditioning system functions set to your preferred settings. Custom mode settings can only be changed on the drive mode customization display of the Center Display. (→P.462)

2 Eco drive mode

Helps the driver accelerate in an eco-friendly manner and improve fuel economy through moderate throttle characteristics and by controlling the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling).

When not in Eco drive mode, if the Driving Mode Select switch is turned toward you, the Eco drive mode indicator comes on.

3 Sport mode

- Sport S mode

Controls the transmission and engine to provide quick, powerful acceleration. This mode is suitable for when agile driving response is desired, such as when driving on roads with many curves.

When not in Sport S mode, if the Driving Mode Select switch is turned away from you, the Sport S mode indicator comes on.

- Sport S+ mode

Helps to ensure steering performance and driving stability by simultaneously controlling the steering and suspension in addition to the transmission and engine. Suitable for sportier driving.

When in Sport S mode, if the Driving Mode Select switch is turned away from you, the Sport S+ mode indicator comes on.

■ Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

Eco drive mode controls the heating/cooling operations and fan speed of the air conditioning system to enhance fuel efficiency. To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.318)
- Adjust the fan speed (→P.314)
- Turn off Eco drive mode

■ Automatic deactivation of sport mode and custom mode (if equipped)

If the engine switch is turned off after driving in sport mode or custom mode, the drive mode will be changed to normal mode.

■ Driving mode pop-up display

When the driving mode is changed, the selected driving mode will be temporarily displayed on the Center Display. (Except for Normal mode)

For Custom mode, select "Settings" on the display to customize the driving mode.

■ Customization (vehicles with Adaptive Variable Suspension System)

Settings (e.g. custom mode) can be changed.

(Customizable features: →P.462)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Stop & Start system*

*: If equipped

The Stop & Start system stops and restarts the engine according to the brake pedal or shift lever operation when the vehicle is stopped.

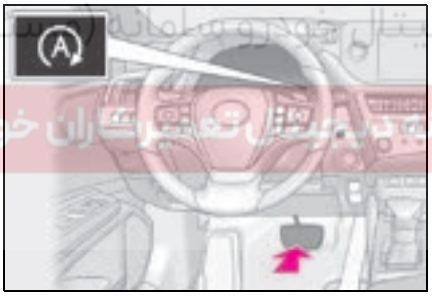
Stop & Start system operation

■ **When the brake hold system is not operating with the shift lever in D**

▶ Stopping the engine

While driving with the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.



▶ Restarting the engine

Release the brake pedal.

The Stop & Start indicator will go off.

■ **When the brake hold system is operating with the shift lever in D**

The Stop & Start system is operational when the brake hold system is operating. (→P.187)

▶ Stopping the engine

While driving with the shift lever in D, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.

While the brake hold system is operating, the brake hold operated indicator will come on. If the brake pedal is released, the engine will remain stopped by the Stop & Start system.



▶ Restarting the engine

Depress the accelerator pedal. (Releasing the brake pedal will not restart the engine.)

The Stop & Start indicator and brake hold operated indicator will go off.

■ **When the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range is operating with the shift lever in D (if equipped)**

The Stop & Start system is operational during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range. (→P.238)

▶ Stopping the engine

While driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode, the engine will stop automatically if the vehicle comes to a complete stop through a controlled stop. (The

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

engine will stop automatically even though the brake pedal is not depressed.)

The Stop & Start indicator will come on.



▶ Restarting the engine

When the preceding vehicle starts off, the engine will restart automatically.

The Stop & Start indicator will go off.

Operating conditions

● The Stop & Start system is operational when all of the following conditions are met:

- The brake pedal is being depressed firmly. (Except when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])
- When the steering wheel is not being operated
- The engine is adequately warmed up.
- The battery is sufficiently charged.
- The outside temperature is -5°C (23°F) or higher.
- The shift lever is in D.
- The windshield defogger is off.
- The hood is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The accelerator pedal is not being depressed.

● In the following situations the engine may not be stopped by the Stop & Start system. This is not a malfunction of the Stop & Start system.

- The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.
- The battery is undergoing a periodic recharge.
- The battery is not sufficiently charged, such as if the vehicle has been parked for a long time and the battery charge has decreased, the electric load is large, the battery fluid temperature is excessively low or the battery has deteriorated.
- The brake booster vacuum is low.
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The steering wheel is being operated.
- Due to traffic or other circumstances the vehicle is stopped repeatedly.
- The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.
- Engine coolant temperature or transmission fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- The battery fluid temperature is extremely low or high.
- For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected.
- Sport mode is selected.

● In the following situations, the engine will restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)

- The air conditioning system is turned on.
- The windshield defogger is turned on.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- The shift lever is shifted to a position other than D.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The driver's door is opened.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed.
- The vehicle starts to roll on an incline.

● In the following situations, the engine may restart automatically if the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system. (To enable stopping of the engine by the Stop & Start system, drive the vehicle.)

- The brake pedal is pumped or strongly depressed.
- The air conditioning system is being used.
- The battery is not sufficiently charged.
- Turn to the dynamic radar cruise control

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

with full-speed range (if equipped) while the brake hold system is operating

■ **Stop & Start system operation when the brake hold system is operating**

- If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system when the brake hold system is operating, the brake hold system will continue to apply the brakes.
- If the operation conditions of the brake hold system are no longer met (→P.187) while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the brake hold system will stop operating.

At this time, the parking brake will be applied automatically and the engine will be restarted automatically.

■ **Stop & Start system operation during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)**

If the engine is restarted automatically by the Stop & Start system during a controlled stop by the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range, the controlled stop will continue. (Resuming follow-up cruising after a controlled stop:→P.241)

■ **Hood**

- If the hood is opened while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.171)
- Even if the hood is closed after the engine is started with the hood open, the Stop & Start system will not operate. Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

■ **Hill-start assist control**

- On a steep uphill grade, the vehicle may roll backward after hill-start assist control is released. In this situation, apply the parking brake and operate the brake pedal when putting the vehicle in motion.
- This system operates on flat surfaces as well as steep grades.
- When the engine is stopped due to Stop & Start system operation, the force required to depress the brake pedal may change, but this is not a malfunction.

■ **When to use the Stop & Start system**

- When stopping the vehicle for a longer period of time, turn the engine switch off and stop the engine completely.
- When the system does not operate, is canceled, or is malfunctioning, warning messages and a warning buzzer are used to inform the driver. (→P.268)
- If the engine switch is pressed when the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, the engine will stall and will not be able to be restarted by the automatic engine start function. In this case, restart the engine using the normal engine starting procedure. (→P.171)
- When the engine is restarted by the Stop & Start system, the power outlet may be temporarily unusable, but this is not a malfunction.
- Installation and removal of electrical components and wireless devices may affect the Stop & Start system. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

■ **If the windshield is fogged up while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

Turn the windshield defogger on. (The engine will start due to the automatic engine start function.) →P.314
If the windshield fogs up frequently, press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the system.

■ **If an odor comes from the air conditioning system while the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system**

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to deactivate the Stop & Start system.

■ **Air conditioning system operation while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system**

- If the air conditioning system is being used in automatic mode, the fan speed

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

may be reduced or the fan may be stopped while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system in order to reduce changes in the cabin temperature.

- To ensure air conditioning system performance when the vehicle is stopped, disable the Stop & Start system by pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch.

Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on

The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is on can be changed by performing the following operation. (The length of time the Stop & Start system will operate when the air conditioning system is off cannot be changed.)

Settings using the multi-information display

(→P.462).

The Stop & Start system protection function

- When the volume of the audio system is excessively high, sound output from the audio system may suddenly be cut off in order to reduce battery consumption. To prevent the audio system from being cut off, keep the volume of audio system at a moderate level.
  If the audio system has been cut off, turn the engine switch off, wait for 3 seconds or more and then turn it to ACCESSORY mode or IGNITION ON mode to re-enable the audio system.
- The audio system may not be activated if the battery terminals are disconnected and then reconnected. If this occurs, turn the engine switch off and then repeat the following operation twice to activate the audio system normally.
  • Turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode and then to off.

Replacing the battery

→P.443

Multi-information display messages

In the following situations, and a message may be displayed on the multi-information display.

- When the engine cannot be stopped by the Stop & Start system

"Press Brake More to Activate"

• The brake pedal is not depressed enough.

→ If the brake pedal is depressed further, the system will operate.

"For Climate Control"

• The air conditioning system is being used when the ambient temperature is high or low.

→ If the difference between the set temperature and cabin temperature is small, the system will be enabled.

• The windshield defogger is ON.

"Battery Charging"

• The battery charge amount may be low.

→ Engine stop is temporarily prohibited to prioritize charging of the battery, but if the engine is operated for a short while, engine stop is allowed.

• A refresh charge may be occurring

→ After a refresh charge for up to an hour completes, the system can be operated.

• Continuously displayed for a long term

→ The battery may be deteriorated. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.

"Preparing to Operate"

• The vehicle is being driven in a high altitude area.

• The brake booster vacuum is low.

→ When the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level, the system will be enabled.

"Stop & Start Unavailable"

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

• The Stop & Start system is temporarily disabled.

→ Operate the engine for a short while.

• The engine may have been started with the hood open.

→ Close the hood, turn the engine switch off, wait for 30 seconds or more, and then start the engine.

"Non-Dedicated Battery"

• A non-dedicated battery for the Stop & Start system may have been installed.

→ The Stop & Start system does not operate. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

● When the engine automatically restarts while stopped by the Stop & Start system

"For Climate Control"

• The air conditioning system has been turned on or is being used.

• The windshield defogger has been turned on.

"Preparing to Operate"

• The brake pedal has been depressed further or pumped.

→ The system will be enabled after the engine runs and the brake booster vacuum reaches a predetermined level.

"Battery Charging"

• The battery charge amount may be low.

→ The engine is restarted to prioritize battery charging. Operating the engine for a short while allows the system to recover.

■ If "Stop & Start System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed on the multi-information display

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If the Stop & Start cancel indicator continues to flash

The system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

⚠ WARNING

■ When the Stop & Start system is operating

● Depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on). (Except when the brake hold system is operating or when the vehicle comes to a controlled stop while driving with the dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range in vehicle-to-vehicle distance control mode [if equipped])

● Do not allow anyone to leave the vehicle while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (while the Stop & Start indicator is on).
An accident may occur due to the automatic engine start function.

● Ensure that the engine is not stopped by the Stop & Start system while the vehicle is in a poorly ventilated area.
The engine may restart due to the automatic engine start function, causing exhaust gases to collect and enter the vehicle, possibly resulting in death or a serious health hazard.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To ensure the system operates correctly

If any of the following situations occur, the Stop & Start system may not operate correctly. Have your vehicle checked by your Lexus dealer.

● While the driver's seat belt is fastened, the driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light flashes.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

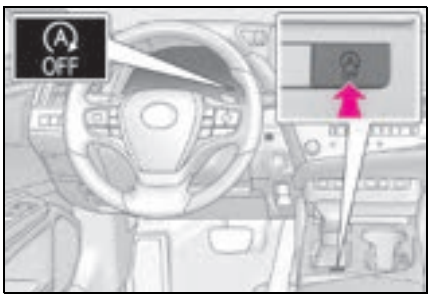
- Even though the driver's seat belt is not fastened, the seat belt reminder light flashes.
- Even though the driver's door is closed, the open door warning is displayed on the multi-information display and open door warning light comes on, or the interior light comes on when the interior light switch is in the door position.
- Even when the driver's door is opened, the open door warning is not displayed on the multi-information display and open door warning light does not come on, or the interior light does not come on when the interior light switch is in the door position.

Disabling the Stop & Start system

Press the Stop & Start cancel switch to disable the Stop & Start system.

The Stop & Start cancel indicator will come on.

Pressing the switch again will enable the Stop & Start system and the Stop & Start cancel indicator will go off.



Automatic reactivation of the Stop & Start system

Even if the Stop & Start system is disabled by the Stop & Start cancel switch, it will be automatically re-enabled once the engine switch is turned off and then the engine is started.

If the Stop & Start cancel switch is pressed while the vehicle is stopped

- When the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will restart the engine.
- With the Stop & Start system disabled, pressing the Stop & Start cancel switch will re-enable the system but not stop the engine.
  From the next time the vehicle is stopped (after Stop & Start system has been enabled), the engine will be stopped.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

PKSA (Parking Support Alert)

The Parking Support Alert system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object, such as a wall, or pedestrian is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action.

PKSA (Parking Support Alert) system

■ **Lexus parking assist-sensor**

Ultrasonic sensors are used to detect static objects in the detection area when driving at a low speed or backing up. (→P.272)

■ **RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function (if equipped)**

Radar sensors are used to detect approaching vehicles in the detection areas behind the vehicle when backing up. (→P.280)

■ **RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function (if equipped)**

A rear camera sensor is used to detect pedestrians in the detection area behind the vehicle when backing up. (→P.285)

Setting the buzzer volume

■ **Adjusting the buzzer volume**

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. The volume of buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA function and RCD function will be adjusted simultaneously.

Use the meter control switches to change settings. (→P.106)

1 Press ◄ or ► to select ⚙.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select "PKSA" and then press "OK".

3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select 🔊 and then press "OK".

Each time the switch is pressed, the volume level will change between 1, 2, and 3.

■ **Muting a buzzer temporarily**

A mute button will be displayed on the multi-information display or Center Display (vehicles with 12.3-inch Center Display and Lexus parking assist monitor) when an object or pedestrian is detected. To mute the buzzer, press "OK" or 🔇.

The buzzers for the Lexus parking assist-sensor, RCTA function and RCD function will be muted simultaneously.

Mute will be automatically canceled in the following situations:

- When the shift position is changed.
- When there is a malfunction in a sensor or the system is temporarily

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

unavailable.

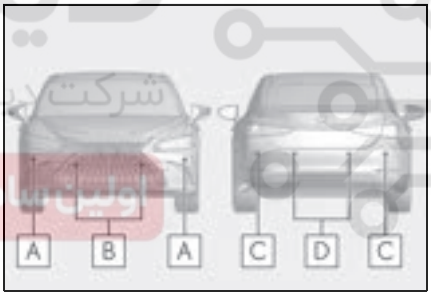
- When the function is disabled while it is operating.
- When the engine switch is turned off.

Lexus parking assist-sensor

The distance from your vehicle to objects, such as a wall, when parallel parking or maneuvering into a garage is measured by the sensors and communicated via the multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped), Center Display and a buzzer. Always check the surrounding area when using this system.

System components

■ Types of sensors



A Front corner sensors

B Front center sensors

C Rear corner sensors

D Rear center sensors

■ Display

When the sensors detect an object, such as a wall, a graphic is shown on the multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped) and center display depending on the position and distance to the object.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

● Multi-information display and head-up display



A Front corner sensor detection

B Front center sensor detection

C Rear corner sensor detection

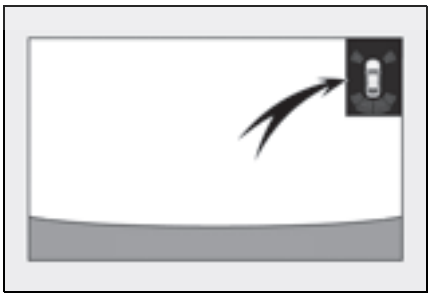
D Rear center sensor detection

● Center Display

A graphic is shown when the Lexus parking assist monitor is displayed (insert display)

A simplified image is displayed on the upper right corner of Center Display when an obstacle is detected.

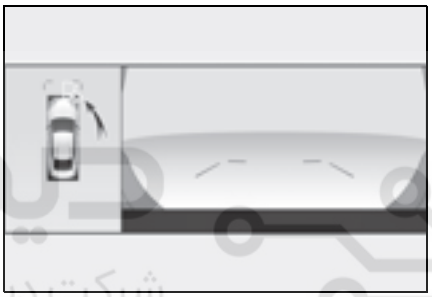
- When the shift lever is in R



- When the shift lever is in N, S (vehicles with automatic transmission), M (vehicles with CVT) or D (vehicle moving forward)



When an object is detected, a graphic will be displayed on the panoramic view monitor (if equipped).



Turning Lexus parking assist-sensor on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.106)

1 Press or to select .

2 Press or to select "PKSA" and then press "OK"

3 Press or to select , and then press "OK".

When the Lexus parking assist-sensor is disabled, the Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (→P.94) illuminates on the multi-information display.To re-enable the system, select on the multi-information display,

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

select and turn it on. If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode after the engine switch has been turned off.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following precautions.

Failing to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely and possibly cause an accident.

- Do not damage the sensors, and always keep them clean.
- Do not attach a sticker or install an electronic component, such as a backlit license plate (especially fluorescent type), fog lights, fender pole or wireless antenna near a radar sensor.
- Do not subject the surrounding area of the sensor to a strong impact. If subjected to an impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer. If the front or rear bumper needs to be removed/installed or replaced, contact your Lexus dealer.
- Do not modify, disassemble or paint the sensors.
- Do not attach a license plate cover.
- Keep your tires properly inflated.

■ When to disable the function

In the following situations, disable the function as it may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- Failing to observe the warnings above.
- A non-genuine Lexus suspension (lowered suspension, etc.) is installed.

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

Do not apply intensive bursts of water or steam to the sensor area. Doing so may result in the sensor malfunctioning.

- When using a high pressure washer to wash the vehicle, do not spray the sensors directly, as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.
- When using steam to clean the vehicle, do not direct steam too close to the sensors as doing so may cause a sensor to malfunction.

■ The system can be operated when

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- Lexus parking assist-sensor is turned on.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 10 km/h (6 mph).
- A shift lever is shifted to a position other than P.

■ Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. (→P.105)

■ If "Parking Assist Unavailable Clean Parking Assist Sensor" is displayed on the multi-information display

A sensor may be covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. Remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal.
Also, due to ice forming on a sensor at low temperatures, a warning message may be displayed or the sensor may not be able to detect an object. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **If "Parking Assist Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

- Water may be continuously flowing over the sensor surface, such as in a heavy rain. When the system determines that it is normal, the system will return to normal.
- Initialization may not have been performed after a battery terminal was disconnected and reconnected. Initialize the system. (→P.275)
  If this message continues to be displayed even after initialization, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

The system needs to be initialized. To initialize the system, drive the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.

■ **Sensor detection information**

- The sensor's detection areas are limited to the areas around the vehicle's front and rear bumpers.
- The following situations may occur during use.
  - Depending on the shape of the object and other factors, the detection distance may shorten, or detection may be impossible.
  - There will be a short delay between object detection and display. Even at low speeds, there is a possibility that the object will come within the sensor's detection areas before the display is shown and the warning beep sounds.
  - It might be difficult to hear the buzzer due to the volume of the audio system or air flow noise of the air conditioning system.
  - It may be difficult to hear the buzzer if buzzers for other systems are sounding.

■ **Objects which the system may not properly detect**

The shape of the object may prevent the sensor from detecting it. Pay particular attention to the following objects:

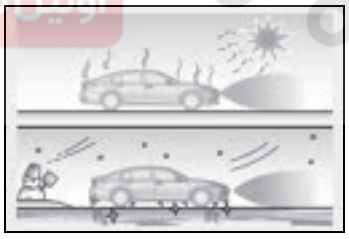
- Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
- Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb sound waves
- Sharply-angled objects
- Low objects
- Tall objects with upper sections projecting outwards in the direction of your vehicle

People may not be detected if they are wearing certain types of clothing.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

Certain vehicle conditions and the surrounding environment may affect the ability of a sensor to correctly detect objects. Particular instances where this may occur are listed below.

- There is dirt, snow or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is frozen. (Thawing the area will resolve this problem.)
  In especially cold weather, if a sensor is frozen the sensor display may be displayed abnormally, or objects, such as a wall, may not be detected.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.



- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.
- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- If objects draw too close to the sensor.
- When a pedestrian is wearing clothing that does not reflect ultrasonic waves (ex.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

skirts with gathers or frills).

- When objects that are not perpendicular to the ground, not perpendicular to the vehicle traveling direction, uneven, or waving are in the detection range.
- Strong wind is blowing.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When an object that cannot be detected is between the vehicle and a detected object.
- If an object such as a vehicle, motorcycle, bicycle or pedestrian cuts in front of the vehicle or runs out from the side of the vehicle.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eye-let, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or low-ered due to the carried load.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

In some situations, such as the following, the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When driving on a narrow road.



- When driving toward a banner, flag, low-hanging branch or boom barrier (such as those used at railroad crossings, toll gates and parking lots).
- When there is a rut or hole in the surface of the road.
- When driving on a metal cover (grating), such as those used for drainage ditches.
- When driving up or down a steep slope.
- If a sensor is hit by a large amount of water, such as when driving on a flooded road.
- There is dirt, snow, water drops or ice on a sensor. (Cleaning the sensors will resolve this problem.)
- A sensor is coated with a sheet of spray or heavy rain.
- When driving in inclement weather such as fog, snow or a sandstorm.
- When strong winds are blowing.

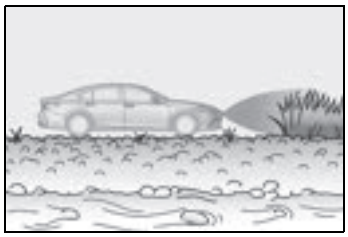


- When vehicle horns, vehicle detectors, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, the clearance sonar of other vehicles or other devices which produce ultrasonic waves are near the vehicle.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or low-ered due to the carried load.
- If the orientation of a sensor has been changed due to a collision or other impact.
- The vehicle is approaching a tall or curved curb.
- Driving close to columns (H-shaped steel beams, etc.) in multi-story parking garages, construction sites, etc.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

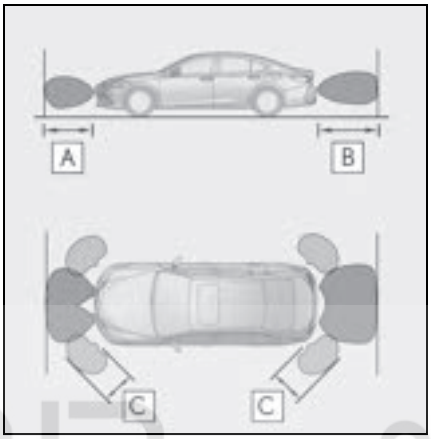
- On an extremely bumpy road, on an incline, on gravel, or on grass.



- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.

Sensor detection display, obstacle distance

Detection range of the sensors



A Approximately 100 cm (3.3 ft.)

B Approximately 150 cm (4.9 ft.)

C Approximately 60 cm (2.0 ft.)

The diagram shows the detection range of the sensors. Note that the sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.

The range of the sensors may change depending on the shape of the object etc.

Multi-information display, head-up display (if equipped) and Center Display

When an object is detected by a sensor, the approximate distance to the object will be displayed on the multi-information display, Center Display, and head-up display (if equipped). (As the distance to the object becomes short, the distance segments may blink.)

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Approximate distance to object: 150 cm (4.9 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)* (Rear center sensor)

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

*: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.279)

- Approximate distance to object: 100 cm (3.3 ft.) to 60 cm (2.0 ft.)* (Front center sensor)

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

*: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.279)

- Approximate distance to object: 60 cm (2.0 ft.) to 45 cm (1.5 ft.)*

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

*: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.279)

- Approximate distance to object: 45 cm (1.5 ft.) to 30 cm (1.0 ft.)*

Multi-information display	Center Display	Head-up display
		

*: Automatic buzzer mute function is enabled. (→P.279)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Approximate distance to object: 30 cm (1.0 ft.) to 15 cm (0.5 ft.)*1

Multi-information display*2	Center Display*2	Head-up display
		

*1: Automatic buzzer mute function is disabled. (→P.279)

*2: The distance segments will blink slowly.

- Approximate distance to object: Less than 15 cm (0.5 ft.)*1

Multi-information display*2	Center Display*2	Head-up display
		

*1: Automatic buzzer mute function is disabled. (→P.279)

*2: The distance segments will blink rapidly.

Buzzer operation and distance to an object

A buzzer sounds when the sensors are operating.

- The buzzer beeps faster as the vehicle approaches an object. When the vehicle comes within the following distance of the object, the buzzer sounds continuously:

Approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.)

- When 2 or more objects are detected simultaneously, the buzzer sounds for the nearest object. If one or more objects come within approximately 30 cm (1.0 ft.) of the vehicle, the buzzer will repeat a long tone, followed by fast beeps.
- Automatic buzzer mute function:

After a buzzer begins sounding, if the distance between the vehicle and the detected object does not become shorter, the buzzer will be muted automatically. (However, if the distance between the vehicle and object is 30 cm [1.0 ft.] or less, this function will not operate.)

The buzzer sounds volume can be adjusted. (→P.271)

4 Driving

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function*

*: If equipped

The RCTA function uses the BSM rear side radar sensors installed on the inner side of the rear bumper. This function is intended to assist the driver in checking areas that are not easily visible when backing up.

WARNING

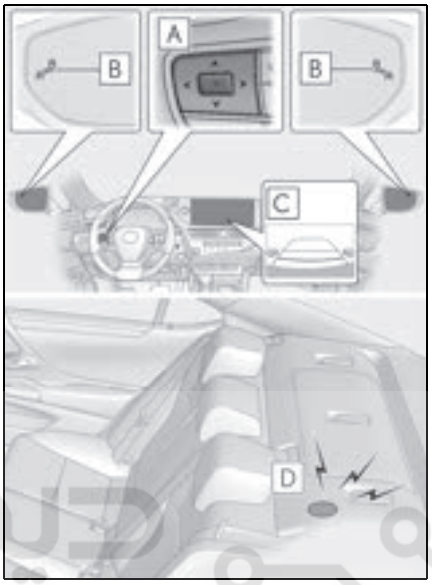
■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

There is a limit to the degree of recognition accuracy and control performance that this system can provide, do not overly rely on this system. The driver is always responsible for paying attention to the vehicle's surroundings and driving safely. (→P.258)

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.259

System components



A Meter control switches

Turn the RCTA function on/off. When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator illuminates.

B Outside rear view mirror indicators

When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, both outside rear view mirror indicators will flash.

C Center Display

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the RCTA icon (→P.282) for the detected side will be displayed on the Center Display. This illustration shows an example of a vehicle approaching from both sides of the vehicle.

D RCTA buzzer

If a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, a

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

buzzer will sound.

Turning the RCTA function on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the RCTA function. (→P.106)

1 Press < or > to select ⚙.

2 Press ∧ or ∨ to select "PKSA", and then press "OK".

3 Press ∧ or ∨ to select "RCTA", and then press "OK".

When the RCTA function is disabled, the RCTA OFF indicator (→P.94) illuminates on the multi-information display. (Each time the engine switch is turned off then changed to IGNITION ON mode, the RCTA function will be enabled automatically.)

NOTICE

■ Before using the RCTA function

Do not place obstacles near the sensors.

■ Outside rear view mirror indicator visibility

In strong sunlight, the outside rear view mirror indicator may be difficult to see.

■ Hearing the RCTA buzzer

The RCTA buzzer may be difficult to hear over loud noises, such as if the audio system volume is high.

■ When "RCTA Unavailable" is shown on the multi-information display

Ice, snow, mud, etc., may be attached to the rear bumper around the sensors. (→P.259) Remove the ice, snow, mud, etc., attached to the rear bumper around the sensors to return the function to normal.

Additionally, the function may not function normally when used in extremely hot or cold environments.

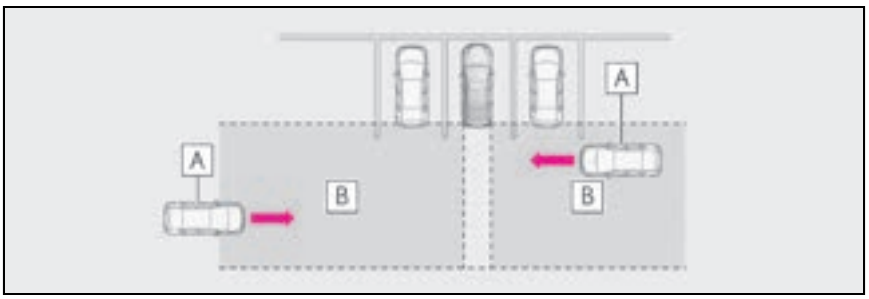
■ Rear side radar sensors

→P.259

RCTA function

■ Operation of the RCTA function

The RCTA function uses rear radar sensors to detect vehicles approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and alerts the driver of the presence of such vehicles by flashing the outside rear view mirror indicators and sounding a buzzer.



اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران
(مسئولیت محدود)
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

A Approaching vehicles

B Detection areas of approaching vehicles

RCTA icon display

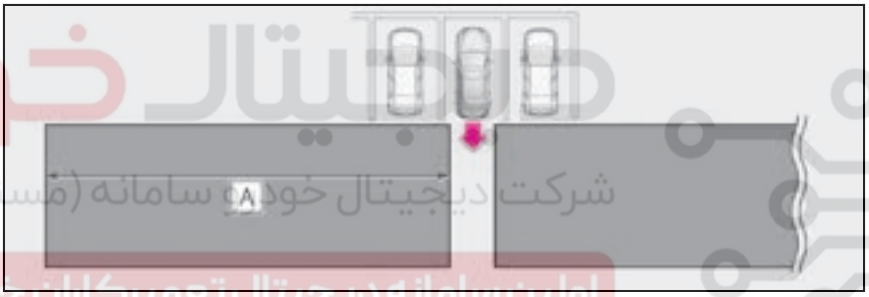
When a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle is detected, the following will be displayed on the Center Display.

Example: Vehicles are approaching from both sides of the vehicle



RCTA function detection areas

The areas that vehicles can be detected in are outlined below.



The buzzer can alert the driver of faster vehicles approaching from farther away.

Example:

Approaching vehicle speed	A Approximate alert distance
28 km/h (18 mph) (fast)	20 m (65 ft.)
8 km/h (5 mph) (slow)	5.5 m (18 ft.)

The RCTA function is operational when

The RCTA function operates when all of the following conditions are met:

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The RCTA function is on.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The vehicle speed is less than approximately 8 km/h (5 mph).
- The approaching vehicle speed is between approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) and 28 km/h (18 mph).

Setting the buzzer volume

The buzzer volume can be adjusted on the multi-information display. (→P.271)

Conditions under which the system will not detect a vehicle

The RCTA function is not designed to detect the following types of vehicles and/or objects:

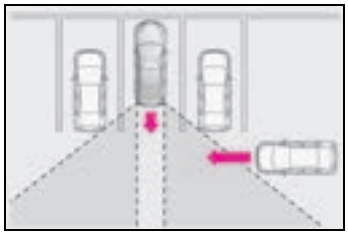
- Vehicles approaching from directly behind
- Vehicles backing up in a parking space

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

next to your vehicle

- Vehicles that the sensors cannot detect due to obstructions



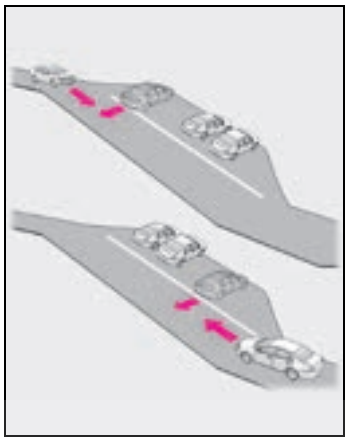
- Guardrails, walls, signs, parked vehicles and similar stationary objects*
- Small motorcycles, bicycles, pedestrians, etc.*
- Vehicles moving away from your vehicle
- Vehicles approaching from the parking spaces next to your vehicle*
- The distance between the sensor and approaching vehicle gets too close

*: Depending on the conditions, detection of a vehicle and/or object may occur.

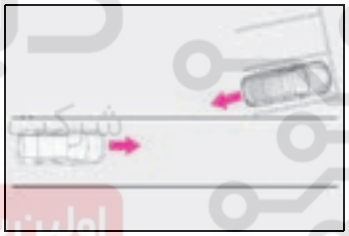
■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

The RCTA function may not detect vehicles correctly in the following situations:

- When the sensor is misaligned due to a strong impact to the sensor or its surrounding area.
- When mud, snow, ice, a sticker, etc., is covering the sensor or surrounding area on the rear bumper.
- When driving on a road surface that is wet with standing water during bad weather, such as heavy rain, snow, or fog.
- When multiple vehicles are approaching with only a small gap between each vehicle.
- When a vehicle is approaching at high speed.
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.
- When backing up on a slope with a sharp change in grade.



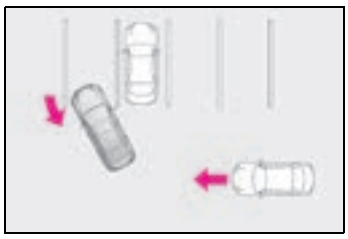
- When backing out of a sharp angle parking spot.



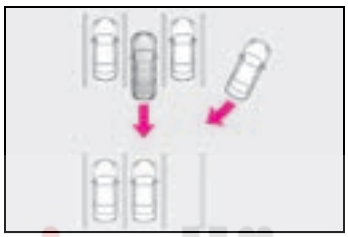
- When towing a trailer.
- When there is a significant difference in height between your vehicle and the vehicle that enters the detection area.
- When a sensor or the area around a sensor is extremely hot or cold.
- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- When turning while backing up.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



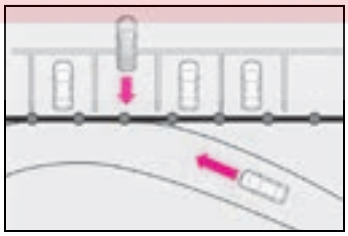
● When a vehicle turns into the detection area.



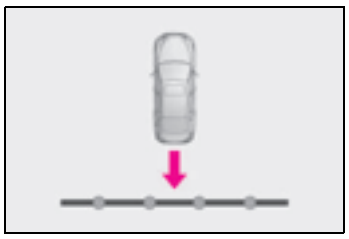
■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

Instances of the RCTA function unnecessarily detecting a vehicle and/or object may increase in the following situations:

● When the parking space faces a street and vehicles are being driven on the street.

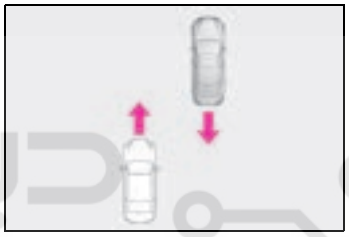


● When the distance between your vehicle and metal objects, such as a guardrail, wall, sign, or parked vehicle, which may reflect electrical waves toward the rear of the vehicle, is short.

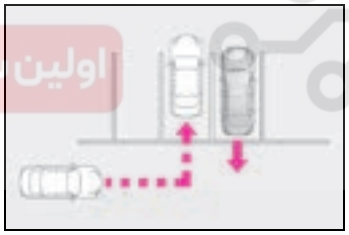


● When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.

● When a vehicle passes by the side of your vehicle.



● When a detected vehicle turns while approaching the vehicle.



● When there are spinning objects near your vehicle such as the fan of an air conditioning unit.

● When water is splashed or sprayed toward the rear bumper, such as from a sprinkler.

● Moving objects (flags, exhaust fumes, large rain droplets or snowflakes, rain water on the road surface, etc.).

● When the distance between your vehicle and a guardrail, wall, etc., that enters the detection area is short.

● Gratings and gutters.

● When a sensor or the area around a sen-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

sor is extremely hot or cold.

- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.

RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function*

*: If equipped

When the vehicle is backing up, the rear camera detection function can detect pedestrians in the detection area behind the vehicle. If a pedestrian is detected, a buzzer will sound and an icon will be displayed on the Center Display to inform the driver of the pedestrian.

WARNING

■ Cautions regarding the use of the system

The recognition and control capabilities for this system are limited.

The driver should always drive safely by always being responsible without over relying on the system and have a understanding of the surrounding situations.

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

Observe the following, otherwise there is the danger that could lead to an accident.

- Always clean the camera without damaging it.
- Do not install market electronic parts (such as Illuminated license plate, fog lamps, etc.) in the camera vicinity.
- Do not subject the camera vicinity to strong impacts. If the vicinity is subjected to a strong impact, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.
- Do not disassemble, remodel or paint the camera.
- Do not attach accessories or stickers to the camera.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

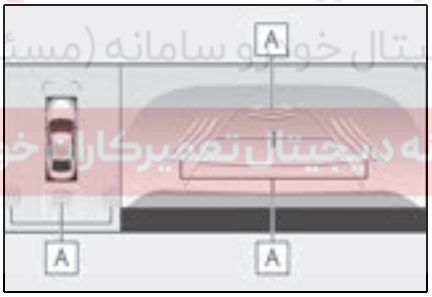
- Do not install market protection parts (bumper trim, etc.) to the rear bumper.
- Maintain suitable tire air pressure.
- Make sure the trunk is completely closed.

■ RCD function is turned off

In the following situations the system turns off. The RCD function may not operate properly and thus there is the danger that an accident may occur.

- The contents mentioned above are not observed.
- Suspensions other than Lexus genuine parts are installed.

RCD display



A Pedestrian detection icon

Displayed automatically when a pedestrian is detected.

Turning the RCD function on/off

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the RCD function. (→P.106)

1 Press ◀ or ▶ to select ⚙.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select “PKSA” and then press “OK”.

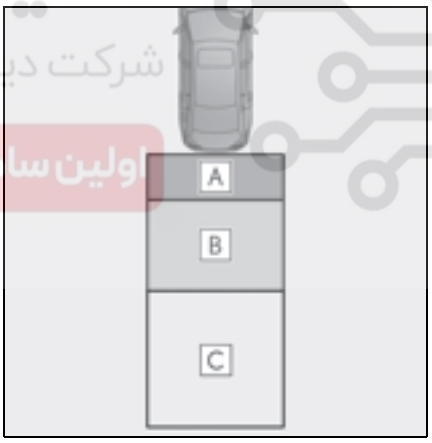
3 Press ▲ or ▼ to select “RCD” and then press “OK”.

When the RCD function is disabled, the RCD OFF indicator (→P.94) illuminates on the multi-information display.

Each time the engine switch is turned off then changed to IGNITION ON mode, the RCD function will be enabled automatically.

When a pedestrian is detected

If the rear camera detection function detects a pedestrian in the detection area, the buzzer and pedestrian detection will operate as follows:



A If a pedestrian is detected in area A

Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly

Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

B If a pedestrian is detected in area B

Buzzer (When the vehicle is sta-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

tionary): Sounds 3 times
Buzzer (When the vehicle is backing up, when a pedestrian approaches the rear of the vehicle): Sounds repeatedly
Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

C If the system determines that your vehicle may collide with a pedestrian in area C
Buzzer: Sounds repeatedly
Pedestrian detection icon: Blinks 3 times and then stays on

■ **The rear camera detection function is operational when**

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- RCD function is on.
- The shift position is in R.

■ **Setting the buzzer volume**

The buzzer volume of the RCD, intuitive parking assist and RCTA can all be adjusted at once on the multi-information display. (→P.271)

■ **If "Rear Camera Detection Unavailable Remove Dirt from Rear Camera" is displayed on the multi-information display**

A rear camera lens may be dirty or covered with snow or ice. In such cases, if it is removed from the rear camera lens, the system should return to normal. (It may be necessary to drive the vehicle for some time before the system returns to normal.)

■ **If "Rear Camera Detection Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display**

- If the trunk lid is open, fully close it.
- If this message is displayed only when the R shift position is selected, the rear camera lens may be dirty. Clean the rear camera lens.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

- Some pedestrians, such as the following, may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:
  - Pedestrians who are bending forward or squatting
  - Pedestrians who are lying down
  - Pedestrians who are running
  - Pedestrians who suddenly enter the detection area
  - People riding a bicycle, skateboard, or other light vehicle
  - Pedestrians wearing oversized clothing such as a rain coat, long skirt, etc., making their silhouette obscure
  - Pedestrians whose body is partially hidden by an object, such as a cart or umbrella
  - Pedestrians which are obscured by darkness, such as at night
- In some situations, such as the following, pedestrians may not be detected by the rear camera detection function, preventing the function from operating properly:
  - When backing up in inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)
  - When the rear camera is obscured (dirt, snow, ice, etc. are attached) or scratched
  - When a very bright light, such as the sun, or the headlights of another vehicle, shines directly into the rear camera
  - When backing up in a place where the surrounding brightness changes suddenly, such as at the entrance or exit of a garage or underground parking lot
  - When backing up in a dim environment such as during dusk or in an underground parking lot
  - When the camera position and direction are deviated
  - When a towing hook is attached
  - When water droplets are flowing on the camera lens
  - When the vehicle height is extremely changed (nose up, nose down)
  - When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used
  - When the suspension has been lowered or tires of a size other than specified are installed

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- When market electronic parts (such as illuminated license plate, fog lights, etc.) are installed in the rear camera vicinity
- When market protection parts (bumper trim, etc.) are installed to the rear bumper

■ **Situations in which the system may operate unexpectedly**

● Even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area, some objects, such as the following, may be detected, possibly causing the rear camera detection function to operate.

- Three dimensional objects, such as a pole, traffic cone, fence, or parked vehicle
- Moving objects, such as a car or motorcycle
- Objects moving toward your vehicle when backing up, such as flags or puddles (or airborne matter, such as smoke, steam, rain, or snow)
- Cobblestone or gravel roads, tram rails, road repairs, white lines, pedestrian crossings or fallen leaves on the road
- Metal covers (gratings) or drainage ditches
- Objects reflected in a puddle or on a wet road surface
- Shadows on the road

● In some situations, such as the following, the rear camera detection function may operate even though there are no pedestrians in the detection area.

- When backing up toward the roadside or a bump on the road
- When backing up toward an incline/decline
- If the rear of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load
- When market electronic parts (such as illuminated license plate, fog lights, etc.) are installed in the rear camera vicinity
- When market protection parts (bumper trim, etc.) are installed to the rear bumper
- If the orientation of the rear camera has been changed due to a collision or other impact, or removal and installation
- If a towing eyelet is installed to the rear of the vehicle
- When water is flowing over the rear camera lens
- When the rear camera is obscured (dirt, snow, ice, etc. are attached) or scratched
- If there is a flashing light in the detection area, such as the emergency flashers of another vehicle
- When tire chains or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used

● Situations in which the rear camera detection function may be difficult to notice

- The buzzer may be difficult to hear if the surrounding area is noisy, the volume of the audio system volume is high, the air conditioning system is being used, etc.
- If the temperature in the cabin is extremely high or low, the Center Display may not operate correctly.

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

PKSB (Parking Support Brake)*

*: If equipped

The Parking Support Brake system consists of the following functions that operate when driving at a low speed or backing up, such as when parking. When the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object is high, a warning operates to urge the driver to take evasive action. If the system determines that the possibility of a collision with a detected object is extremely high, the brakes are automatically applied to help avoid the collision or help reduce the impact of the collision.

PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system

■ **Parking Support Brake function (static objects)**

Ultrasonic sensors are used to detect static objects, such as a wall, in the detection area when driving at a low speed or backing up. (→P.295)

■ **Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) (if equipped)**

Rear radar sensors are used to detect approaching vehicles in the detection area behind the vehicle when backing up. (→P.298)

⚠ WARNING

■ **Cautions regarding the use of the system**

Do not overly rely on the system, as doing so may lead to an accident.

Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

Depending on the vehicle and road conditions, weather, etc., the system may not operate.

The detection capabilities of sensors and radars are limited. Always drive while checking the safety of the surroundings of the vehicle.

- The driver is solely responsible for safe driving. Always drive carefully, taking care to observe your surroundings. The Parking Support Brake system is designed to provide support to lessen the severity of collisions. However, it may not operate in some situations.
- The Parking Support Brake system is not designed to stop the vehicle completely. Additionally, even if the system has stopped the vehicle, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal immediately as brake control will be canceled after approximately 2 seconds.
- It is extremely dangerous to check the system operations by intentionally driving the vehicle into the direction of a wall, etc. Never attempt such actions.

■ **When to disable the Parking Support Brake**

In the following situations, disable the Parking Support Brake as the system may operate even though there is no possibility of a collision.

- When inspecting the vehicle using a chassis roller, chassis dynamo or free roller.
- When loading the vehicle onto a boat, truck or other transport vessel.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If the suspension has been modified or tires of a size other than specified are installed.
- If the front of the vehicle is raised or lowered due to the carried load.
- When equipment that may obstruct a sensor is installed, such as a towing eyelet, bumper protector (an additional trim strip, etc.), bicycle carrier, or snow plow.
- When using automatic car washing devices.
- If the vehicle cannot be driven in a stable manner, such as when the vehicle has been in an accident or is malfunctioning.
- When the vehicle is driven in a sporty manner or off-road.
- When the tires are not properly inflated.
- When the tires are very worn.
- When tire chains, a compact spare tire or an emergency tire puncture repair kit are used.
- During emergency towing

NOTICE

■ If "Parking Support Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing

If this message is displayed immediately after the engine switch is changed to IGNITION ON mode, operate the vehicle carefully, paying attention to your surroundings. It may be necessary to drive the vehicle for a certain amount of time before the system returns to normal. (If the system is not return to normal after driving for a while, clean the rear camera lens.)

Enabling/Disabling the Parking Support Brake

The Parking Support Brake can be enabled/disabled on the multi-information display. All of the Parking Support Brake functions (static objects and rear-crossing vehicles) are enabled/disabled simultaneously.

Use the meter control switches to enable/disable the parking support brake. (→P.106)

1 Press ◄ or ► to select ⚙.

2 Press ▲ or ▼ to select and then press "OK".

When the Parking Support Brake is disabled, the PKSB OFF indicator (→P.94) illuminates on the multi-information display.

To re-enable the system, select ⚙ on the multi-information display, select and then On. If the system is disabled, it will remain off even if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode after the engine switch has been turned off.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Displays and buzzers for engine output restriction control and brake control

If the engine output restriction control or brake control operates, a buzzer will sound and a message will be displayed on the Center Display and multi-information display, to alert the driver. On vehicles with head-up display, the head-up display will display the same message as the multi-information display.

Depending on the situation, engine output restriction control will operate to either limit acceleration or restrict output as much as possible.

- Engine output restriction control is operating (acceleration restriction)

Acceleration greater than a certain amount is restricted by the system.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor): No warning displayed

Multi-information display: "Object Detected Acceleration Reduced"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Does not sound

- Engine output restriction control is operating (output restricted as much as possible)

The system has determined that stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor): "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Brake control is operating

The system determined that emergency braking is necessary.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor): "BRAKE!"

Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

PKSB OFF indicator: Not illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

- Vehicle stopped by system operation

The vehicle has been stopped by brake control operation.

Center Display (Panoramic view monitor): "Switch to Brake" (If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, "Press Brake Pedal" will be displayed.)

Multi-information display: "Switch to Brake" (If the accelerator pedal is not depressed, "Press Brake Pedal" will be displayed.)

PKSB OFF indicator: Illuminated

Buzzer: Short beep

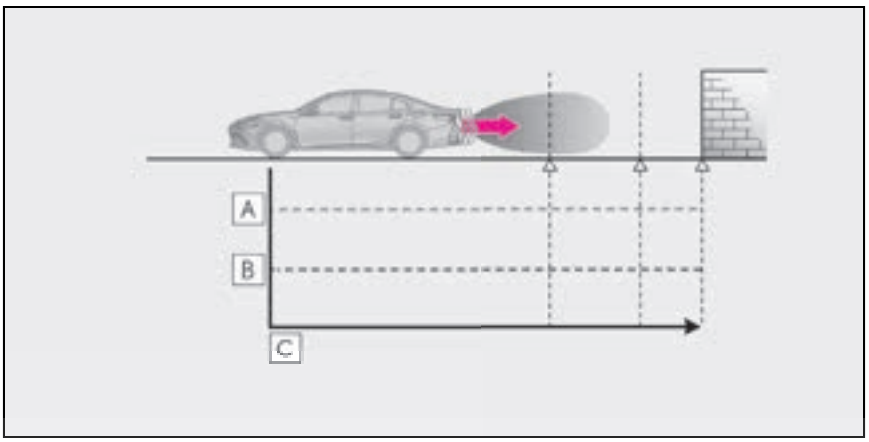
System overview

If the Parking Support Brake determines that a collision with a detected object is possible, the engine output will be restricted to restrain any increase in the vehicle speed. (Engine output restriction control: See figure 2 below.)
Additionally, if the accelerator pedal continues to be depressed, the brakes will be applied automatically to reduce the vehicle speed. (Brake control: See figure 3 below.)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

● Figure 1 When the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) is disabled

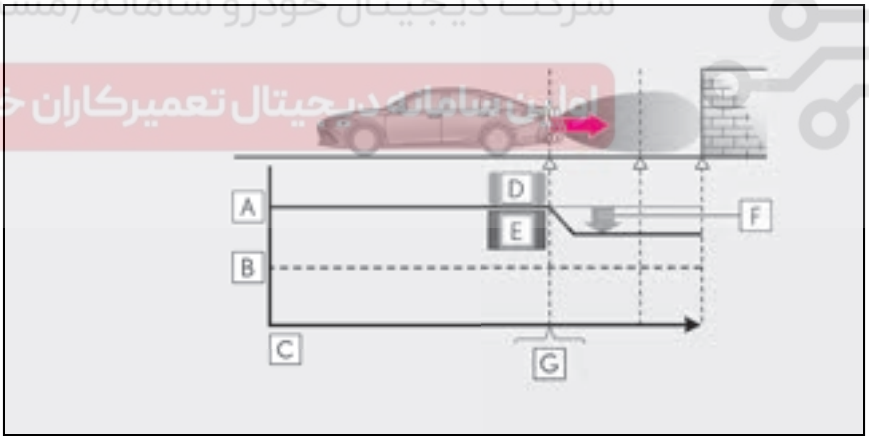


A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

● Figure 2 When engine output restriction control operates



A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating

E System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high

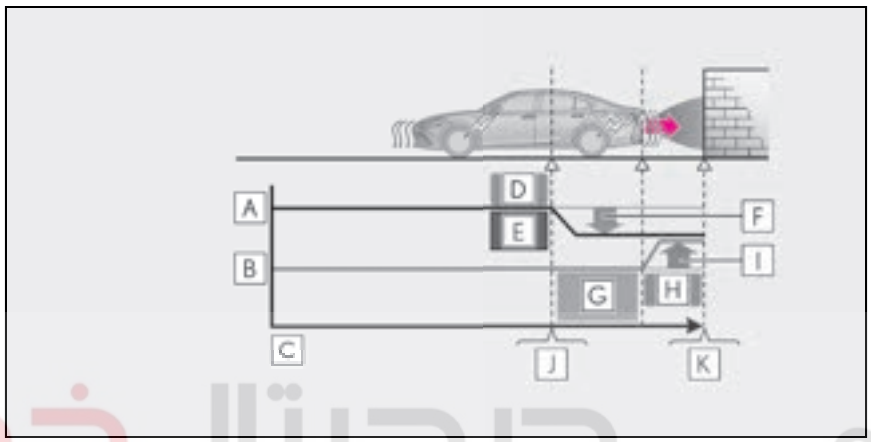
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

F Engine output reduced

G Example: Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

● Figure 3 When brake control operates



A Engine output

B Braking force

C Time

D Engine output restriction control begins operating

E System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is high

F Engine output reduced

G System determines that possibility of collision with detected object is extremely high

H Brake control begins operating

I Brake control strength increased

J Example: Multi-information display: "BRAKE!"

K Example: Multi-information display: "Switch to Brake"

If the Parking Support Brake has operated

If the vehicle is stopped due to operation of the Parking Support Brake, the Parking Support Brake will be disabled and the PKSB OFF indicator will illuminate. If the Parking Support Brake operates unnecessarily, brake control can be canceled by depressing the brake pedal or waiting for approximately 2 seconds for it to automatically be canceled. Then, the vehicle can be operated by depressing the accelerator pedal.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Re-enabling the Parking Support Brake**

To re-enable the Parking Support Brake when it has been disabled due to system operation, perform any of the following operations. At this time, the PKSB OFF indicator will turn off. (→P.94)

- Turn the PKSB system on (→P.290)
- Turn the engine switch off, and then back to IGNITION ON mode
- Shift the shift lever to P
- Drive with no operation targets in the traveling direction of the vehicle
- Change the traveling direction of the vehicle

■ **If "Parking Support Brake Unavailable" is displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing**

If this message is displayed only when the shift lever is in R, the rear camera lens may be dirty. Clean the camera lens. If this message is displayed when the shift lever is in any position other than R, a sensor on the front or rear bumper may be dirty. Clean the sensors and their surrounding area on the bumpers.

■ **If "Parking Support Brake Unavailable" and "Parking Assist Unavailable Clean Parking Assist Sensor" are displayed on the multi-information display and the PKSB OFF indicator is flashing**

- A sensor may be covered with ice, snow, dirt, etc. In this case, remove the ice, snow, dirt, etc., from the sensor to return the system to normal. If this message is shown even after removing dirt from the sensor, or shown when the sensor was not dirty to begin with, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- A sensor may be frozen. Once the ice melts, the system will return to normal.
- Water may be continuously flowing over the sensor surface, such as in a heavy rain. When the system determines that it is normal, the system will return to normal.

■ **If a battery terminal has been disconnected and reconnected**

The system needs to be initialized. To initialize the system, drive the vehicle straight ahead for 5 seconds or more at a speed of approximately 35 km/h (22 mph) or more.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Parking Support Brake function (static objects)*

*: If equipped

If the sensors detect a static object, such as a wall, in the traveling direction of the vehicle and the system determines that a collision may occur due to the vehicle suddenly moving forward due to an accidental accelerator pedal operation, the vehicle moving the unintended direction due to the wrong shift position being selected, or while parking or traveling at low speeds, the system will operate to lessen the impact with the detected static object and reduce the resulting damage.

Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if an object is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

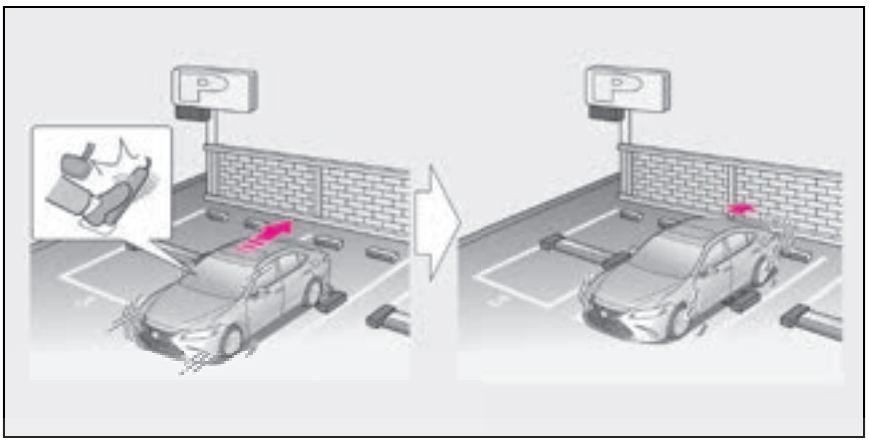
■ **When traveling at a low speed and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late**



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ When the accelerator pedal is depressed excessively



■ When the vehicle moves in the unintended direction due to the wrong shift position being selected



Types of sensors

→P.272

WARNING

■ To ensure the system can operate properly

→P.274

■ If the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) operates unnecessarily, such as at a railroad crossing

→P.293

■ Notes when washing the vehicle

→P.274

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (static object) will operate when**

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.93, 94) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- There is a static object in the traveling direction of the vehicle and approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger-than-normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an immediate brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision.

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (static objects) will stop operating when**

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The system determines that the collision has become avoidable with normal brake operation.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- The static object is no longer approximately 2 to 4 m (6 to 13 ft.) away from the vehicle or in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ **Detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects)**

The detection range of the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) differs from the detection range of the Lexus parking assist-sensor. (→P.277) Therefore, even if the Lexus parking assist-sensor detects an object and provides a warning, the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not start operating.

■ **Situations in which the Parking Support Brake function (static objects) may not operate**

When the shift lever is in N.

■ **Situations in which the system may not operate properly**

→P.275

■ **Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision**

→P.276

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)*

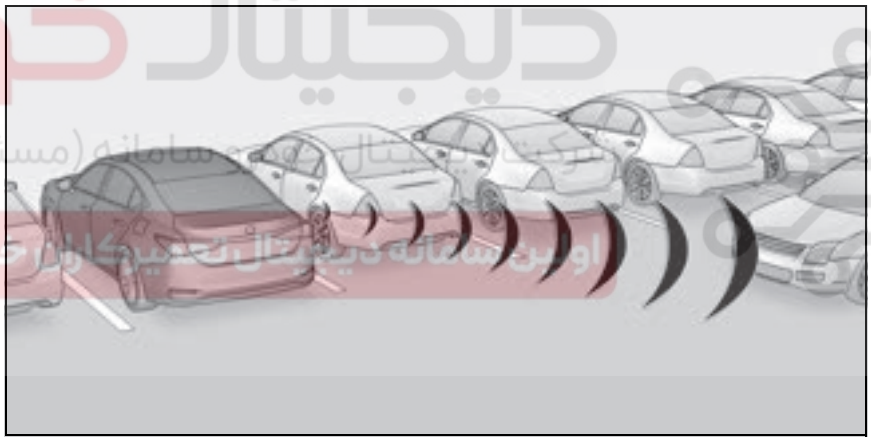
*: If equipped

If a rear radar sensor detects a vehicle approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle and the system determines that the possibility of a collision is high, this function will perform brake control to reduce the likelihood of an impact with the approaching vehicle.

Examples of function operation

This function will operate in situations such as the following if a vehicle is detected in the traveling direction of the vehicle.

■ **When reversing, a vehicle is approaching and the brake pedal is not depressed, or is depressed late**



Types of sensors

→P.259

WARNING

■ **To ensure the system can operate properly**

→P.259

■ **The Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) will operate when**

The function will operate when the PKSB OFF indicator is not illuminated or flashing (→P.93, 94) and all of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is enabled.
- The vehicle speed is approximately 15 km/h (9 mph) or less.
- Vehicles are approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle at a travel-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

ing speed of approximately 8 km/h (5 mph) or more.
- The shift lever is in R.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that a stronger than normal brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

● Brake control
- Engine output restriction control is operating.
- The Parking Support Brake determines that an emergency brake operation is necessary to avoid a collision with an approaching vehicle.

■ The Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) will stop operating when

The function will stop operating if any of the following conditions are met:

● Engine output restriction control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- The collision becomes avoidable with normal brake operation.
- A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

● Brake control
- The Parking Support Brake is disabled.
- Approximately 2 seconds have elapsed since the vehicle was stopped by brake control.
- The brake pedal is depressed after the vehicle is stopped by brake control.
- A vehicle is no longer approaching from the right or left at the rear of the vehicle.

■ Detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles)

The detection area of the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) differs from the detection area of the RCTA function (→P.282). Therefore, even if the RCTA function detects a vehicle and provides an alert, the Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) may not start operating.

■ Situations in which the system may not operate properly

→P.283

■ Situations in which the system may operate even if there is no possibility of a collision

→P.284

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Driving assist systems

To keep driving safety and performance, the following systems operate automatically in response to various driving situations. Be aware, however, that these systems are supplementary and should not be relied upon too heavily when operating the vehicle.

Summary of the driving assist systems

■ ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)

Helps to prevent wheel lock when the brakes are applied suddenly, or if the brakes are applied while driving on a slippery road surface

■ Brake assist

Generates an increased level of braking force after the brake pedal is depressed when the system detects a panic stop situation

■ VSC (Vehicle Stability Control)

Helps the driver to control skidding when swerving suddenly or turning on slippery road surfaces. Provides cooperative control of the ABS, TRC, VSC and EPS. Helps to maintain directional stability when swerving on slippery road surfaces by controlling steering performance.

■ Secondary Collision Brake (if equipped)

When the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision and the system operates, the brakes and brake lights are automatically controlled to reduce the vehicle speed and help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision.

■ TRC (Traction Control)

Helps to maintain drive power and prevent the drive wheels from spinning when starting the vehicle or accelerating on slippery roads

■ Active Cornering Assist (ACA)

Helps to prevent the vehicle from drifting to the outer side by performing inner wheel brake control when attempting to accelerate while turning

■ Hill-start assist control

Helps to reduce the backward movement of the vehicle when starting on an uphill

■ EPS (Electric Power Steering)

Employs an electric motor to reduce the amount of effort needed to turn the steering wheel

■ AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) (if equipped)

By independently controlling the damping force of the shock absorbers for each of the 4 wheels according to the road and driving conditions, this system helps riding comfort with superior vehicle stability, and helps good vehicle posture

Also, the damping force changes depending on the selected driving mode. (→P.263)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Emergency brake signal

When the brakes are applied suddenly, the stop lights automatically flash to alert the vehicle behind.

When the TRC/VSC systems are operating

The slip indicator light will flash while the TRC/VSC systems are operating.



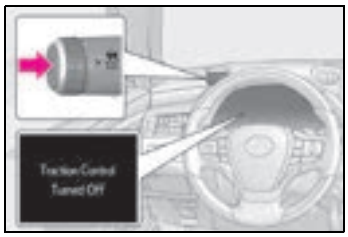
Disabling the TRC system

If the vehicle gets stuck in mud, dirt or snow, the TRC system may reduce power from the engine to the wheels. Pressing the switch to turn the system off may make it easier for you to rock the vehicle in order to free it.

To turn the TRC system off, quickly press and release the switch.

The "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.



Turning off both TRC and VSC systems

To turn the TRC and VSC systems off, press and hold the switch for more than 3 seconds while the vehicle is stopped.

The VSC OFF indicator light will come on and the "Traction Control Turned Off" will be shown on the multi-information display.*

Press the switch again to turn the system back on.

*: On vehicles with PCS (Pre-Collision System), PCS will also be disabled (only Pre-Collision warning is available). The PCS warning light will come on and a message will be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.225)

When the message is displayed on the multi-information display showing that TRC has been disabled even if the switch has not been pressed

TRC is temporary deactivated. If the information continues to show, contact your Lexus dealer.

Operating conditions of hill-start assist control

When all of the following conditions are met, the hill-start assist control will operate:

- The shift lever is in a position other than P or N (when starting off forward/backward on an upward incline).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is not engaged.

Automatic system cancelation of hill-start assist control

The hill-start assist control will turn off in any of the following situations:

- The shift lever is shifted to P or N.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is engaged.
- 2 seconds at maximum elapsed after the brake pedal is released.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Sounds and vibrations caused by the ABS, brake assist, VSC, TRC and hill-start assist control systems**

- A sound may be heard from the engine compartment when the brake pedal is depressed repeatedly, when the engine is started or just after the vehicle begins to move. This sound does not indicate that a malfunction has occurred in any of these systems.
- Any of the following conditions may occur when the above systems are operating. None of these indicates that a malfunction has occurred.
  - Vibrations may be felt through the vehicle body and steering.
  - A motor sound may be heard also after the vehicle comes to a stop.
  - The brake pedal may pulsate slightly after the ABS is activated.
  - The brake pedal may move down slightly after the ABS is activated.

■ **Active Cornering Assist operation sounds and vibrations**

When the Active Cornering Assist is operated, operation sounds and vibrations may be generated from the brake system, but this is not a malfunction.

■ **Automatic reactivation of TRC and VSC systems**

After turning the TRC and VSC systems off, the systems will be automatically re-enabled in the following situations:

- When the engine switch is turned off
- If only the TRC system is turned off, the TRC will turn on when vehicle speed increases

If both the TRC and VSC systems are turned off, automatic re-enabling will not occur when vehicle speed increases.

■ **Secondary Collision Brake operating conditions**

The system operates when the SRS airbag sensor detects a collision while the vehicle is in motion.
However, the system does not operate when the components are damaged.

■ **Secondary Collision Brake automatic cancellation**

The system is automatically canceled in any of the following situations.

- The vehicle speed drops to approximately 10 km/h (6 mph)
- A certain amount of time elapses during operation
- The accelerator pedal is depressed a large amount

■ **Operating conditions of Active Cornering Assist**

The system operates when the following occurs.

- TRC/VSC can operate
- The driver is attempting to accelerate while turning
- The system detects that the vehicle is drifting to the outer side
- The brake pedal is released

■ **Reduced effectiveness of the EPS system**

The effectiveness of the EPS system is reduced to prevent the system from overheating when there is frequent steering input over an extended period of time. The steering wheel may feel heavy as a result.

Should this occur, refrain from excessive steering input or stop the vehicle and turn the engine off. The EPS system should return to normal within 10 minutes.

■ **Operating conditions of emergency brake signal**

When the following conditions are met, the emergency brake signal will operate:

- The emergency flashers are off.
- Actual vehicle speed is over 55 km/h (35 mph).
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that it is a sudden braking operation.

■ **Automatic system cancelation of emergency brake signal**

The emergency brake signal will be can-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

celed in any of the following situations:

- The emergency flashers are turned on.
- The system judges from the vehicle deceleration that is not a sudden braking operation.

WARNING

■ The ABS does not operate effectively when

- The limits of tire gripping performance have been exceeded (such as excessively worn tires on a snow covered road).
- The vehicle hydroplanes while driving at high speed on wet or slick roads.

■ Stopping distance when the ABS is operating may exceed that of normal conditions

The ABS is not designed to shorten the vehicle's stopping distance. Always maintain a safe distance from the vehicle in front of you, especially in the following situations:

- When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads
- When driving with tire chains
- When driving over bumps in the road
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces

■ TRC/VSC may not operate effectively when

Directional control and power may not be achievable while driving on slippery road surfaces, even if the TRC/VSC system is operating.
Drive the vehicle carefully in conditions where stability and power may be lost.

■ Active Cornering Assist does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on Active Cornering Assist. Active Cornering Assist may not operate effectively when accelerating down slopes or driving on slippery road surfaces.
- When Active Cornering Assist frequently operates, Active Cornering Assist may temporarily stop operating to ensure proper operation of the brakes, TRC and VSC.

■ Hill-start assist control does not operate effectively when

- Do not overly rely on hill-start assist control. Hill-start assist control may not operate effectively on steep inclines and roads covered with ice.
- Unlike the parking brake, hill-start assist control is not intended to hold the vehicle stationary for an extended period of time. Do not attempt to use hill-start assist control to hold the vehicle on an incline, as doing so may lead to an accident.

■ When the TRC/VSC is activated

The slip indicator light flashes. Always drive carefully. Reckless driving may cause an accident. Exercise particular care when the indicator light flashes.

■ When the TRC/VSC systems are turned off

Be especially careful and drive at a speed appropriate to the road conditions. As these are the systems to help ensure vehicle stability and driving force, do not turn the TRC/VSC systems off unless necessary.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ Secondary Collision Brake

Do not rely solely upon the Secondary Collision Brake. This system is designed to help reduce the possibility of further damage due to a secondary collision, however, that effect changes according to various conditions. Overly relying on the system may result in death or serious injury.

■ Replacing tires

Make sure that all tires are of the specified size, brand, tread pattern and total load capacity. In addition, make sure that the tires are inflated to the recommended tire inflation pressure level.

The ABS, TRC and VSC systems will not function correctly if different tires are installed on the vehicle.
Contact your Lexus dealer for further information when replacing tires or wheels.

■ Handling of tires and the suspension

Using tires with any kind of problem or modifying the suspension will affect the driving assist systems, and may cause a system to malfunction.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Winter driving tips

Carry out the necessary preparations and inspections before driving the vehicle in winter. Always drive the vehicle in a manner appropriate to the prevailing weather conditions.

Preparation for winter

- Use fluids that are appropriate to the prevailing outside temperatures.
  - Engine oil
  - Engine coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Have a service technician inspect the condition of the battery.
- Have the vehicle fitted with four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for the front tires.*

Ensure that all tires are the specified size and brand, and that chains match the size of the tires.

*: Tire chains cannot be mounted on vehicles with 18-inch tires/19-inch tires.

WARNING

■ Driving with snow tires

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.
Failure to do so may result in a loss of vehicle control and cause death or serious injury.

- Use tires of the specified size.
- Maintain the recommended level of air pressure.
- Do not drive at speeds in excess of the speed limit or the speed limit specified for the snow tires being used.
- Use snow tires on all, not just some wheels.

■ Driving with tire chains (vehicles with 17-inch tires)

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents.

Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Do not drive in excess of the speed limit specified for the tire chains being used, or 50 km/h (30 mph), whichever is lower.
- Avoid driving on bumpy road surfaces or over potholes.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.
- Slow down sufficiently before entering a curve to ensure that vehicle control is maintained.
- Do not use LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) system. (if equipped)

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing snow tires

Request repairs or replacement of snow tires from Lexus dealers or legitimate tire retailers.
This is because the removal and attachment of snow tires affects the operation of the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters.

Before driving the vehicle

Perform the following according to the driving conditions:

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Do not try to forcibly open a window or move a wiper that is frozen. Pour warm water over the frozen area to melt the ice. Wipe away the water immediately to prevent it from freezing.
- To ensure proper operation of the climate control system fan, remove any snow that has accumulated on the air inlet vents in front of the windshield.
- Check for and remove any excess ice or snow that may have accumulated on the exterior lights, vehicle's roof, chassis, around the tires or on the brakes.
- Remove any snow or mud from the bottom of your shoes before getting in the vehicle.

■ To protect windshield wipers

→P.205

When driving the vehicle

Accelerate the vehicle slowly, keep a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead, and drive at a reduced speed suitable to road conditions.

When parking the vehicle

- Park the vehicle and move the shift lever to P without setting the parking brake. The parking brake may freeze up, preventing it from being released. If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, make sure to block the wheels. Failure to do so may be dangerous because it may cause the vehicle to move unexpectedly, possibly leading to an accident.

When the parking brake is in automatic mode, release the parking brake after shifting the shift lever to P. (→P.185)

- If the vehicle is left parked with the brakes damp in cold temperatures, there is a possibility of the brakes freezing.
- If the vehicle is parked without setting the parking brake, confirm that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P*.

*: The shift lever will be locked if it is attempted to be shifted from P to any other position without depressing the brake pedal. If the shift lever can be shifted from P, there may be a problem with the shift lock system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

WARNING

■ When parking the vehicle

When parking the vehicle without applying the parking brake, make sure to chock the wheels. If you do not chock the wheels, the vehicle may move unexpectedly, possibly resulting in an accident.

Selecting tire chains

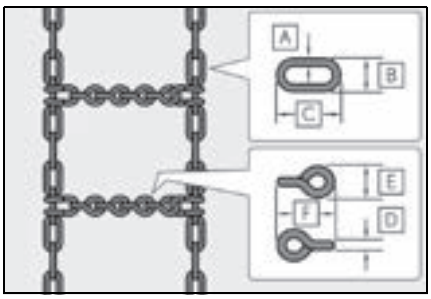
▶ Vehicles with 17-inch tires

Use the correct tire chain size when mounting the tire chains.

Chain size is regulated for each tire size.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



Side chain:

A 3 mm (0.12 in.) in diameter

B 10 mm (0.39 in.) in width

C 30 mm (1.18 in.) in length

Cross chain:

D 4 mm (0.16 in.) in diameter

E 14 mm (0.55 in.) in width

F 25 mm (0.98 in.) in length

▶ Vehicles with 18-inch tires/19-inch tires

Tire chains cannot be mounted.Snow tires should be used instead.

Regulations on the use of tire chains (Vehicles with 17-inch tires)

Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing chains.

Tire chain installation

Observe the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe location.
- Install tire chains on the front tires. Do not install tire chains on the rear tires.
- Install tire chains on front tires as tightly as possible. Retighten chains after driving 0.5 - 1.0 km (1/4 - 1/2 mile).
- Install tire chains following the instructions provided with the tire chains.

NOTICE

Fitting tire chains (vehicles with 17-inch tires)

The tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not function correctly when tire chains are fitted.

Windshield wipers

To enable the windshield wipers to be lifted when heavy snow or icy conditions are expected, change the rest position of the windshield wipers from the retracted position below the hood to the service position using the wiper lever. (→P.205)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Eco-friendly driving tips

For improved fuel economy and reduced CO_2 emissions, pay attention to the following points:

Using Eco drive mode

When using Eco drive mode, the torque corresponding to the accelerator pedal depression amount can be generated more smoothly than it is in normal conditions. In addition, the operation of the air conditioning system (heating/cooling) will be minimized, improving the fuel economy. (→P.263)

Use of Eco Driving Indicator

The Eco-friendly driving is possible by keeping the bar display of the Eco Driving Indicator shown in the multi-information display within the Zone of Eco driving. (→P.108)

Accelerator pedal/brake pedal operation

Drive your vehicle smoothly. Avoid abrupt acceleration and deceleration. Gradual acceleration and deceleration will help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

When braking

Observe conditions in front of and around the vehicle, and estimate your stopping position. Release the accelerator pedal early and continue coasting. Use the brake pedal to adjust your stopping position. Make sure to operate the brake pedal gently.

Delays

Repeated acceleration and deceleration, as well as long waits at traffic lights, will lead to bad fuel economy. Check traffic reports before leaving and avoid delays as much as possible.

Highway driving

Control and maintain the vehicle at a constant speed. Before stopping at a toll booth or similar, allow plenty of time to release the accelerator pedal and gently apply the brakes.

Air conditioning

Use the air conditioning only when necessary. Doing so can help reduce excessive fuel consumption.

In summer: When the ambient temperature is high, use the recirculated air mode. Doing so will help to reduce the burden on the air conditioning system and reduce fuel consumption as well.

In winter: Turn the A/C switch on only when both heating and dehumidifying are needed, and if only heating is needed, turn the A/C switch off. Turning the A/C switch on when unneces-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

sary leads to excessive fuel consumption.

Performing idling stops

- Avoid unnecessary idling. Stop the engine when parking the vehicle to reduce excessive fuel consumption, even it is only for a short period of time.
- Except in severe environment, such as when the outside temperature is extremely low, warming up the engine before driving is unnecessary. Rather than idling, it is more efficient to drive the vehicle gently to warm up each part while avoiding increasing the engine revolutions unnecessarily and accelerating or decelerating suddenly.

Luggage

Carrying heavy luggage will lead to poor fuel economy. Avoid carrying unnecessary luggage. Installing a large roof rack will also cause poor fuel economy.

Regular maintenance

- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure frequently. Improper tire inflation pressure can cause poor fuel economy. Also, as snow tires can cause large amounts of friction, their use on dry roads can lead to poor fuel economy. Use tires that are appropriate for the season and road conditions.
- Use oil and fluid of the recommended quality, which affect fuel consumption and the life of the vehicle. Also, check oil and fluid periodically. (→P.360)

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو (سهامی خاص مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

5-1. Lexus Climate Concierge

Lexus Climate Concierge..... 312

5-2. Using the air conditioning system

Automatic air conditioning system..... 313

Heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators..... 322

5-3. Using the interior lights

Interior lights list..... 325

5-4. Using the storage features

List of storage features 328

Trunk features..... 331

5-5. Using the other interior features

Other interior features 333

Garage door opener..... 345

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Lexus Climate Concierge

The front seat heaters (if equipped), seat ventilators (if equipped) and heated steering wheel (if equipped) are each automatically controlled according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside and cabin temperature, etc. Lexus Climate Concierge allows a comfortable condition to be maintained without adjusting each system.

Lexus Climate Concierge can be operated using the air conditioning control screen on the Center Display (→P.317).

Turning on Lexus Climate Concierge

1. Select in the main menu on the Center Display.
2. Select "Climate".
3. Select "Front".
4. Select "Climate concierge".

The indicator on the air conditioning control screen illuminates, and the automatic air conditioning system, front seat heaters and ventilators and heated steering wheel operate in automatic mode.

If any of the system is operated manually, the indicator turns off. However, all other functions continue to operate in automatic mode.

Operation of each system

■ **Automatic air conditioning system (→P.313)**

The temperature can be adjusted individually for the driver seat and passenger seat.

■ **Front seat heaters (if equipped) and ventilators (if equipped) (→P.322)**

Heating or ventilation is automatically selected according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, etc. Also, heating and ventilation may turn off.

The seat heater and ventilator of the front passenger seat operate in automatic mode if a passenger is detected.

■ **Heated steering wheel (if equipped) (→P.322)**

Heated steering wheel operates automatically according to the set temperature of the air conditioning system, the outside temperature, etc.

■ **Front seat heater/ventilator operation**

When automatic mode is selected using the front seat heater/ventilator switch, passenger detection is not performed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Automatic air conditioning system

Air outlets and fan speed are automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting.

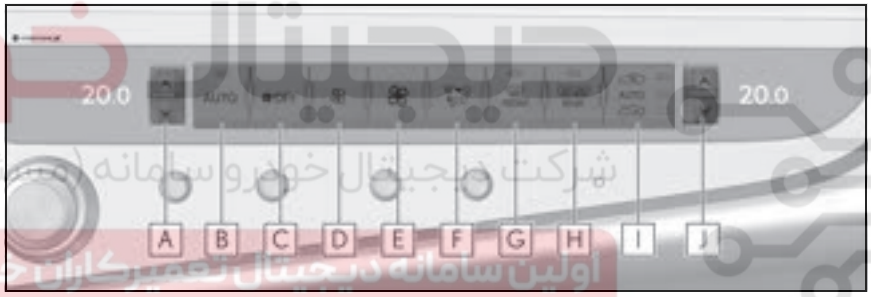
The air conditioning system can be operated using the air conditioning control panel and air conditioning control screen on the Center Display (→P.317).

The illustrations below are for left-hand drive vehicles.

The button positions and shapes will differ for right-hand drive vehicles.

Also, the display and button positions will differ depending on the type of the system.

Air conditioning controls (front)



A Left-hand side temperature control switch

B Automatic mode switch

C Off switch

D Fan speed decrease switch

E Fan speed increase switch

F Airflow mode control switch

G Windshield defogger switch

H Rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch

I Outside/recirculated air mode switch

J Right-hand side temperature control switch

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Adjusting the temperature

Operate the temperature control switch upwards to increase the temperature and downwards to decrease the temperature.

If the "A/C" indicator is turned off, the system will blow ambient temperature air or heated air.

Setting the fan speed

Operate the fan speed increase switch to increase the fan speed and the fan speed decrease switch to decrease the fan speed.

Press the off switch to turn the fan off.

Changing the air flow mode

Press the airflow mode control switch.

The mode changes as follows each time the switch is pressed. (→P.317)

Switching between outside air and recirculated air modes

Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch.

The mode changes as follows each time the switch is pressed.

(recirculated air mode) → automatic mode* → (outside air mode) → (recirculated air mode)

When the system is switched to automatic mode, the air conditioning system operates automatically.

*: This item cannot be selected when the air conditioning is off.

Defogging the windshield

Defoggers are used to defog the windshield and front side windows.

Press the windshield defogger switch.

Set the outside/recirculated air mode switch to outside air mode if the recirculated air mode is used. (It may switch automatically.)

To defog the windshield and the side windows early, turn the air flow and temperature up.

To return to the previous mode, press the windshield defogger switch again when the windshield is defogged.

Defogging the rear window and outside rear view mirrors

Defoggers are used to defog the rear window, and to remove raindrops, dew and frost from the outside rear view mirrors.

Press the rear window defogger and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch.

The defoggers will automatically turn off after 15 to 60 minutes. The operation time changes according to the ambient temperature and vehicle speed.

Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

→P.318

When the outside temperature exceeds 24°C (75°F) and the air conditioning system is on (for GCC countries*, Iraq, Egypt, Yemen, Lebanon and Jordan)

- In order to reduce the air conditioning power consumption, the air conditioning system may switch to recirculated air mode automatically. This may also reduce fuel consumption.
- Recirculated air mode is selected as a default mode when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- It is possible to switch to outside air mode at any time by pressing the outside/recirculated air mode switch.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

Fogging up of the windows

The windows will easily fog up when the humidity in the vehicle is high. Turning "A/C" on will dehumidify the air from the outlets and defog the windshield effectively.

- If you turn "A/C" off, the windows may fog up more easily.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculated air mode is used.

When driving on dusty roads

Close all windows. If dust thrown up by the vehicle is still drawn into the vehicle after closing the windows, it is recommended that the air intake mode be set to outside air mode and the fan speed to any setting except off.

Outside/recirculated air mode

- Setting to the recirculated air mode temporarily is recommended in preventing dirty air from entering the vehicle interior and helping to cool the vehicle when the outside air temperature is high.
- Outside/recirculated air mode may automatically switch regardless of the air conditioning setting depending on the temperature setting or inside temperature.

Registering air conditioning settings to electronic keys

- Unlocking the vehicle using an electronic key and turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode will recall that key's registered air conditioning settings.
- When the engine switch is turned off, the current air conditioning settings will automatically be registered to the electronic key that was used to unlock the vehicle.
- The system may not operate correctly if more than one electronic key is in the vicinity or if the smart entry & start system is used to unlock the passenger door.
- Vehicles with the driving position memory: The doors that can recall the air conditioning setting* when unlocked using the smart entry & start system can be changed. For details, contact your Lexus dealer.

*: The doors that can recall the driving position memory are changed at the same time.

Operation of the air conditioning system in Eco drive mode

In Eco drive mode, the air conditioning system is controlled as follows to prioritize fuel efficiency:

- Engine speed and compressor operation controlled to restrict heating/cooling capacity
- Fan speed restricted when automatic mode is selected

To improve air conditioning performance, perform the following operations:

- Turn off eco air conditioning mode (→P.318)
- Adjust the fan speed
- Turn off Eco drive mode (→P.263)

If the windshield is fogged up while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (if equipped)

→P.267

If an odor comes from the air conditioning system while the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system (if equipped)

→P.267

Air conditioning system operation while the engine is stopped by the Stop & Start system (if equipped)

→P.267

Changing the idling stop time with the air conditioning system on (if equipped)

→P.268

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ When the outside temperature falls to nearly 0°C (32°F)

The dehumidification function may not operate even when "A/C" is selected.

■ Ventilation and air conditioning odors

- To let fresh air in, set the air conditioning system to the outside air mode.
- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter into and accumulate in the air conditioning system. This may then cause odor to be emitted from the vents.
- To reduce potential odors from occurring:
  - It is recommended that the air conditioning system be set to outside air mode prior to turning the vehicle off.
  - The start timing of the blower may be delayed for a short period of time immediately after the air conditioning system is started in automatic mode.
- Except for GCC countries*, Iraq, Egypt, Yemen, Lebanon and Jordan: When parking, the system automatically switches to fresh air intake mode to encourage better air circulation throughout the vehicle, helping to reduce odors that occur when starting the vehicle.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

■ Using the voice control system

Air conditioning system can be operated using voice commands. For details, refer to he "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

■ Air conditioning filter

→P.393

■ Customization

Settings (e.g. A/C auto switch operation) can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.462)

WARNING

■ To prevent the windshield from fogging up

Do not use the windshield defogger switch during cool air operation in extremely humid weather. The difference between the temperature of the outside air and that of the windshield can cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, blocking your vision.

■ When the outside rear view mirror defoggers are operating

Do not touch the outside rear view mirror surfaces, as they can become very hot and burn you.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the air conditioning system on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Air conditioning controls (rear) (if equipped)



A Temperature control switch

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Adjusting the temperature

Press "∧" on the switch to increase the temperature and "∨" to decrease the temperature.

Air conditioning control screen

Front air conditioning control screen

1 Select in the main menu on the Center Display.

2 Select "Climate".

3 Select "Front".



A Sub menu

Selecting the sub menu item to switch the screen display.

"Front": Display the air conditioning control screen

"Rear" (if equipped): Display the rear air conditioning control screen

"Options": Display the option screen

B Select the air flow mode

Each time the switch is selected, the airflow mode is changed.

: Air flows to the upper body

: Air flows to the upper body and feet

: Air flows to the feet

: Air flows to the feet and the windshield defogger operates

C Turn the function on/off

Each of the following functions can be switched on and off.

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

"A/C": Set cooling and dehumidification function

"SYNC": Adjust the temperature for driver seat, front passenger seat and rear passenger seats (vehicles with rear air conditioning controls) simultaneously ("SYNC" mode) (→P.320)

(if equipped): Select front seat concentrated air flow mode (S-FLOW) (→P.319)

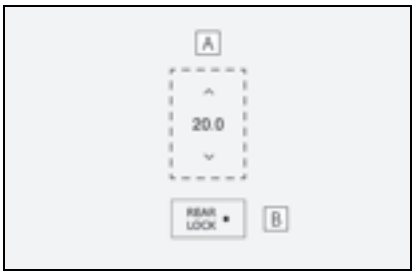
"Climate concierge": Set Lexus Climate Concierge (→P.312)

D Fan speed level display

The current fan speed level is displayed.

Rear air conditioning control screen (if equipped)

Select "Rear" on the air conditioning control screen (→P.317).



A Adjusting the temperature

5 Interior features

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

B Disables operation of the rear air conditioning system using the rear air conditioning controls.

When the function is on, the indicator illuminates on the control screen.

Option screen

Select "Options" on the air conditioning control screen (→P.317).

The functions can be switched (on) and (off), or the function settings can be selected from multiple options.



A Set eco air conditioning mode

Air conditioning and heater output is limited to prioritize fuel economy.

B Prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades (Windshield wiper de-icer) (if equipped)

C nanoe™ X* on/off (if equipped)

nanoe™ X is a nanoe™ generator.

*: nanoe™ and the nanoe™ mark are trademarks of Panasonic Corporation.

Windshield wiper de-icer (if equipped)

This feature is used to prevent ice from building up on the windshield and wiper blades.

The windshield wiper de-icer will automatically turn off after approximately 15 minutes.

Eco air conditioning mode

When Eco drive mode is selected using the Driving Mode Select switch, eco air conditioning mode turns on.

When a drive mode other than Eco drive mode is selected, eco air conditioning mode may turn off.

nanoe™ X (if equipped)

The air conditioning system adopts nanoe™ generator. This helps to fill the cabin with refreshing air by emitting slightly acidic nanoe™ coated with water particles through the front center vent on driver's side*.

- When the fan is turned on and nanoe™ X on the option screen is selected, the nanoe™ X is activated.
- When the fan is operated in the following conditions, system performance will be maximized. If the following conditions are not met, performance will be limited.
  - The , or air outlets are being used.
  - The front center vent on driver's side is open.
- When nanoe™ is generated, a small amount of ozone is emitted and may be faintly smelled in some situations. However, this is approximately the same as the amount that already exists in nature, such as in forests, and it has no affect on the human body.
- A slight noise may be heard during operation. This is not a malfunction.

*: According to temperature and humidity conditions, fan speed and direction of the air flow, the nanoe™ system may not operate at full capacity.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ To prevent burns (vehicles with windshield wiper de-icer)

Do not touch the glass at lower part of the windshield or to the side of the front pillars when the windshield wiper de-icer is on.

■ nanoe™ X (if equipped)

Do not disassemble or repair the generator because it contains high voltage parts. Contact your Lexus dealer if the generator needs repair.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the nanoe™ X (if equipped)

Do not insert anything into the front center vent on driver's side, attach anything to it, or use sprays around the front center vent on driver's side. These things may cause the generator not to work properly.

Using automatic mode

1 Press the automatic mode switch.

2 Press the outside/recirculated air mode switch to switch to automatic air intake mode.

The air conditioning system automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

3 Adjust the temperature setting.

4 To stop the operation, press the off switch.

If the fan speed setting or air flow modes are operated, the automatic mode indicator goes off. However, automatic mode for functions other than that operated is maintained.

■ Using automatic mode

Fan speed is adjusted automatically according to the temperature setting and the ambient conditions.

Therefore, the fan may stop for a while until warm or cool air is ready to flow immediately after the automatic mode switch is pressed.

Cool air may blow around the upper body even when the heater is on due to sunlight.

■ Automatic mode for air intake control

In automatic mode, the system detects exhaust gas and other pollutants and automatically switches between outside air and recirculated air modes.

When the dehumidification function is off, and the fan is operating, turning automatic mode on will activate the dehumidification function. The next time the dehumidification function is turned off, the automatic mode for switching between outside air and recirculated air modes is canceled.

Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) (if equipped)

This function automatically controls the air conditioning airflow so that priority is given to the front seats. When the front passenger seat is not occupied, airflow may switch to only the driver's seat. Unnecessary air conditioning is suppressed, contributing to increased fuel efficiency.

Front seat concentrated airflow mode operates in the following situations.

- No passengers are detected in the rear seats
- The windshield defogger is not operating

While operating, the indicator on the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

switch will turn on.

■ Manually turning front seat concentrated airflow mode on/off

In front seat concentrated airflow mode, directing airflow to the front seats only and to all seats can be switched via switch operation. When the mode has been switched manually, automatic airflow control stops operating.

Select on the air conditioning control screen and switch the airflow.

- Indicator illuminated: Airflow to the front seats only
- Indicator off: Airflow to all the seats

■ Operation of automatic airflow control

- In order to maintain a comfortable interior, airflow may be directed to seats without passengers immediately after the engine is started and at other times depending on the outside temperature.
- After the engine is started, if passengers move around inside or enter/exit the vehicle, the system cannot accurately detect the presence of passengers and automatic airflow control will not operate.

■ Operation of manual airflow control

Even if the function is manually switched to directing airflow to only the front seats, when a rear seat is occupied, it may automatically direct airflow to all seats.

■ To return to automatic airflow control

1. With the indicator off, turn the engine switch off.
2. After 60 minutes or more elapse, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

Adjusting the temperature for driver seat, front passenger seat and rear passenger seats (vehicles with rear air conditioning controls) simultaneously ("SYNC" mode)

To turn on the "SYNC" mode, select the "SYNC" on the air conditioning control screen.

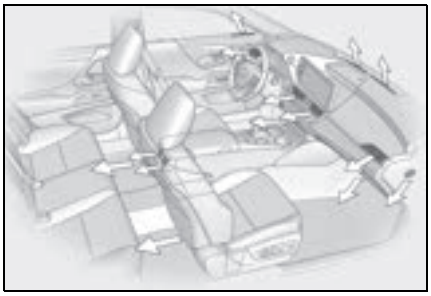
The driver's side temperature control switches can be used to adjust the temperature for the driver's seat, front passenger's seat and rear passenger seats (vehicles with rear air conditioning controls) side. To enter individual mode, operate the passenger's side temperature control switches or select the "SYNC" again.

The indicator on the air conditioning control screen comes on when the "SYNC" mode is on.

Air outlet layout and operations

■ Location of air outlets

The air outlets and air volume changes according to the selected air flow mode.

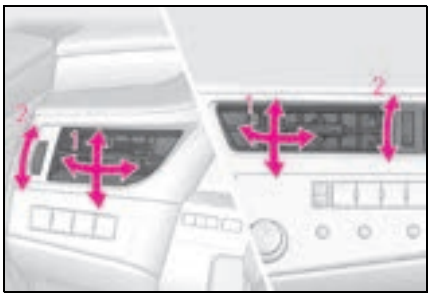


WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Adjusting the air flow direction and opening/closing the air outlets**

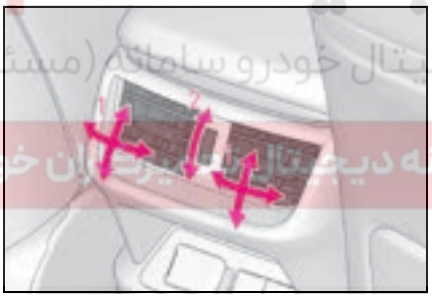
▶ Front center/front side



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

▶ Rear



1 Direct air flow to the left or right, up or down

2 Turn the knob to open or close the vent

WARNING

■ **To prevent the windshield defogger from operating improperly**

Do not place anything on the instrument panel which may cover the air outlets. Otherwise, air flow may be obstructed, preventing the windshield defoggers from defogging.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Heated steering wheel*/seat heaters*/seat ventilators*

*: If equipped

● Heated steering wheel

Warms up the grip of the steering wheel

● Seat heaters

Warm up the seat upholstery

● Seat ventilators

Maintain good air flow on the seat upholstery by sucking air into the seats

The heated steering wheel/seat heaters/seat ventilators can be operated using the switches and control screen on the Center Display (→P.324).

WARNING

■ To prevent minor burn injuries

Care should be taken if anyone in the following categories comes in contact with the steering wheel or seats when the heater is on:

- Babies, small children, the elderly, the sick and the physically challenged
- Persons with sensitive skin
- Persons who are fatigued
- Persons who have taken alcohol or drugs that induce sleep (sleeping drugs, cold remedies, etc.)

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the seat heaters and seat ventilators

Do not put heavy objects that have an uneven surface on the seat and do not stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) into the seat.

■ To prevent battery discharge

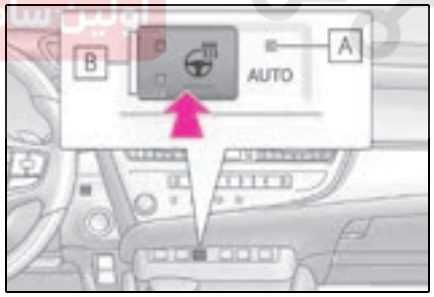
Do not use the functions when the engine is off.

Heated steering wheel

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO (lit) → Hi (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator [A] and/or level indicator [B] illuminates during operation.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ When AUTO mode is selected

The heated steering wheel function may turn off according to the air conditioning set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Stored settings

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the stored settings are recalled.

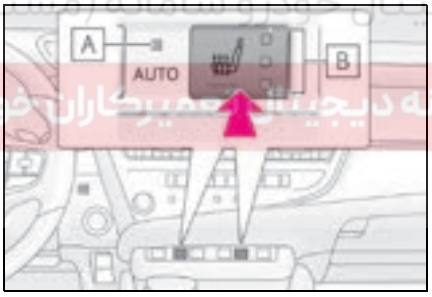
Seat heaters/seat ventilators

■ Front seat heaters

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator A and/or level indicator B illuminates during operation.

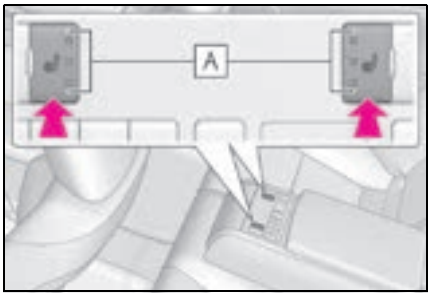
When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ Rear seat heaters (if equipped)

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The level indicator A illuminates during operation.

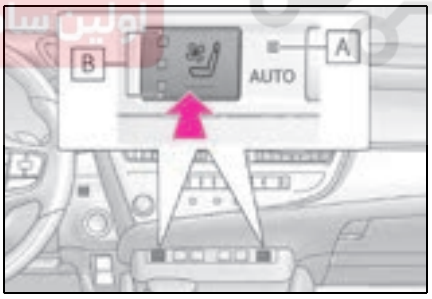


■ Seat ventilators

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.
AUTO (lit) → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

The AUTO indicator A and/or level indicator B illuminates during operation.

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.



■ Operation condition

The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.

■ Air conditioning system-linked control mode

When the seat ventilator fan speed level is Hi (when "AUTO" is selected), the seat ventilator fan speed becomes higher according to the fan speed of the air conditioning system.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **When AUTO mode is selected**

The following functions may turn off according to the air conditioning set temperature, outside temperature, etc.

- Front seat heaters
- Seat ventilators

■ **Stored settings**

When the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the stored settings of the following functions are recalled.

- Front seat heaters
- Seat ventilators

WARNING

■ **To prevent causes of overheating and minor burn injuries**

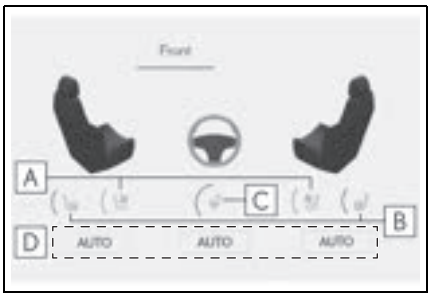
Observe the following precautions when using a seat heater:

- Do not cover the seat with a blanket or cushion when using the seat heater.
- Do not use seat heater more than necessary.

Control screen

1 Select in the main menu on the Center Display.

2 Select "Comfort".



A Adjust the seat ventilator fan speed level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.

B Adjust the front seat heater temperature level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (3 segments lit) → Mid (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

When in the AUTO mode, the seat heaters or seat ventilators automatically operate according to circumstances.

C Adjust the heated steering wheel temperature level

Each time the switch is pressed, the operation condition changes as follows.

AUTO → Hi (2 segments lit) → Lo (1 segment lit) → Off

D Set the automatic mode

The following functions can be set to automatic mode respectively.

When the automatic mode is on, the switch on the screen illuminates.

- Left-hand side front seat heater/seat ventilator
- Right-hand side front seat heater/seat ventilator
- Heated steering wheel

■ **Customization**

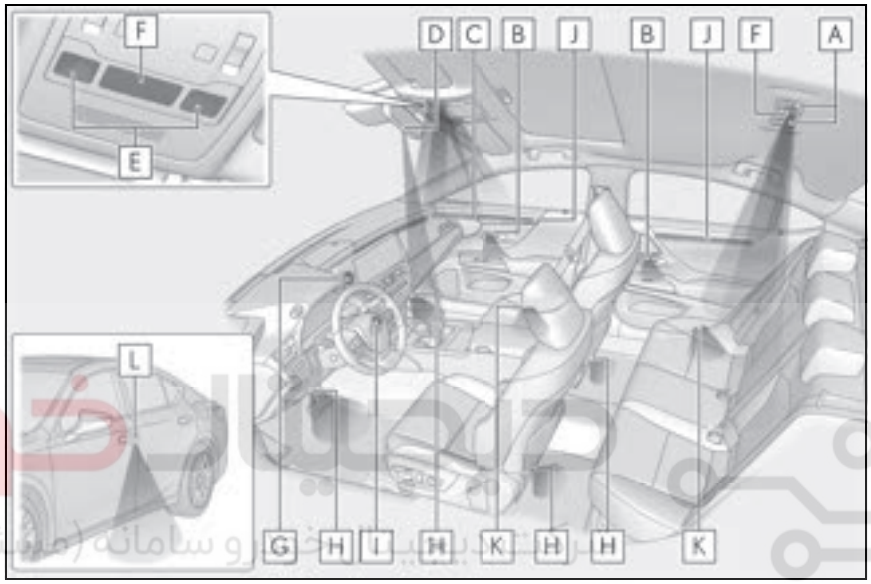
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode and the automatic mode settings for the seat heaters and ventilators can be changed. (Customizable features: →P.462)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Interior lights list

Location of the interior lights



A Rear personal lights (→P.326)
B Inside door handle lights (if equipped)
C Instrument panel ornament lights (if equipped)
D Shift lever light
E Front personal lights (→P.326)
F Interior lights (→P.326)
G Clock light
H Footwell lights
I Engine switch illumination
J Door trim ornament lights (if equipped)
K Door courtesy lights
L Outer foot lights

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

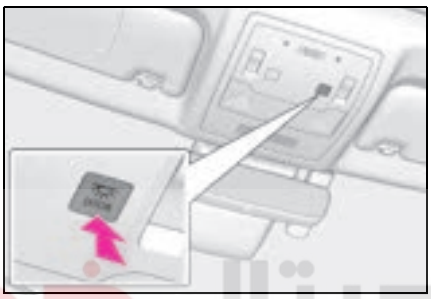
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Operating the interior lights

Turning the door position on

Press the door-linked interior light switch

The lights are turned on and off according to whether the doors are opened/closed.

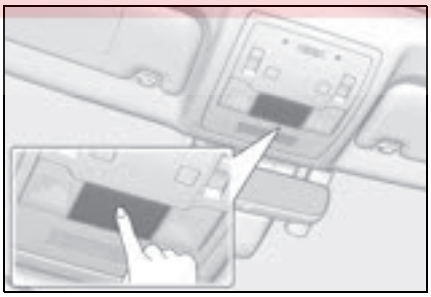


Turning the lights on/off

Turns the lights on/off (touch the light)

The rear interior light turns on/off together with the front interior light.

When a door is opened while the door position is on, the lights turn on.

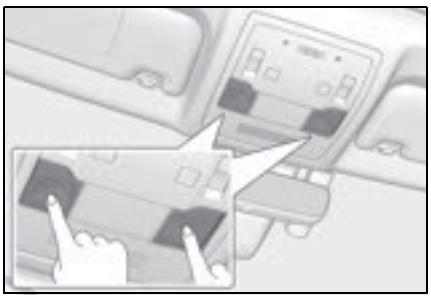


Operating the personal lights

Turning the lights on/off

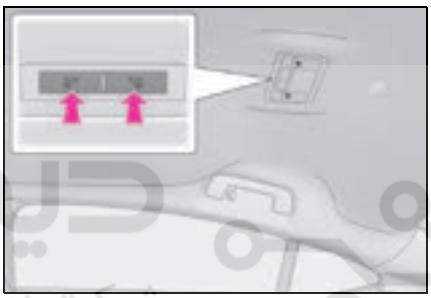
▶ Front

Turns the lights on/off (touch the light)



▶ Rear

Turns the lights on/off



Illuminated entry system

The lights automatically turn on/off according to the engine switch mode, the presence of the electronic key, whether the doors are locked/unlocked, and whether the doors are opened/closed.

To prevent the battery from being discharged

If the interior lights remain on when the engine switch is turned off, the lights will go off automatically after 20 minutes.

When front interior light or front personal lights do not respond as normal

- When water, dirt, etc., have adhered to the lens surface
- When operated with a wet hand
- When wearing gloves, etc.

The interior lights will turn on automatically when

If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

interior lights will turn on automatically.

The interior lights will turn off automatically after approximately 20 minutes. The interior lights can be turned off manually. However, in order to help prevent further collisions, it is recommended that they be left on until safety can be ensured. (The interior lights may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

Customization

Some functions can be customized. (Customizable features:→P.462)

NOTICE

To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is not running.

Removing light lenses

Never remove the lens for the front interior light and front personal lights. Otherwise, the lights will be damaged. If a lens needs to be removed, contact your Lexus dealer.

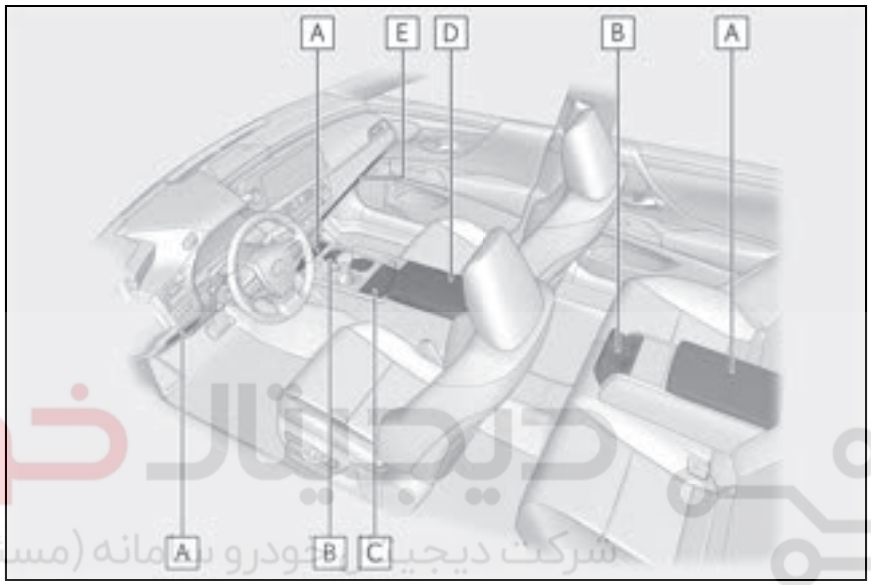
دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو (سهامی خاص)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

List of storage features

Location of the storage features



A Auxiliary boxes (→P.330)

B Cup holders (→P.329)

C Open tray (if equipped) (→P.331) Wireless charger (if equipped) (→P.335)

D Console box (→P.329)

E Glove box (→P.329)

WARNING

■ **Items that should not be left in the vehicle**

Do not leave glasses, lighters or spray cans in the storage spaces, as this may cause the following when cabin temperature becomes high:

- Glasses may be deformed by heat or cracked if they come into contact with other stored items.
- Lighters or spray cans may explode. If they come into contact with other stored items, the lighter may catch fire or the spray can may release gas, causing a fire hazard.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

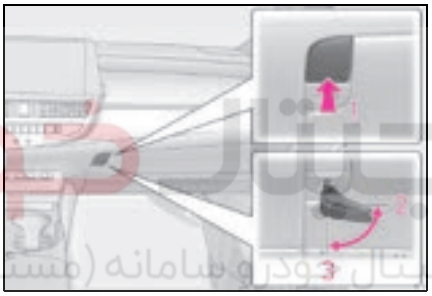
WARNING

■ When the storage compartments are not in use

When driving or when the storage compartments are not in use, keep the lids closed.

In the event of sudden braking or sudden swerving, an accident may occur due to an occupant being struck by an open lid or the items stored inside.

Glove box



1 Open (press the glove box opener)
2 Unlock with the mechanical key
3 Lock with the mechanical key

■ Glove box light

The glove box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

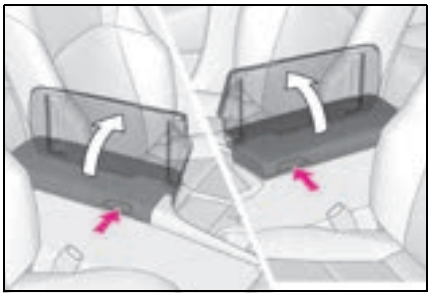
■ Trunk opener main switch

→P.135

Console box

Press a button to open the console box.

The console box can be opened from either side.



■ Console box light

The console box light turns on when the tail lights are on.

WARNING

■ Caution while driving

Keep the console box closed.

Injuries may result in the event of an accident or sudden braking.

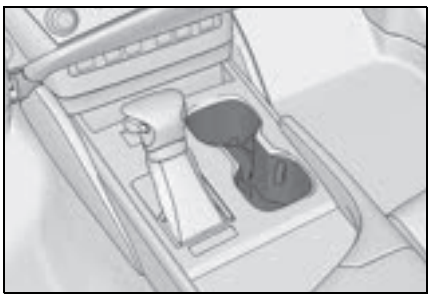
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the console box

When the console box is open, do not apply excessive force in the direction that it was opened.

Cup holders

▶ Front

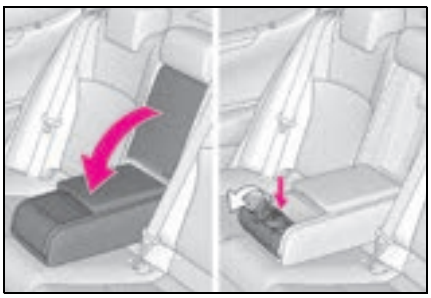


WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Rear

To open, pull down the armrest and press in and release the rear cup holder on the armrest.



■ When stowing the rear cup holders

Stow the cup holder with the armrest down. The cup holder cannot be stowed if the armrest is not down.

WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the cup holder

Do not place anything other than cups or beverage cans in the cup holders. Even when the lid is closed, items must not be stored in the cup holders.

Other items may be thrown out of the holder in the event of an accident or sudden braking, causing injury. If possible, cover hot drinks to prevent burns.

NOTICE

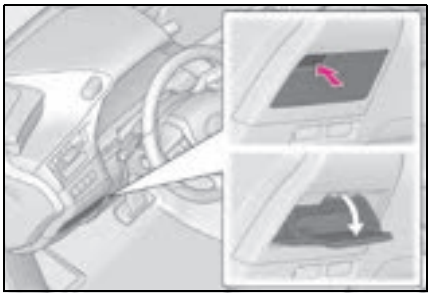
■ To prevent damage to the cup holder

Stow the rear cup holder before stowing the armrest.

Auxiliary boxes

▶ Instrument panel

Press in the button.

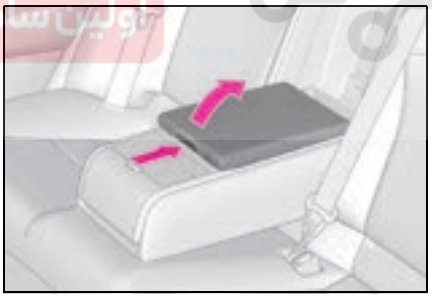


▶ Front



▶ Rear

Pull the armrest down then press the knob to open the lid.

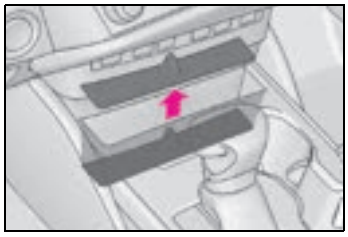


■ Auxiliary box (front)

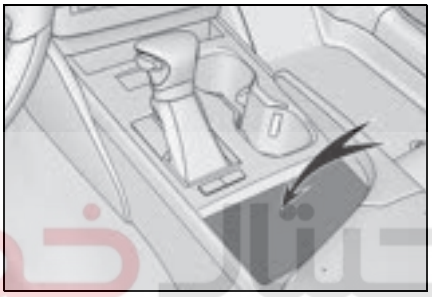
The insole for the auxiliary box can be removed for cleaning.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



Open tray (if equipped)



WARNING

■ Items unsuitable for the open tray

Observe the following precautions when putting items in the open tray. Failure to do so may cause items to be thrown out of the tray in the event of sudden braking or steering. In these cases, the items may interfere with pedal operation or cause driver distraction, resulting in an accident.

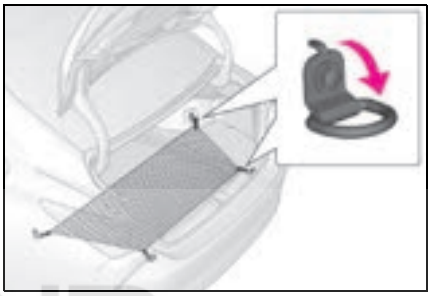
- Do not store items in the tray that can easily shift or roll out.
- Do not stack items in the tray higher than the tray's edge.
- Do not put items in the tray that may protrude over the tray's edge.

Trunk features

Cargo hooks

Raise the hooks when needed.

The cargo hooks are provided for securing loose items.

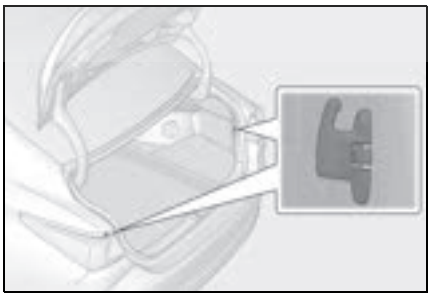


WARNING

■ When the cargo hooks are not in use

To avoid injury, always return the cargo hooks to their stowed positions when not in use.

Grocery bag hooks

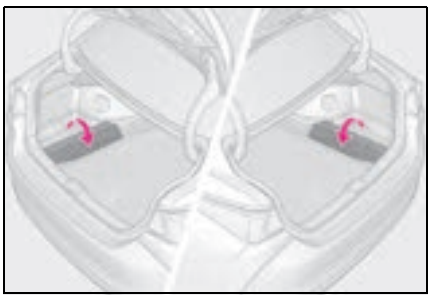


Luggage mat

Lift the luggage mat up.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



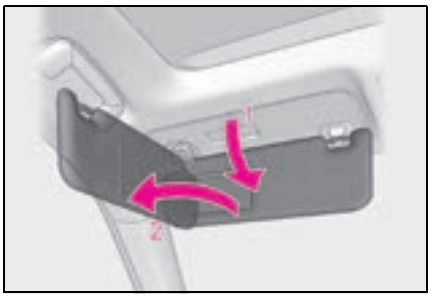
دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Other interior features

Sun visors



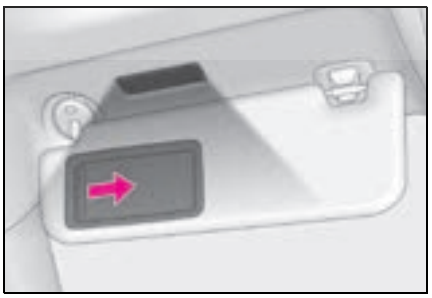
1 To set the visor in the forward position, flip it down.

2 To set the visor in the side position, flip down, unhook, and swing it to the side.

Vanity mirrors

Slide the cover to open.

The light turns on when the cover is opened.



NOTICE

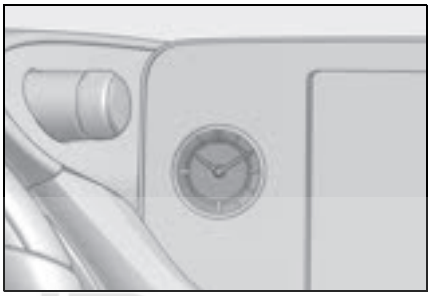
■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not leave the lights on longer than necessary when the engine is off.

Clock

The GPS clock's time is automatically adjusted by utilizing GPS time information.

For details, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

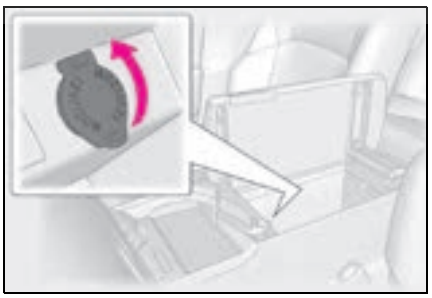


Power outlets

Please use as a power supply for electronic goods that use less than 12 VDC/10 A (power consumption of 120 W).

▶ Front

Open the lid.

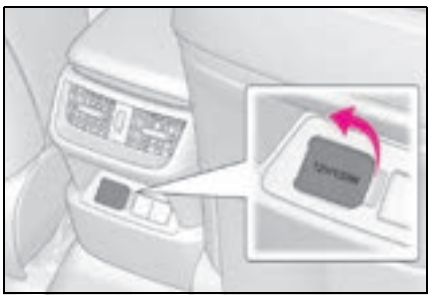


▶ Rear

Open the lid.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



■ **The power outlet can be used when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **When turning the engine switch off**

Disconnect electrical devices with charging functions, such as mobile battery packs.

If such devices are left connected, the engine switch may not be turned off normally.

■ **Using the power outlet**

The shape of the console box partition allows power cables to be passed through when the console box lid is partially closed.



NOTICE

■ **When the power outlet is not in use**

To avoid damaging the power outlet, close the power outlet lid when the power outlet is not in use. Foreign objects or liquids that enter the power outlet may cause a short circuit.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is off.

USB Type-C charging ports

The USB Type-C charging ports are used to supply 3 A of electricity at 5 V to external devices.

The USB Type-C charging ports are for charging only. They are not designed for data transfer or other purposes.

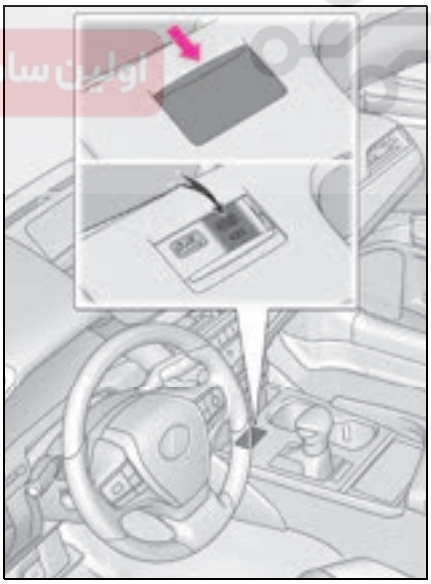
Depending on the external device, it may not charge properly. Refer to the manual included with the device before using a USB Type-C charging port.

■ **Using the USB Type-C charging ports**

▶ Front

Open the lid

To close, press in and release the lid.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

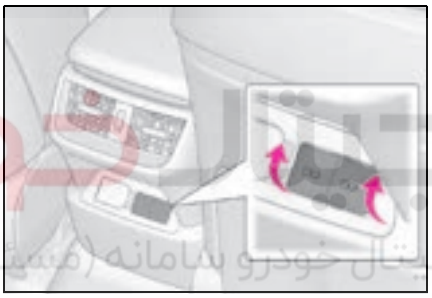
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Inside of console box



▶ Rear

Open the lid.



■ **The USB Type-C charging ports can be used when**

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ **Situations in which the USB Type-C charging ports may not operate correctly**

- If a device which consumes more than 3 A at 5 V is connected
- If a device designed to communicate with a personal computer, such as a USB memory device, is connected
- If the connected external device is turned off (depending on device)
- If the temperature inside the vehicle is high, such as after the vehicle has been parked in the sun

■ **About connected external devices**

Depending on the connected external device, charging may occasionally be suspended and then start again. This is not a malfunction.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damage to the USB Type-C charging ports**

- Do not insert foreign objects into the ports.
- Do not spill water or other liquids into the ports.
- Rear: When the USB Type-C charging ports are not in use, close the lids. If a foreign object or liquid enters a port may cause a short circuit.
- Do not apply excessive force to or impact the USB Type-C charging ports.
- Do not disassemble or modify the USB Type-C charging ports.

■ **To prevent damage to external devices**

- Do not leave external devices in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may become high, resulting in damage to an external device.
- Do not push down on or apply unnecessary force to an external device or the cable of an external device while it is connected.

■ **To prevent battery discharge**

Do not use the USB Type-C charging ports for a long period of time with the engine stopped.

Wireless charger (if equipped)

A portable device can be charged by just placing Qi standard wireless charge compatible portable devices according to the Wireless Power Consortium, such as smartphones and mobile batteries, etc., on the charge

5 Interior features

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

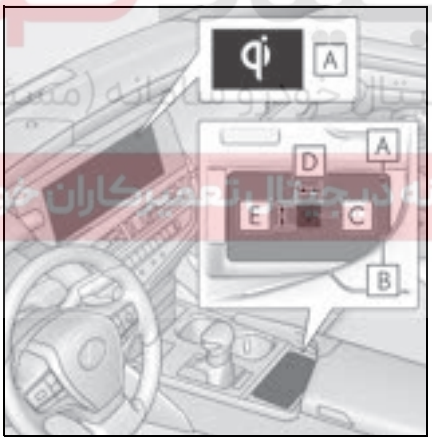
area.

This function cannot be used with portable devices that are larger than the charging tray. Also, depending on the portable device, it may not operate as normal. Please read the operation manual for portable devices to be used.

The "Qi" logo

The "Qi" logo is a trademark of the Wireless Power Consortium.

Name for all parts



A Operation indicator light

B Charging tray

C Charge area*

D Approximately 7 cm (2.8 in.)

E Approximately 6 cm (2.4 in.)

*: Portable devices and wireless chargers contain charging coils. The charging coil in the wireless charger can be moved within the charge area near the center of the charging tray. If the charging coil inside a portable device is detected in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and start charging. If the charging coil inside a portable device moves outside of the charge area, charging will automatically stop.
If 2 or more portable devices are placed on the charging tray, their charging coils may not be properly detected and they may not be charged.

Using the wireless charger

Place the portable device on the charging tray

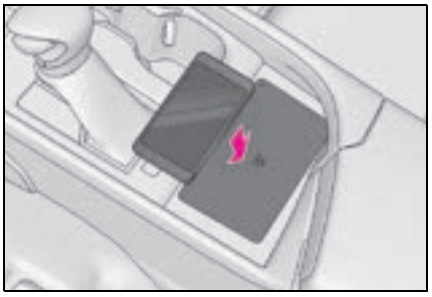
Place the charging side of the portable device down with the center of the device in the center of the charge area.

Depending on the portable device, the charging coil may not be located in the center of the device. In this case, place the portable device so that its charging coil is in the center of the charge area.

When charging, the operation indicator light (orange) comes on.

If charging is not occurring, try placing the portable device as close to the center of the charging area as possible.

When charging is complete, the operation indicator light (green) comes on.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Recharging function

- When charging is complete and after a fixed time in the charge suspension state, charging restarts.
- When a portable device is moved significantly in the charge area, the charging coil is disconnected and charging is stopped momentarily. However, if there is a charging coil in the charge area, the charging coil inside the wireless charger will move toward it and then charging restarts.

Rapid charging function

- The following portable devices support rapid charging.
  - Portable devices compliant with WPC Ver1.2.4 and compatible with rapid charging
  - iPhone's with an iOS version that supports 7.5 W charging (iPhone 8 and later models)
- When a portable device that supports rapid charging is charged, charging automatically switches to the rapid charging function.

Lighting conditions of operation indicator light

Operation indicator light		Conditions
Charging tray side	Center display side	
Turning off	Disappear	When the Wireless charger power supply is off
Green (comes on)	Gray	On Standby (charging possible state)*1
		When charging is complete*2
Orange (comes on)	Blue	When placing the portable device on the charging area (detecting the portable device)
		Charging

*1: Charging power will not be output during standby. A metallic object will not be heated, if it is placed on the charging tray in this state.

*2: Depending on the portable device, there are cases where the operation indicator light will continue being lit up orange even after the charging is complete.

When the wireless charger does not operate properly

When the wireless charger does not operate properly, handle the probable cause based on the following tables.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center Display side	
Orange (flashing repeatedly once every second)	Gray	**Vehicle to wireless charger communication failure** **→ If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACCESSORY, start the engine. (→P.171)
Green (flashing repeatedly once every second)	Disappear	**Wireless charger and multimedia system communication failure** **→ If the engine is running, stop and then restart the engine.** If the engine switch is in ACCESSORY, start the engine. (→P.171)
Green (comes on)	Blue	**AM radio stations are being automatically selected** **→ Wait until the system has completed the automatic selection of AM radio stations. In the case that automatic selection cannot be completed, stop automatic selection.**
		The smart entry & start system is detecting the key. **→ Wait until key detection has completed.**
Orange (repeatedly flashes 3 times continuously)	Gray	**A metallic foreign substance is in the charge area and charging has stopped momentarily.** **→ Remove the foreign substance from the charge area.**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Operation indicator light		Suspected causes/Handling method
Charging tray side	Center Display side	
Orange (repeatedly flashes 3 times continuously) or flashing between green and orange	Gray	**The charging coil in the portable device moved outside of the charge area and charging has stopped momentarily.** **→ Remove the portable device from the charging tray, check that the operation indicator light changes back to green, and then place the portable device so that it is near the center of the charging tray. Also, if a case or cover is installed to the portable device, remove it.**
Orange (repeatedly flashes 4 times continuously)	Gray	**Safety shutdown resulting when the temperature within the wireless charger exceeded the set value** **→ Stop charging, remove the portable device from the charging tray, wait for the temperature to drop, and then start charging again.**

■ The wireless charger can be operated when

The engine switch is in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode.

■ Usable portable devices

- Qi standard wireless charge standard can be used on compatible devices. However, not all Qi standard devices and compatibility are guaranteed.
- Starting with mobile phones and smartphones, it is aimed for low power electrically supplied portable devices of no more than 5W.
- However, charging exceeding 5 W is supported by the following portable devices.
  - Charging at 7.5 W or less is supported by iPhone's that support 7.5 W charging.
  - Charging at 10 W or less is supported by portable devices compliant with EPP output as defined by WPC standard Ver1.2.4.

■ When covers and accessories are attached to portable devices

Do not charge in situations where cover and accessories not able to handle Qi are attached to the portable device. Depending on the type of cover (including for certain genuine manufacturer parts) and accessory, it may not be possible to charge. When charging is not performed even with the portable device placed on the charge area, remove the cover and accessories.

■ AM radio cooperation function during charging

- When noise enters the AM radio during charging, charging frequency will be automatically changed to reduce noise.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- During the AM radio automatic tuning, charging is temporarily stopped in order to prevent tuning error due to noise caused by charging. When tuning is finished, charging will be automatically resumed.

Important points of the wireless charger

- If the electronic key cannot be detected within the vehicle interior, charging cannot be done. When the door is opened and closed, charging may be temporarily suspended.
- When charging, the wireless charging device and portable device will get warmer, however this is not a malfunction.
  When a portable device gets warm while charging, charging may stop due to the protection function on the portable device side. In this case, when the temperature of the portable device drops significantly, charge again.

The fan may start operating to lower the temperature inside the wireless charger, however this is not a malfunction.

Operation sounds

A buzzing noise may be heard when pressing the engine switch to turn to ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode or when detecting a portable device. However, this is not a malfunction.

WARNING

Caution while driving

When charging a portable device, for safety reasons, the driver should not operate the main part of the portable device while driving.

Caution while in motion

Do not charge lightweight devices such as wireless headphones while in motion. These devices are very light and may be ejected from the charging tray, which may lead to unforeseen accidents.

Caution regarding interference with electronic devices

People with implantable cardiac pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy-pacemakers or implantable cardioverters, as well as any other electrical medical device, should consult their physician about the usage of the wireless charger.

To prevent malfunctions or burns

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in a equipment failure and damage, catch fire, burns due to overheat or electric shock.

- Do not insert any metallic objects between the charge area and the portable device while charging
- Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the charge area
- Do not attach an aluminum sticker or other metallic object to the side of the portable device (or to its case or cover) that touches the charge area
- Do not use the charging tray as a small storage space
- Do not subject to a strong force or impact
- Do not disassemble, modify or remove
- Do not charge devices other than specified portable devices
- Keep away from magnetic items
- Do not charge devices if the charge area is covered in dust
- Do not cover with a cloth or similar material

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

■ Situations in which the function may not operate normally

Devices may not be charged normally in the following situations.

- The portable device is fully charged
- The portable device is being charged with a cable connected
- There is foreign matter between the charge area and portable device
- Charging has caused the portable device to heat up
- The temperature around the charging tray is 35°C (95°F) or higher, such as in extreme heat
- The portable device is placed with its charging side facing up
- The portable device is placed in an area misaligned from the charge area
- The portable device is larger than the charging tray
- A foldable and portable device is placed outside the charge area
- The vehicle is in an area where strong electrical waves or noise are emitted, such as near a television tower, power plant, gasoline station, broadcasting station, large display, airport, etc.
- When the camera of the portable device largely protrudes
- Any of the following objects that is 2 mm (0.08 in) or thicker is stuck or installed between the charging side of the portable device and the charge area.
  - Thick cases or covers
  - A case that uses a magnet on the charging side of the portable device
  - A case or cover attached with an uneven or tilted surface, so that the charging side is not flat
  - Thick decorations
  - Accessories, such as finger rings, straps, etc.
- When the portable device is in contact with, or is covered by any of the following metallic objects:
  - A card that has metal on it, such as aluminum foil, etc.
  - A pack of cigarettes that includes aluminum foil
  - A wallet or bag that is made of metal
  - Coins
  - A heating pad
  - CDs, DVDs or other media
  - A metal accessory
  - A case or cover made of metal
- Electric wave type wireless remote controls are being used nearby
- When the electronic key is taken outside the vehicle
- 2 or more portable devices are placed on the charging tray at the same time

If charging is abnormal or the operation indicator light continues to flash for any other reason, the wireless charger may be malfunctioning. Contact your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

■ To prevent malfunctions and data corruptions

- When charging, bringing a credit, or other magnetic card, or magnetic storage media close to the charge area may clear any stored data due to magnetic influence. Also, do not bring a wristwatch or other precision instrument close to the charge area since doing so may cause it to malfunction.
- Do not charge with a non-contact IC card such as a transportation system IC card inserted between the charging side of a portable device and the charge area. The IC chip may become extremely hot and damage the portable device or IC card. Be especially careful not to charge a portable device inside a case or cover with a non-contact IC card attached.
- Do not leave portable devices inside the vehicle. The inside of the vehicle can become hot in extreme heat, which could cause a malfunction.

■ If the smartphone OS has been updated

If the smartphone OS has been updated to a newer version, its charging specifications may have changed significantly. For details, check the information on the manufacturer's website.

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not use the wireless charger for a long period of time when the engine is stopped.

Armrest

Fold down the armrest for use.



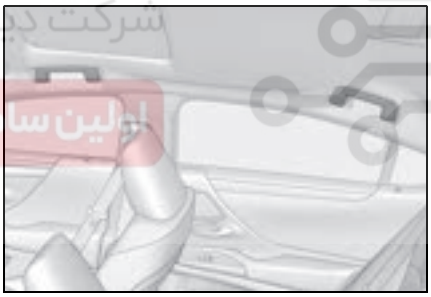
NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the armrest

Do not apply too much load on the armrest.

Assist grips

An assist grip installed on the ceiling can be used to support your body while sitting on the seat.



WARNING

■ Assist grips

Do not use the assist grip when getting in or out of the vehicle or rising from your seat.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the assist grip

Do not hang any heavy object or put a heavy load on the assist grip.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

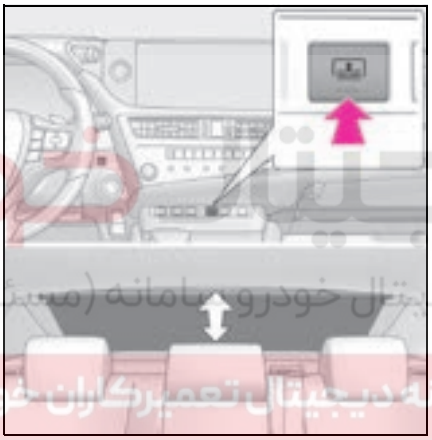
Rear sunshade (if equipped)/rear door sunshades (if equipped)

Rear sunshade

The rear sunshade can be raised and lowered by operating the button shown below.

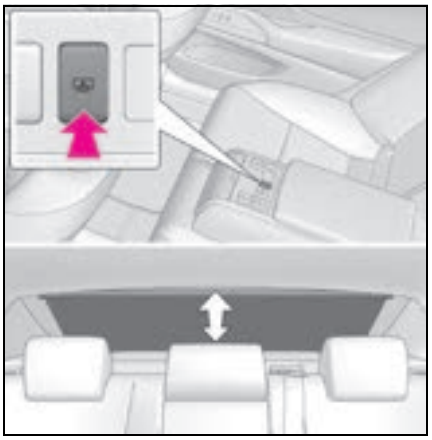
▶ From the front seats

Press the switch. (Raise/lower)



▶ From the rear seats (if equipped)

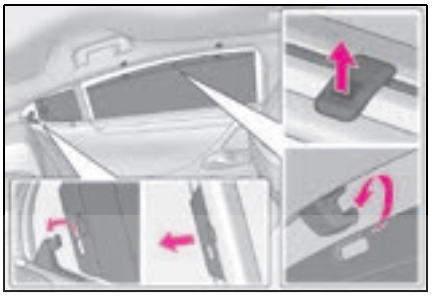
Press the switch. (Raise/lower)



Rear door sunshades

Pull the tab of the rear door sunshade and hook the sunshade on the anchors.

To retract the rear door sunshade, unhook the sunshade and retract it slowly.



The rear sunshade can be used when

- The engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode.
- The rear sunshade can be operated for approximately 1 minute even after the engine switch is turned to ACCESSORY mode or turned off.

Reverse operation feature

- To ensure adequate rear visibility, the rear sunshade automatically lowers when the shift lever is shifted to R.

However, the rear sunshade is raised again if any of the following occurs:

- The button is pressed again.*
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- The shift lever is shifted out of R, and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph).
  If the engine is turned off after the rear sunshade was lowered due to the reverse operation feature, it will not be raised even when the engine is turned on again and the vehicle reaches a speed of 15 km/h (9 mph). To raise the sunshade again, press the button.

*: Occasionally, the reverse function may not be carried out after the switch has

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

been pressed. Repeat the above operation to operate the function.

WARNING

■ When the rear sunshade is being raised or lowered

When the rear sunshade is being operated, do not place fingers or other objects in the fastener section or in the opening. They may get caught, causing injury.

NOTICE

■ To prevent battery discharge

Do not operate the rear sunshade when the engine is not running.

■ To ensure normal operation of the sunshades

● Do not operate the rear sunshade when any objects are on top of its opening/closing part.
The rear sunshade may not operate properly.



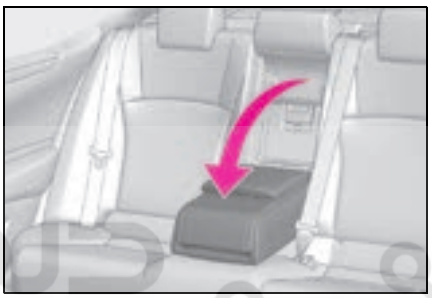
● To ensure normal operation of the rear sunshade and rear door sunshades, observe the following precautions:

- Do not place excessive load on the motor or other components of the rear sunshade.
- Do not attach items to the rear sunshade and rear door sunshades.
- Keep the opening clean and clear of obstructions.
- Do not operate the rear sunshade continuously for long periods of time.

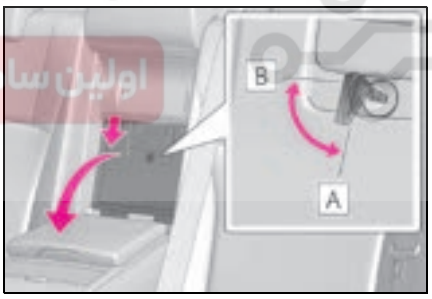
Trunk storage extension

Long objects can be loaded into the vehicle by utilizing the trunk space and rear seat area.

1 Fold down the armrest.



2 Fold down the handle and open the armrest door.



The armrest door can be locked and unlocked using the mechanical key.

A Unlock

B Lock

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When not in use

Ensure that the armrest door is closed. In the event of sudden braking, items stored in the trunk may be thrown forward into the cabin, resulting in injury.

Coat hooks

The coat hooks are provided with the rear assist grips.



WARNING

■ Items that should not be hanged

Do not hang coat hangers or other hard or sharp objects on the hook. If the SRS curtain shield airbags deploy, these items may become projectiles, causing death or serious injury.

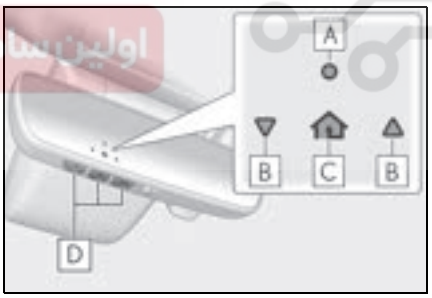
Garage door opener*

*: If equipped

The garage door opener can be programmed using the HomeLink® to operate garage doors, gates, entry doors, door locks, home lighting systems, security systems, and other devices.

System components

The HomeLink® wireless control system in your vehicle has 3 buttons which can be programmed to operate 3 different devices. Refer to the programming methods on the following pages to determine the method which is appropriate for the device.



A HomeLink® indicator light

B Garage door operation indicators

C HomeLink® icon

Illuminates while HomeLink® is operating.

D Buttons

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Codes stored in the HomeLink® memory

- The registered codes are not erased even if the battery cable is disconnected.
- If learning failed when registering a different code to a HomeLink® button that already has a code registered to it, the already registered code will not be erased.

WARNING

■ When programming a garage door or other remote control device

The garage door or other device may operate, so ensure people and objects are out of danger to prevent potential harm.

■ Conforming to federal safety standards

Do not use the HomeLink® compatible transceiver with any garage door opener or device that lacks safety stop and reverse features as required by federal safety standards.

This includes any garage door that cannot detect an interfering object. A door or device without these features increases the risk of death or serious injury.

■ When operating or programming HomeLink®

Never allow a child to operate or play with the HomeLink® buttons.

Programming the HomeLink®

■ Before programming HomeLink®

- During programming, it is possible that garage doors, gates, or other devices may operate. For this reason, make sure that people and objects are clear of the garage door or other devices to prevent injury or other potential harm.
- It is recommended that a new battery be placed in the remote control transmitter for more accurate programming.
- Garage door opener motors manufactured after 1995 may be equipped with rolling code protection. If this is the case, you may need a stepladder or other sturdy, safe device to reach the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor.

■ Programming HomeLink®

1. Press and release the HomeLink® button you want to program and check that the HomeLink® indicator light flashes (orange).

Perform **3** within 60 seconds of **1**, or the indicator light will stop flashing and programming will not be able to be completed.

2. Point the remote control transmitter for the device at the rear view mirror, 25 to 75 mm (1 to 3 in.) from the HomeLink® buttons.

Keep the HomeLink® indicator light in

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

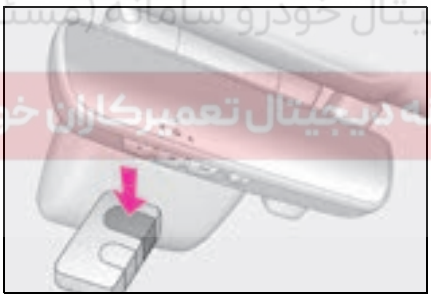
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

view while programming.



▶ Garage door type A

3 Press and hold the remote control transmitter button until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from slowly flashing orange to rapidly flashing green (rolling code) or continuously lit green (fixed code), then release the button.



▶ Programming an entry gate/Programming the HomeLink® (garage door type B)

3 Press and release the remote control transmitter button at 2 second intervals, repeatedly, until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from slowly flashing (orange) to rapidly flashing (green) (rolling code) or continuously lit (green) (fixed code).

4 Test the HomeLink® operation by pressing the newly programmed button and observing the indicator light:

- Device with fixed code: If the indicator light is solid/continuous, programming has been completed and your garage door or other device should operate when the HomeLink® button is pressed and released.
- Device with rolling code: If the indicator light flashes rapidly, your garage door opener motor (or other device) is equipped with a rolling code. Complete the programming process by firmly pressing and holding the programmed HomeLink® button for 2 seconds and then release the button.
- If the garage door or other device does not operate, proceed to "Programming a rolling code system".

5 Repeat the steps above to program another device for any of the remaining HomeLink® buttons.

■ Programming a rolling code system

1 Locate the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor in the garage.

This button can usually be found where the hanging antenna wire is attached to the unit. The name and color of the button may vary by manufacturer. Refer to the owner's manual supplied with the garage door

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

opener motor for details.



2 Press and release the “Learn” or “Smart” button.

Perform 3 within 30 seconds after performing 2.



3 Press and hold the desired HomeLink® button (inside the vehicle) for 2 seconds and release it. Repeat this sequence (press/hold/release) up to 3 times to complete programming.

If the garage door opener motor operates when the HomeLink® button is pressed, the garage door opener motor recognizes the HomeLink® signal.



■ Enabling 2-way communication with a garage door (only available for compatible devices)

When enabled, 2-way communication allows you to check the status of the opening and closing of a garage door through indicators in your vehicle.

2-way communication is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

1 Within 5 seconds after programming the garage door opener has been completed, if the garage door opener motor is trained to HomeLink®, both garage door operation indicators will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

If the indicators do not flash, perform 2 and 3 within the first 10 presses of the HomeLink® button after programming has been completed.

2 Press a programmed HomeLink® button to operate a garage door.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

3 Within 1 minute of pressing the HomeLink® button, after the garage door operation has stopped, press the "Learn" or "Smart" button on the garage door opener motor. Within 5 seconds of the establishment of 2-way communication with the garage door opener, both garage door operation indicators in the vehicle will flash rapidly (green) and the light on the garage door opener motor will blink twice, indicating that 2-way communication is enabled.

■ **Reprogramming a single HomeLink® button**

When the following procedure is performed, buttons which already have devices registered to them can be overwritten:

1 With one hand, press and hold the desired HomeLink® button.

2 When the HomeLink® indicator starts flashing (orange), continue to hold the HomeLink® button and perform "Programming HomeLink®" **1** (it takes 20 seconds for the HomeLink® indicator to start flashing).

■ **Before programming**

- Install a new battery in the transmitter.
- The battery side of the transmitter must be pointed away from the HomeLink®.

Operating HomeLink®

Press the appropriate HomeLink® button. The HomeLink® indicator light should turn on.

The status of the opening and closing of a garage door is shown by the indicators.



A Opening

B Closing

This function is only available if the garage door opener motor used is a compatible device. (To check device compatibility, refer to www.homelink.com.)

Color	Status
Orange (flashing)	Currently opening/closing
Green	Opening/closing has completed
Red (flashing)	Feedback signals cannot be received

The indicators can operate within approximately 250 m (820 ft.) of the garage door. However, if there are obstructions between the garage door and the vehicle, such as houses and trees, feedback signals from the

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

garage door may not be received.

To recall the previous door operation status, press and release either HomeLink® buttons and or and simultaneously. The last recorded status will be displayed for 3 seconds.

Erasing the entire HomeLink® memory (all three codes)

Press and hold the 2 outside buttons for 10 seconds until the HomeLink® indicator light changes from continuously lit (orange) to rapidly flashing (green).

If you sell your vehicle, be sure to erase the programs stored in the HomeLink® memory.



شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

6-1. Maintenance and care

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior 352

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior 355

6-2. Maintenance

Maintenance requirements 358

Scheduled maintenance 360

6-3. Do-it-yourself maintenance

Do-it-yourself service precautions 370

Hood 371

Positioning a floor jack 372

Engine compartment 373

Tires 383

Tire inflation pressure 391

Wheels 392

Air conditioning filter 393

Electronic key battery 395

Checking and replacing fuses 397

Light bulbs 399

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle exterior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Cleaning instructions

- Working from top to bottom, liberally apply water to the vehicle body, wheel wells and underside of the vehicle to remove any dirt and dust.
- Wash the vehicle body using a sponge or soft cloth, such as a chamois.
- For hard-to-remove marks, use car wash soap and rinse thoroughly with water.
- Wipe away any water.
- Wax the vehicle when the waterproof coating deteriorates.

If water does not bead on a clean surface, apply wax when the vehicle body is cool.

Self-restoring coat

The vehicle body has a self-restoring coating that is resistant to small surface scratches caused in a car wash etc.

- The coating lasts for 5 to 8 years from when the vehicle is delivered from the plant.
- The restoration time differs depending on the depth of the scratch and outside temperature.
  The restoration time may become shorter when the coating is warmed by applying warm water.
- Deep scratches caused by keys, coins, etc. cannot be restored.
- Do not use wax that contains abrasives.

Automatic car washes

- Before washing the vehicle:
  - Fold the mirrors
  - Turn off the power trunk lid (if equipped)

Start washing from the front of the vehicle. Make sure to extend the mirrors before driving.

- Rear spoiler (if equipped) may not be washable in some automatic car washes. There may also be an increased risk of damage to vehicle.
- Brushes used in automatic car washes may scratch the vehicle surface, parts (wheel, etc.) and harm your vehicle's paint.

High pressure car washes

As water may enter the cabin, do not bring the nozzle tip near the gaps around the doors or perimeter of the windows, or spray these areas continuously.

Notes for a smart entry & start system

If the door handle becomes wet while the electronic key is within the effective range, the door may lock and unlock repeatedly. In that case, follow the following correction procedures to wash the vehicle:

- Place the key in a position 2 m (6 ft.) or more separate from the vehicle while the vehicle is being washed. (Take care to ensure that the key is not stolen.)
- Set the electronic key to battery-saving mode to disable the smart entry & start system. (→P.138)

Wheels and wheel ornaments

- Remove any dirt immediately by using a neutral detergent.
- Wash detergent off with water immediately after use.
- To protect the paint from damage, make sure to observe the following precautions.
  - Do not use acidic, alkaline or abrasive detergent
  - Do not use hard brushes
  - Do not use detergent on the wheels

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

when they are hot, such as after driving or parking in hot weather

■ **Brake pads and calipers**

Rust may form if the vehicle is parked with wet brake pads or disc rotors, causing them to stick. Before parking the vehicle after it is washed, drive slowly and apply the brakes several times to dry the parts.

■ **Bumpers**

Do not scrub with abrasive cleaners.

■ **Front side windows water-repellent coating**

The following precautions can extend the effectiveness of the water-repellent coating.

- Remove any dirt, etc. from the front side windows regularly.
- Do not allow dirt and dust to accumulate on the windows for a long period. Clean the windows with a soft, damp cloth as soon as possible.
- Do not use wax or glass cleaners that contain abrasives when cleaning the windows.
- Do not use any metallic objects to remove condensation build up.

■ **Plated portions**

If dirt cannot be removed, clean the parts as follows:

- Use a soft cloth dampened with an approximately 5% solution of neutral detergent and water to clean the dirt off.
- Wipe the surface with a dry, soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.
- To remove oily deposits, use alcohol wet wipes or a similar product.

WARNING

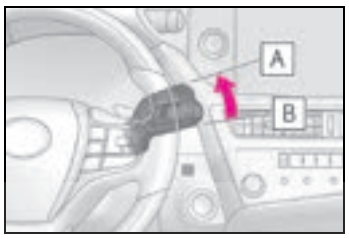
■ **When washing the vehicle**

Do not apply water to the inside of the engine compartment. Doing so may cause the electrical components etc. to catch fire.

■ **When cleaning the windshield (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)**

Set the wiper switch to off.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate unexpectedly in the following situations, and may result in hands being caught or other serious injuries and cause damage to the wiper blades.



A Off

B AUTO

- When the upper part of the windshield where the raindrop sensor is located is touched by hand
- When a wet rag or similar is held close to the raindrop sensor
- If something bumps against the windshield
- If you directly touch the raindrop sensor body or if something bumps into the raindrop sensor

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ Precautions regarding the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers (if equipped)

As exhaust gases cause the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers to become quite hot, do not touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers while the engine is running or immediately after the engine is turned off.

When washing the vehicle, be careful not to touch the exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers until they have cooled sufficiently, as touching hot exhaust pipes and rear bumper diffusers can cause burns.

■ Precaution regarding the rear bumper with Blind Spot Monitor (if equipped)

If the paint of the rear bumper is chipped or scratched, the system may malfunction. If this occurs, consult your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ To prevent paint deterioration and corrosion on the body and components (aluminum wheels etc.)

- Wash the vehicle immediately in the following cases:
  - After driving near the sea coast
  - After driving on salted roads
  - If coal tar, pollen or tree sap is present on the paint surface
  - If dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings are present on the paint surface
  - After driving in an area contaminated with soot, oily smoke, mine dust, iron powder or chemical substances
  - If the vehicle becomes heavily soiled with dust or mud
  - If liquids such as benzene and gasoline are spilled on the paint surface
- If the paint is chipped or scratched, have it repaired immediately.
- To prevent the wheels from corroding, remove any dirt and store in a place with low humidity when storing the wheels.

■ Cleaning the exterior lights

- Wash carefully. Do not use organic substances or scrub with a hard brush. This may damage the surfaces of the lights.
- Do not apply wax to the surfaces of the lights.
  Wax may cause damage to the lenses.

■ When using an automatic car wash (vehicles with rain-sensing windshield wipers)

Set the wiper switch to the off position.

If the wiper switch is in AUTO, the wipers may operate and the wiper blades may be damaged.

■ When using a high pressure car wash

- When washing the vehicle, do not spray the camera or its surrounding area directly with a high pressure washer. Shock applied from high pressure water may cause the device to not operate normally.
- Do not spray water directly on the radar which is equipped behind the emblem. Otherwise it may cause the device to be damaged.
- Do not bring the nozzle tip close to boots (rubber or resin manufactured cover), connectors or the following parts. The parts may be damaged if they come into contact with high-pressure water.
  - Traction related parts
  - Steering parts
  - Suspension parts
  - Brake parts

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- Keep the cleaning nozzle at least 30 cm (11.9 in.) away from the vehicle body. Otherwise resin section, such as moldings and bumpers, may be deformed and damaged. Also, do not continuously hold the nozzle in the same place.
- Do not spray the lower part of the windshield continuously. If water enters the air conditioning system intake located near the lower part of the windshield, the air conditioning system may not operate correctly.
- Do not wash the underside of the vehicle using a high pressure car washer.

Cleaning and protecting the vehicle interior

Perform cleaning in a manner appropriate to each component and its material.

Protecting the vehicle interior

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner. Wipe dirty surfaces with a cloth dampened with lukewarm water.
- If dirt cannot be removed, wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
  Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

Shampooing the carpets

There are several commercial foaming-type cleaners available. Use a sponge or brush to apply the foam. Rub in overlapping circles. Do not use water. Wipe dirty surfaces and let them dry. Excellent results are obtained by keeping the carpet as dry as possible.

Handling the seat belts

Clean with mild soap and lukewarm water using a cloth or sponge. Also check the belts periodically for excessive wear, fraying or cuts.

When cleaning the carpeted portions of the glove box, console box, etc.

If a strong adhesive tape is used, there is a possibility that the surface of the carpet could be damaged.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ Water in the vehicle

- Do not splash or spill liquid in the vehicle.
  Doing so may cause electrical components etc. to malfunction or catch fire.
- Do not get any of the SRS components or wiring in the vehicle interior wet. (→P.38)
  An electrical malfunction may cause the airbags to deploy or not function properly, resulting in death or serious injury.
- Vehicles with wireless charger: Do not let the wireless charger (→P.335) get wet. Failure to do so may cause the charger to become hot and cause burns or could cause electric shock resulting in death or serious injury.

■ Cleaning the interior (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel may reflect off the windshield, obstructing the driver's view and leading to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ Cleaning detergents

- Do not use the following types of detergent, as they may discolor the vehicle interior or cause streaks or damage to painted surfaces:
  - Non-seat portions: Organic substances such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dye, and bleach
  - Seats: Alkaline or acidic solutions, such as thinner, benzene, and alcohol
- Do not use polish wax or polish cleaner. The instrument panel's or other interior part's painted surface may be damaged.

■ Preventing damage to leather surfaces

Observe the following precautions to avoid damage to and deterioration of leather surfaces:

- Remove any dust or dirt from leather surfaces immediately.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for extended periods of time. Park the vehicle in the shade, especially during summer.
- Do not place items made of vinyl, plastic, or containing wax on the upholstery, as they may stick to the leather surface if the vehicle interior heats up significantly.

■ Water on the floor

Do not wash the vehicle floor with water.

Vehicle systems such as the audio system may be damaged if water comes into contact with electrical components such as the audio system above or under the floor of the vehicle. Water may also cause the body to rust.

■ When cleaning the inside of the windshield (vehicles with Lexus Safety System +)

Do not allow glass cleaner to contact the lens. Also, do not touch the lens. (→P.210)

■ Cleaning the inside of the rear window

- Do not use glass cleaner to clean the rear window, as this may cause damage to the rear window defogger heater wires or antenna. Use a cloth dampened with lukewarm water to gently wipe the window clean. Wipe the window in strokes running parallel to the heater wires or antenna.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heater wires or antenna.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

- Remove dirt using a water-dampened soft cloth or synthetic chamois.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture.

Cleaning the areas with satin-finish metal accents

The metal areas use a layer of real metal for the surface. It is necessary to clean them regularly. If dirty areas are left uncleaned for long periods of time, they may be difficult to clean.

Cleaning the leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe off any excess dirt and dust with a soft cloth dampened with diluted detergent.

Use a diluted water solution of approximately 5% neutral wool detergent.

- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off all remaining traces of detergent.
- Wipe the surface with a dry soft cloth to remove any remaining moisture. Allow the leather to dry in a shaded and ventilated area.

Caring for leather areas

Lexus recommends cleaning the interior of the vehicle at least twice a year to maintain the quality of the vehicle's interior.

Cleaning the synthetic leather areas

- Remove dirt and dust using a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe it off with a soft cloth dampened with neutral detergent diluted to approximately 1%.
- Wring out any excess water from the cloth and thoroughly wipe off remaining traces of detergent and water.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو و سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرات خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Maintenance requirements

To ensure safe and economical driving, day-to-day care and regular maintenance are essential. Lexus recommends the following maintenance:

WARNING

■ **If your vehicle is not properly maintained**

Improper maintenance could result in serious damage to the vehicle and possible death or serious injury.

■ **Handling of the battery**

Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which are known to cause brain damage. Wash your hands after handling. (→P.379)

Scheduled maintenance

- Scheduled maintenance should be performed at specified intervals according to the maintenance schedule.

The interval for scheduled maintenance is determined by the odometer reading or the time interval, whichever comes first, shown in the schedule.

Maintenance beyond the last period should be performed at the same intervals.

- Where to go for maintenance service?

It makes good sense to take your vehicle to your local Lexus dealer for maintenance service as well as other inspections and repairs.

Lexus technicians are well-trained specialists receiving the latest service information through technical bulletins, service tips and in-dealership training programs. They learn to work on Lexus before they work on your vehicle, rather than while they are working on it. Doesn't that seem like the best way?

Your Lexus dealer has invested a lot of money in special Lexus tools and service equipment. It helps them to do the job better and at less cost.

Your Lexus dealer's service department will perform all of the scheduled maintenance on your vehicle reliably and economically.

Rubber hoses (for cooling and heater system, brake system and fuel system) should be inspected by a qualified technician according to the Lexus maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses are particularly important maintenance items. Have any deteriorated or damaged hoses replaced immediately. Note that rubber hoses will deteriorate with age, resulting in swelling, chafing or cracking.

Do-it-yourself maintenance

What about do-it-yourself maintenance?

Many of the maintenance items are easy to do yourself if you have a little mechanical ability and a few basic automotive tools. Simple instructions for how to perform them are presented in this section.

Note, however, that some maintenance tasks require special tools and skills. These are best performed by qualified technicians. Even if you are an experienced do-it-yourself mechanic, we recommend that

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

repairs and maintenance be conducted by your Lexus dealer who will keep a record of maintenance on your vehicle. This record could be helpful should you ever require Warranty Service.

Does your vehicle need repairs?

Be on the alert for changes in performance and sounds, and visual tip-offs that indicate service is needed. Some important clues are:

- Engine missing, stumbling or pinging
- Appreciable loss of power
- Strange engine noises
- A fluid leak under the vehicle (However, water dripping from the air conditioning system after use is normal.)
- Change in exhaust sound (This may indicate a dangerous carbon monoxide leak. Drive with the windows open and have the exhaust system checked immediately.)
- Flat-looking tires, excessive tire squeal when cornering, uneven tire wear
- Vehicle pulls to one side when driven straight on a level road
- Strange noises related to suspension movement
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling brake pedal, pedal almost touches the floor, vehicle pulls to one side when braking
- Engine coolant temperature continually higher than normal (→P.445)

If you notice any of these clues, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible. Your vehicle may need adjustment or repair.

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو (سهامی خاص) (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Scheduled maintenance

Perform maintenance by the schedule as follows:

Maintenance schedule requirements

Your vehicle needs to be serviced according to the normal maintenance schedule. (See "Maintenance schedule".)

If you mainly operate your vehicle under one or more of the special operating conditions below, some of the maintenance schedule items need to be serviced more frequently in order to keep your vehicle in good condition. (See "Additional maintenance schedule".)

A. Road Conditions 1. Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow or waterlogged roads. 2. Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	B. Driving Conditions 1. Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.) 2. Repeated short trips of less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.) 3. Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use. 4. Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.

Maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

SERVICE INTERVAL:			ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)			x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
			x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS												
1	Drive belts				I		I		I		I	24
2	Engine oil	For Hong Kong and Macao		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
		Except for Hong Kong and Macao		Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>								
3	Engine oil filter	For Hong Kong and Macao		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12
		Except for Hong Kong and Macao		Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>								
4	Cooling and heater system <<See note 2.>>						I				I	24
5	Engine coolant <<See note 3.>>						I				I	-
6	Engine oil cooler hoses and connections (2GR-FKS engine) <<See note 2 and 4.>>						I				I	24
7	Exhaust pipes and mountings				I		I		I		I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM												
8	Spark plugs			Replace every 100000 km (60000 miles).								
9	Battery			I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS												
10	Fuel filter <<See note 5.>>										R	96
11	Valve mechanism <<See notes 6 and 7.>>			Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								
12	Fuel injection system <<See notes 7 and 8.>>			Add injector cleaner to the fuel tank every 10000 km (6000 miles).								
13	Air cleaner filter				I		R		I		R	I: 24 R: 48

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING								MONTHS
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	
		x1000 miles	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	
14	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve <<See note 2.>>					I				I	24
15	Charcoal canister					I				I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY											
16	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 9.>>		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
17	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
18	Brake fluid		I	I	I	R	I	I	I	R	I: 6 R: 24
19	Brake pipes and hoses			I		I		I		I	12
20	Vacuum pump for brake booster		Inspect every 200000 km (120000 miles). <<See note 10.>>								
21	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box			I		I		I		I	12
22	Drive shaft boots			I		I		I		I	24
23	Suspension ball joints and dust covers			I		I		I		I	12
24	Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)					I				I	24
25	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections					I				I	24
26	Front and rear suspension			I		I		I		I	12
27	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
28	Lights, horns, wipers and washer		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	6
29	Air conditioning filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	12

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 10000 km

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

(6000 miles) since the last oil change. This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 10000 km (6000 miles). Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

2. After 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months inspection, inspect every 20000 km (12000 miles) or 12 months.

3. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (50000 miles).

4. For vehicles with model code* that has "V" as the last letter.

5. Including the filter in fuel tank.

6. For vehicles sold in Philippines and Malaysia only.

7. Toyota genuine fuel injector cleaner or equivalent.

8. For vehicles sold in Egypt, Iraq, Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar, Kuwait, Yemen, Panama, Peru, Brunei and Macao only.

9. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

10. For vehicles with A25A-FKS engine or M20A-FKS engine: Replace the vacuum pump vane and the vacuum pump vane caps with new ones and never reuse the vacuum pump vane and the vacuum pump vane caps.

*: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

دیجیتال خودرو شرکت دانش بنیان خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود) دیجیتال خودرو در ایران

Additional maintenance schedule (except for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow or waterlogged roads.	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow or waterlogged roads.	
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 2500 km (1500 miles) or 3 months R: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 10000 km (6000 miles) or 6 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-2: Repeated short trips of less than 8 km (5 miles) and outside temperatures remain below freezing. (Engine temperature will not reach to normal temperature.)	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Replacement of engine oil (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of engine oil filter (for Hong Kong and Macao)	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 5000 km (3000 miles) or 3 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours.	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 40000 km (24000 miles) or 24 months R: Every 80000 km (48000 miles) or 48 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Maintenance operations:

I = Inspect, correct or replace as necessary

R = Replace, change or lubricate

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	MONTHS
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
BASIC ENGINE COMPONENTS									
1	Drive belts		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
2	Engine oil		Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>						
3	Engine oil filter		Replace when the maintenance reminder appears. <<See note 1.>>						
4	Cooling and heater system			I		I		I	24
5	Engine coolant <<See note 2.>>			I		I		I	-
6	Exhaust pipes and mountings		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
IGNITION SYSTEM									
7	Spark plugs <<See note 3.>>							R	-
8	Battery		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
FUEL AND EMISSION CONTROL SYSTEMS									
9	Fuel filter <<See note 4.>>						R		96
10	Air cleaner filter		I	I	I	R	I	I	I: 24 R: 48
11	Fuel tank cap, fuel lines, connections and fuel vapor control valve			I		I		I	24
12	Charcoal canister				I			I	24
CHASSIS AND BODY									
13	Brake pedal and parking brake <<See note 5.>>			I		I		I	24
14	Brake pads and discs		I	I	I	I	I	I	12

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

SERVICE INTERVAL:		ODOMETER READING						
(Odometer reading or months, whichever comes first.)		x1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	MONTHS
		x1000 miles	9	18	27	36	45	54	
15	Brake fluid		I	R	I	R	I	R	I: 12 R: 24
16	Brake pipes and hoses		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
17	Vacuum pump for brake booster		Inspect every 200000 km (120000 miles). <<See note 6.>>						
18	Steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
19	Drive shaft boots		I	I	I	I	I	I	24
20	Suspension ball joints and dust covers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
21	Automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)				I			I	36
22	Automatic transmission fluid cooler hoses and connections				I			I	36
23	Front and rear suspension		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
24	Tires and inflation pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
25	Lights, horns, wipers and washers		I	I	I	I	I	I	12
26	Air conditioning filter		R	R	R	R	R	R	12

NOTE:

1. Replace both the engine oil and oil filter, even when the maintenance reminder does not appear, after 12 months have passed, or when driven over 15000 km (9000 miles) since the last oil change. This may cause the maintenance reminder appear even when driven less than 15000 km (9000 miles). Replace both engine oil and oil filter every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months, in which the vehicle is mainly driven in dirt or dusty roads, when the maintenance reminder does not appear.

2. First replace at 160000 km (100000 miles), then replace every 80000 km (50000 miles).

3. It is possible to replace every 100000 km (60000 miles).

4. Including the filter in fuel tank.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

5. Parking brake inspection is not necessary.

6. Replace the vacuum pump vane and the vacuum pump vane caps with new ones and never reuse the vacuum pump vane and the vacuum pump vane caps.

Additional maintenance schedule (for South Africa)

Refer to the following table for normal maintenance schedule items requiring more frequent service specific to the type of severe conditions. (For outline, see "Maintenance schedule requirements".)

A-1: Operating on rough or muddy roads, or roads with melted snow.	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of brake pipes and hoses	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of suspension ball joints and dust covers	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of drive shaft boots	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months
• Inspection* of steering wheel, linkage and steering gear box	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

A-2: Operating on dusty roads. (Roads in areas where their pavement rate is low, or a cloud of dust often arises and the air is dry.)	
• Inspection* or replacement of air cleaner filter	I: Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months R: Every 60000 km (36000 miles) or 48 months
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Replacement of air conditioning filter	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

B-1: Heavily loaded vehicle. (Example: Using a camper, using a car top carrier, etc.)	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months
• Inspection* of front and rear suspension	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Tightening of bolts and nuts on chassis and body <<See note.>>	Every 15000 km (9000 miles) or 12 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-3: Extensive idling and/or low speed driving for a long distance such as police, professional/private use like taxi or door-to-door delivery use.	
• Inspection* of brake pads and discs	Every 7500 km (4500 miles) or 6 months
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

B-4: Continuous high speed driving (80% or more of maximum vehicle speed) for over 2 hours	
• Inspection* or replacement of automatic transmission fluid (including front differential)	I: Every 45000 km (27000 miles) or 36 months R: Every 90000 km (54000 miles) or 72 months

*: Perform correction or replacement as necessary.

NOTE:

For seat mounting bolts, front and rear suspension member retaining bolts.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Do-it-yourself service precautions

If you perform maintenance by yourself, be sure to follow the correct procedure as given in these sections.

Maintenance

Items	Parts and tools
Battery condition (→P.379)	• Grease • Conventional wrench (for terminal clamp bolts)
Engine coolant level (→P.378)	• "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is premixed with 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. • Funnel (used only for adding coolant)
Engine oil level (→P.375)	• "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent • Rag or paper towel • Funnel (used only for adding engine oil)
Fuses (→P.397)	• Fuse with same amperage rating as original
Light bulbs (→P.399)	• Bulb with same number and wattage rating as original • Flathead screwdriver
Radiator and condenser (→P.378)	—
Tire inflation pressure (→P.391)	• Tire pressure gauge • Compressed air source
Washer fluid (→P.381)	• Water or washer fluid containing antifreeze (for winter use) • Funnel (used only for adding water or washer fluid)

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment contains many mechanisms and fluids that may move suddenly, become hot, or become electrically energized. To avoid death or serious injury, observe the following precautions.

■ When working on the engine compartment

- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the moving fan and engine drive belt.
- Be careful not to touch the engine, radiator, exhaust manifold, etc. right after driving as they may be hot. Oil and other fluids may also be hot.
- Do not leave anything that may burn easily, such as paper and rags, in the engine compartment.
- Do not smoke, cause sparks or expose an open flame to fuel. Fuel fumes are flammable.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Take care because brake fluid can harm your hands or eyes and damage painted surfaces. If fluid gets on your hands or in your eyes, flush the affected area with clean water immediately.
  If you still experience discomfort, consult a doctor.

When working near the electric cooling fan or radiator grille

Be sure the engine switch is off.
With the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode, the electric cooling fan may automatically start to run if the air conditioning is on and/or the coolant temperature is high. (→P.378)

Safety glasses

Wear safety glasses to prevent flying or falling material, fluid spray, etc. from getting in your eyes.

NOTICE

If you remove the air cleaner filter

Driving with the air cleaner filter removed may cause excessive engine wear due to dirt in the air.

If the fluid level is low or high

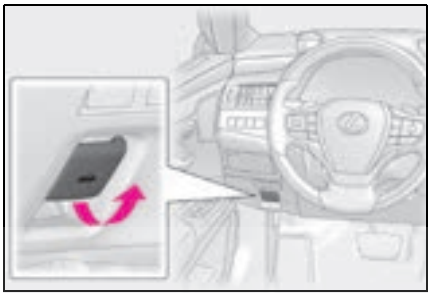
It is normal for the brake fluid level to go down slightly as the brake pads wear or when the fluid level in the accumulator is high.
If the reservoir needs frequent refilling, it may indicate a serious problem.

Hood

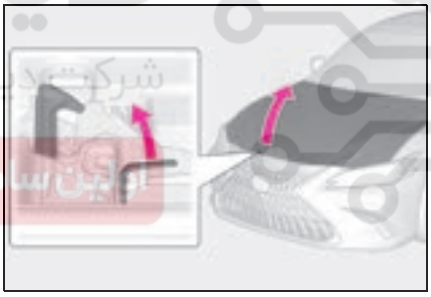
Opening the hood

1 Pull the hood lock release lever.

The hood will pop up slightly.



2 Pull up the auxiliary catch lever and lift the hood.



WARNING

Pre-driving check

Check that the hood is fully closed and locked.
If the hood is not locked properly, it may open while the vehicle is in motion and cause an accident, which may result in death or serious injury.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Positioning a floor jack

When using a floor jack, follow the instructions in the manual provided with the jack and perform the operation safely.

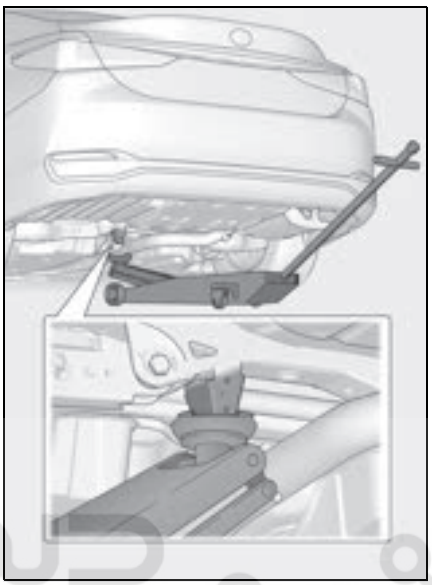
When raising your vehicle with a floor jack, position the jack correctly. Improper placement may damage your vehicle or cause injury.

Location of the jack point

■ Front



■ Rear



شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

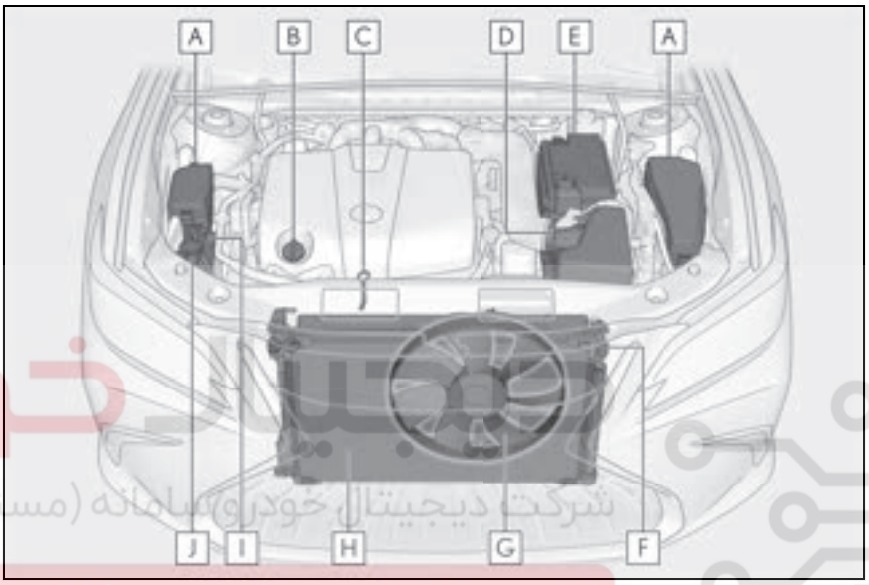
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Engine compartment

Components

▶ 2GR-FKS engine

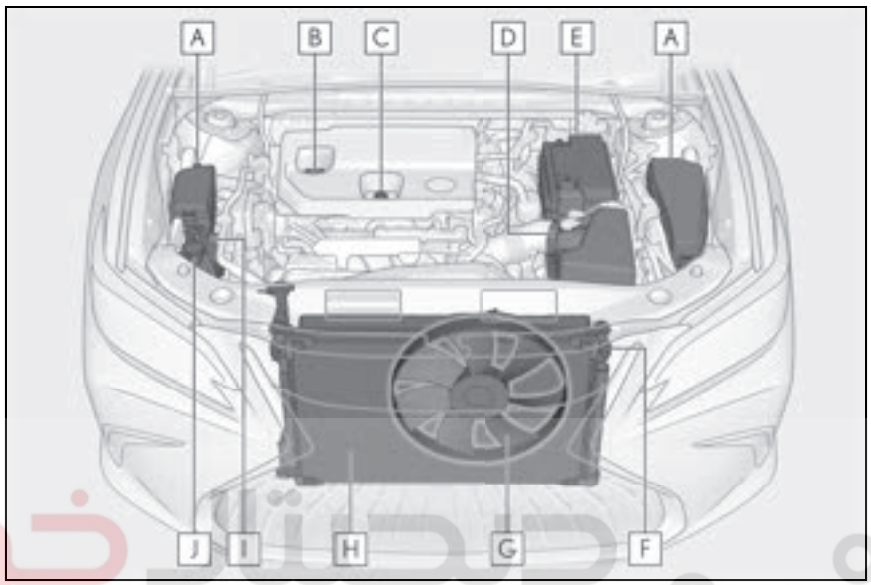


A Fuse boxes (→P.397)
B Engine oil filler cap (→P.376)
C Engine oil level dipstick (→P.375)
D Air cleaner (→P.381)
E Battery (→P.379)
F Radiator (→P.378)
G Electric cooling fan
H Condenser (→P.378)
I Engine coolant reservoir (→P.378)
J Washer fluid tank (→P.381)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ A25A-FKS engine



A Fuse boxes (→P.397)

B Engine oil filler cap (→P.376)

C Engine oil level dipstick (→P.375)

D Air cleaner (→P.381)

E Battery (→P.379)

F Radiator (→P.378)

G Electric cooling fan

H Condenser (→P.378)

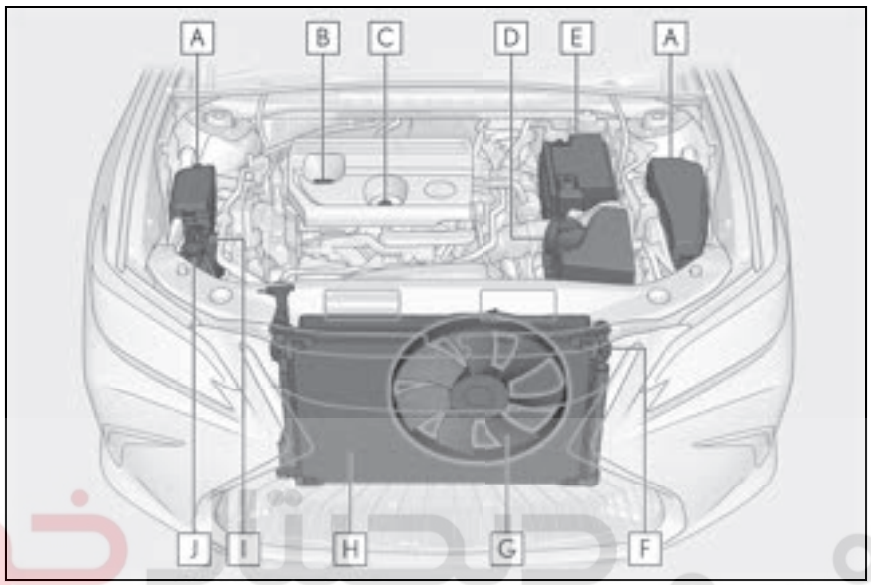
I Engine coolant reservoir (→P.378)

J Washer fluid tank (→P.381)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ M20A-FKS engine



A Fuse boxes (→P.397)
B Engine oil filler cap (→P.376)
C Engine oil level dipstick (→P.375)
D Air cleaner (→P.381)
E Battery (→P.379)
F Radiator (→P.378)
G Electric cooling fan
H Condenser (→P.378)
I Engine coolant reservoir (→P.378)
J Washer fluid tank (→P.381)

Checking and adding the engine oil

With the engine at operating temperature and turned off, check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ Checking the engine oil

1 Park the vehicle on level ground.

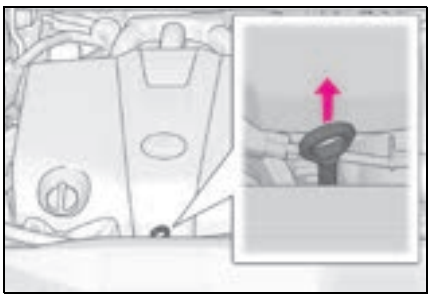
After warming up the engine and turning it off, wait more than 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the bottom of the engine.

2 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out.

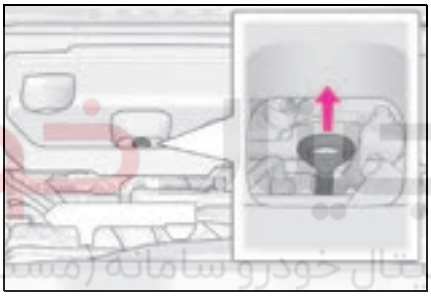
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ 2GR-FKS engine



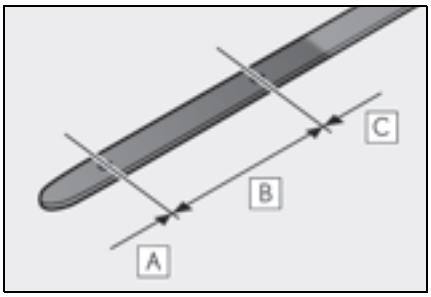
▶ A25A-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine



3 Wipe the dipstick clean.

4 Reinsert the dipstick fully.

5 Holding a rag under the end, pull the dipstick out and check the oil level.



A Low

B Normal

C Excessive

The shape of the dipstick may differ depending on the type of vehicle or engine.

6 Wipe the dipstick and reinsert it fully.

■ Checking the engine oil type and preparing the items needed

Make sure to check the oil type and prepare the items needed before adding oil.

● Engine oil selection

→P.453, 455

● Oil quantity (Low → Full)

2GR-FKS engine:

1.8 L (1.9 qt., 1.6 Imp.qt.)

A25A-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine:

1.5 L (1.6 qt., 1.3 Imp. qt.)

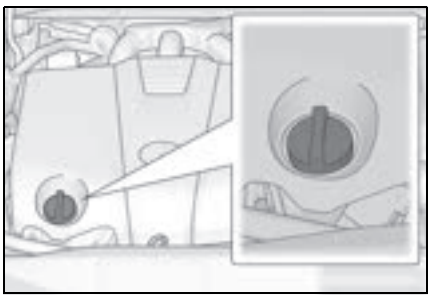
● Item

Clean funnel

■ Adding engine oil

If the oil level is below or near the low level mark, add engine oil of the same type as that already in the engine.

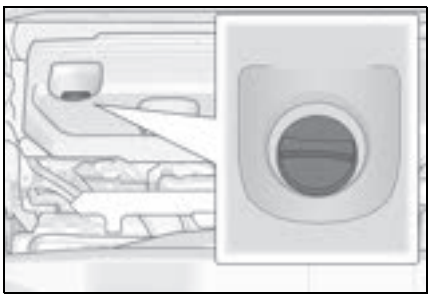
▶ 2GR-FKS engine



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ A25A-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine



1 Remove the oil filler cap by turning it counterclockwise.

2 Add engine oil slowly, checking the dipstick.

3 Install the oil filler cap by turning it clockwise.

■ Engine oil consumption

A certain amount of engine oil will be consumed while driving. In the following situations, oil consumption may increase, and engine oil may need to be refilled in between oil maintenance intervals.

- When the engine is new, for example directly after purchasing the vehicle or after replacing the engine
- If low quality oil or oil of an inappropriate viscosity is used
- When driving at high engine speeds or with a heavy load, or when driving while accelerating or decelerating frequently
- When leaving the engine idling for a long time, or when driving frequently through heavy traffic

■ After changing the engine oil (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

The engine oil maintenance data should be reset. Perform the following procedures:

1 While the vehicle is stopped, press of the meter control switches.

2 Press ◀ or ▶ of the meter control switches, and select ⚙.

3 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches to select "Vehicle Settings", and then press "OK".

4 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches to select "Oil Maintenance", and then press "OK".

5 Select "Yes" and then press "OK".

A message will be displayed on the multi-information display when the reset procedure has been completed.

⚠ WARNING

■ Used engine oil

- Used engine oil contains potentially harmful contaminants which may cause skin disorders such as inflammation and skin cancer, so care should be taken to avoid prolonged and repeated contact. To remove used engine oil from your skin, wash thoroughly with soap and water.
- Dispose of used oil and filters only in a safe and acceptable manner. Do not dispose of used oil and filters in household trash, in sewers or onto the ground.
  Call your Lexus dealer, service station or auto parts store for information concerning recycling or disposal.
- Do not leave used engine oil within the reach of children.

⚠ NOTICE

■ To prevent serious engine damage

Check the oil level on a regular basis.

■ When replacing the engine oil

- Be careful not to spill engine oil on the vehicle components.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- Avoid overfilling, or the engine could be damaged.
- Check the oil level on the dipstick every time you refill the vehicle.
- Be sure the engine oil filler cap is properly tightened.

Checking the coolant

The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir when the engine is cold.

Engine coolant reservoir



A Reservoir cap

B "F" line

C "L" line

If the level is on or below the "L" line, add coolant up to the "F" line. (→P.445)

Coolant selection

Only use "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" or a similar high quality ethylene glycol based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology.

"Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" is a mixture of 50% coolant and 50% deionized water. (Minimum temperature: -35°C [-31°F])

For more details about coolant, contact your Lexus dealer.

If the coolant level drops within a short time of replenishing

Visually check the radiator, hoses, engine coolant reservoir caps, drain cock and water pump.
If you cannot find a leak, have your Lexus dealer, test the cap and check for leaks in the cooling system.

WARNING

When the engine is hot

Do not remove the engine coolant reservoir cap or the coolant inlet cap. (→P.447)
The cooling system may be under pressure and may spray hot coolant if the cap is removed, causing serious injuries, such as burns.

NOTICE

When adding coolant

Coolant is neither plain water nor straight antifreeze. The correct mixture of water and antifreeze must be used to provide proper lubrication, corrosion protection and cooling. Be sure to read the antifreeze or coolant label.

If you spill coolant

Be sure to wash it off with water to prevent it from damaging parts or paint.

Checking the radiator and condenser

Check the radiator and condenser and clear away any foreign objects.
If either of the above parts is extremely dirty or you are not sure of their condition, have your vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When the engine is hot

Do not touch the radiator and condenser as they may be hot and cause serious injuries, such as burns.

Checking the battery

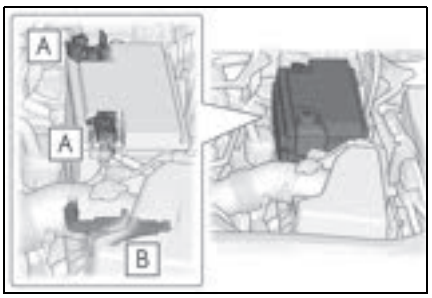
■ Caution symbols

The meanings of each caution symbol on the top of the battery are as follows:

	No smoking, no naked flames, no sparks
	Shield eyes
	Keep away from children
	battery acid
	Note operating instructions
	Explosive gas

■ Battery exterior

Make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, cracks, or loose clamps.

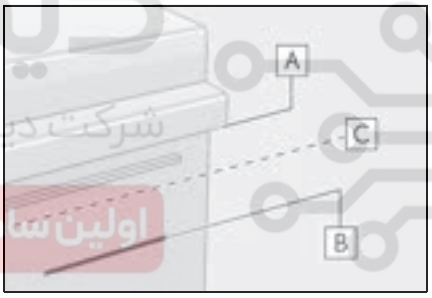


A Terminals

B Hold-down clamp

■ Checking battery fluid

Check that the level is upper than the center between the bottom of the battery lid and "LOWER LEVEL" line.



A Bottom of the battery lid

B "LOWER LEVEL" line

C Center of A and B

If the fluid level is below C, add distilled water.

■ Adding distilled water

1 Remove the vent plug.

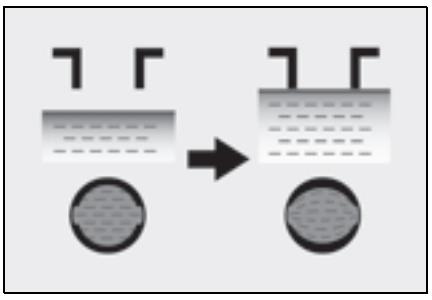
2 Add distilled water.

If the "UPPER LEVEL" line cannot be seen, check the fluid level by looking directly at

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

the cell.



3 Put the vent plug back on and close it securely.

Before recharging

When recharging, the battery produces hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. Therefore, observe the following before recharging:

- If recharging with the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to disconnect the ground cable.
- Make sure the power switch on the charger is off when connecting and disconnecting the charger cables to the battery.

After recharging/reconnecting the battery

- Unlocking the doors using the smart entry & start system may not be possible immediately after reconnecting the battery. If this happens, use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock/unlock the doors.
- Start the engine with the engine switch in ACCESSORY mode. The engine may not start with the engine switch turned off. However, the engine will operate normally from the second attempt.
- The engine switch mode is recorded by the vehicle. If the battery is reconnected, the vehicle will return the engine switch mode to the status it was in before the battery was disconnected. Make sure to turn off the engine switch before disconnect the battery. Take extra care when connecting the battery if the engine switch mode prior to discharge is unknown.

If the engine will not start even after multiple attempts, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

Chemicals in the battery

Batteries contain poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid and may produce hydrogen gas which is flammable and explosive. To reduce the risk of death or serious injury, take the following precautions while working on or near the battery:

- Do not cause sparks by touching the battery terminals with tools.
- Do not smoke or light a match near the battery.
- Avoid contact with eyes, skin and clothes.
- Never inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear protective safety glasses when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

Where to safely charge the battery

Always charge the battery in an open area. Do not charge the battery in a garage or closed room where there is insufficient ventilation.

Emergency measures regarding electrolyte

- If electrolyte gets in your eyes
  Flush your eyes with clean water for at least 15 minutes and get immediate medical attention. If possible, continue to apply water with a sponge or cloth while traveling to the nearest medical facility.
- If electrolyte gets on your skin
  Wash the affected area thoroughly. If you feel pain or burning, get medical attention immediately.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If electrolyte gets on your clothes
  It can soak through clothing on to your skin. Immediately take off the clothing and follow the procedure above if necessary.
- If you accidentally swallow electrolyte
  Drink a large quantity of water or milk. Get emergency medical attention immediately.

■ When there is insufficient battery fluid

Do not use if there is insufficient fluid in the battery. There is a possible danger that the battery may explode.

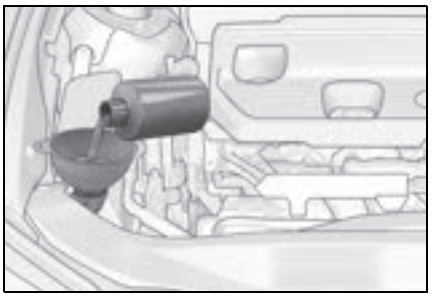
NOTICE

■ When recharging the battery

Never recharge the battery while the engine is running. Also, be sure all accessories are turned off.

Adding the washer fluid

If any washer does not work or "Windshield Washer Fluid Low" is shown on the multi-information display, the washer tank may be empty. Add washer fluid.



WARNING

■ When adding washer fluid

Do not add washer fluid when the engine is hot or running as washer fluid contains alcohol and may catch fire if spilled on the engine etc.

NOTICE

■ Do not use any fluid other than washer fluid

Do not use soapy water or engine anti-freeze instead of washer fluid.
Doing so may cause streaking on the vehicle's painted surfaces, as well as damaging the pump leading to problems of the washer fluid not spraying.

■ Diluting washer fluid

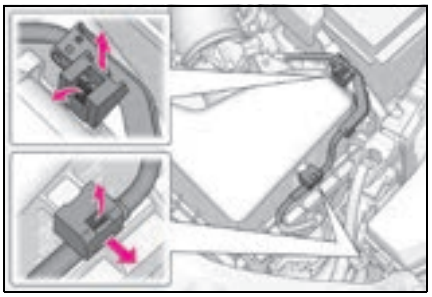
Dilute washer fluid with water as necessary.
Refer to the freezing temperatures listed on the label of the washer fluid bottle.

Checking the air cleaner filter

Check the air cleaner filter as follows:

1 Vehicles with 2GR-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine: Disengage each clamp.

While pulling the claw, pull the clamp to disengage it.

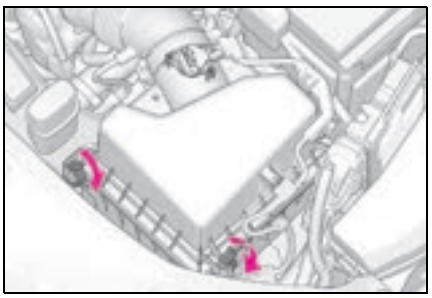


6 Maintenance and care

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2 Release the clips.

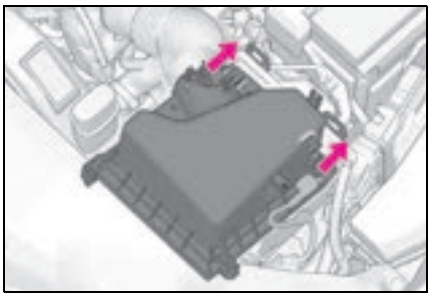


3 Lift the cover and take out the air cleaner filter.

Inspect the outer surface of the filter, and replace the filter if it is extremely dirty. If the filter is only moderately dusty, use compressed air to blow dust out of the filter.

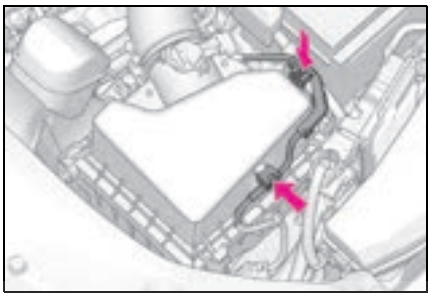


4 After checking, make sure the filter is set properly. Fully engage the claws and then secure the upper cover of the air cleaner case using the clips.



5 Vehicles with 2GR-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine: Engage each clamp.

Make sure to push each clamp until it is securely engaged.



WARNING

■ **To prevent inhaling dust**

Wear a respirator when using compressed air to clean the air cleaner filter.

NOTICE

■ **To prevent damaging the engine**

- Do not drive with the air cleaner filter removed. Doing so causes excessive engine wear.
- When removing the air cleaner filter, do not hit or drop it, as it may contain dust, sand. etc.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Tires

Replace or rotate tires in accordance with maintenance schedules and treadwear.

Checking tires

Check if the treadwear indicators are showing on the tires. Also check the tires for uneven wear, such as excessive wear on one side of the tread.

Check the spare tire condition and pressure if not rotated.



A New tread

B Worn tread

C Treadwear indicator

The location of treadwear indicators is shown by a "TWI" or " △ " mark, etc., molded into the sidewall of each tire.

Replace the tires if the treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.

When to replace your vehicle's tires

● Tires should be replaced if:

- The treadwear indicators are showing on a tire.
- You have tire damage such as cuts, splits, cracks deep enough to expose the fabric, and bulges indicating internal damage
- A tire goes flat repeatedly or cannot be properly repaired due to the size or location of a cut or other damage

If you are not sure, consult your Lexus dealer.

● Vehicles with 17-inch tires:

The wheel angle differs from vehicles equipped with 18-inch/19-inch tires. Therefore, 18-inch/19-inch tires cannot be installed, as sufficient gaps with surrounding parts cannot be ensured.

Tire life

Any tire over 6 years old must be checked by a qualified technician even if it has seldom or never been used or damage is not obvious.

Low profile tires (18-inch tires/19-inch tires)

Generally, low profile tires will wear more rapidly and tire grip performance will be reduced on snowy and/or icy roads when compared to standard tires. Be sure to use snow tires on snowy and/or icy roads and drive carefully at a speed appropriate for road and weather conditions.

If the tread on snow tires wears down below 4 mm (0.16 in.)

The effectiveness of the tires as snow tires is lost.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When inspecting or replacing tires

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents.
Failure to do so may cause damage to parts of the drivetrain as well as dangerous handling characteristics, which may lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

- Do not mix tires of different makes, models or tread patterns.
  Also, do not mix tires of remarkably different treadwear.
- Do not use tire sizes other than those recommended by Lexus.
- Do not mix differently constructed tires (radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
- Do not mix summer, all season and snow tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on another vehicle.
  Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.

NOTICE

■ Driving on rough roads

Take particular care when driving on roads with loose surfaces or potholes. These conditions may cause losses in tire inflation pressure, reducing the cushioning ability of the tires. In addition, driving on rough roads may cause damage to the tires themselves, as well as the vehicle's wheels and body.

■ Low profile tires (18-inch tires/19-inch tires)

Low profile tires may cause greater damage than usual to the tire wheel when sustaining impact from the road surface.

Therefore, pay attention to the following:

- Be sure to use proper tire inflation pressure. If tires are under-inflated, they may be damaged more severely.
- Avoid potholes, uneven pavement, curbs and other road hazards. Failure to do so may lead to severe tire and wheel damage.

■ If tire inflation pressure of each tire becomes low while driving

Do not continue driving, or your tires and/or wheels may be ruined.

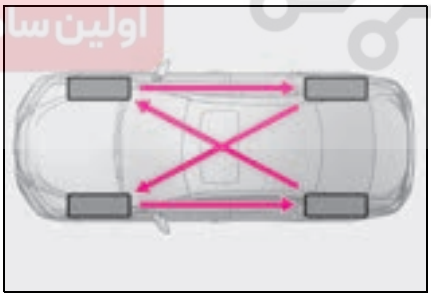
Tire rotation

Rotate the tires in the order shown.

To equalize tire wear and help extend tire life, Lexus recommends that tire rotation is carried out approximately every 10000 km (6000 miles).

Do not fail to initialize the tire pressure warning system after tire rotation.

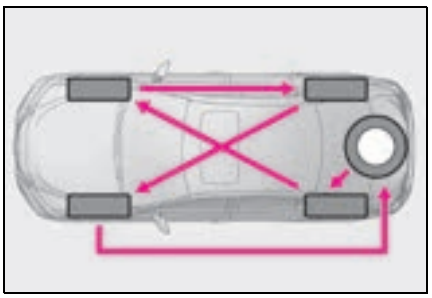
▶ Vehicles without full-size spare tire



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Vehicles with full-size spare tire



When rotating the tires

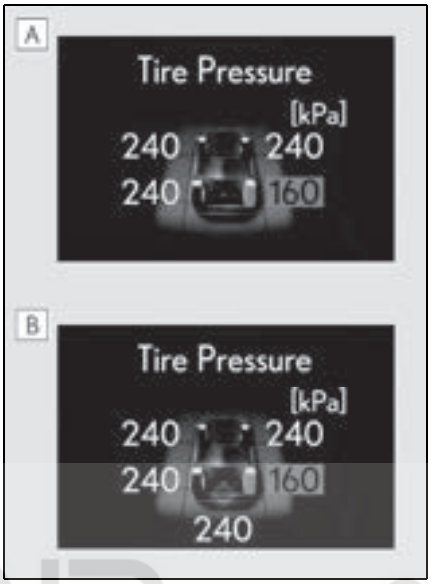
Make sure that the engine switch is off. If the tires are rotated while the engine switch is in IGNITION ON mode, the tire position information will not be updated.
If this accidentally occurs, either turn the engine switch to off and then to IGNITION ON mode, or initialize the tire pressure warning system after checking that the tire pressure is properly adjusted.

Tire pressure warning system

Your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure warning system that uses tire pressure warning valves and transmitters to detect low tire inflation pressure before serious problems arise.

- If the tire pressure drops below a predetermined level, the driver is warned by a screen display and a warning light. (→P.416)
- The tire pressure detected by the tire pressure warning system can be displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.105)

The illustration used is intended as an example, and may differ from the image that is actually displayed on the multi-information display.



A Vehicles without full-size spare tire

B Vehicles with full-size spare tire

Routine tire inflation pressure checks

The tire pressure warning system does not replace routine tire inflation pressure checks. Make sure to check tire inflation pressure as part of your routine of daily vehicle checks.

Tire inflation pressure

- It may take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode. It may also take a few minutes to display the tire inflation pressure after inflation pressure has been adjusted.
- Tire inflation pressure changes with temperature. The displayed values may also be different from the values measured using a tire pressure gauge.

Situations in which the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly

- In the following cases, the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- If non-genuine Lexus wheels are used.
- If a tire has been replaced with a tire that is not an OE (Original Equipment) tire.
- If a tire has been replaced with a tire that is not of the specified size.
- If tire chains etc. are equipped.
- If a window tint that affects the radio wave signals is installed.
- If there is a lot of snow or ice on the vehicle, particularly around the wheels or wheel housings.
- If the tire inflation pressure is extremely higher than the specified level.
- If wheels without tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are used.
- If the ID code on the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters is not registered in the tire pressure warning computer.
- If the spare tire is in a location subject to poor radio wave signal reception.*
- If a large metallic object which can interfere with signal reception is put in the trunk.*

*: Vehicles with full-size spare tire only

● Performance may be affected in the following situations.

- When driving near a TV tower, electric power plant, gas station, radio station, large display, airport or other facility that generates strong radio waves or electrical noise
- When carrying a portable radio, cellular phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device

If tire position information is not correctly displayed due to the radio wave conditions, the display may be corrected by driving and changing the radio wave conditions.

● When the vehicle is parked, the time taken for the warning to start or go off could be extended.

● When tire inflation pressure declines rapidly for example when a tire has burst, the warning may not function.

■ Warning performance of the tire pressure warning system

The warning of the tire pressure warning system will change in accordance with the conditions under which it was initialized. For this reason, the system may give a warning even if the tire pressure does not reach a low enough level, or if the pressure is higher than the pressure that was adjusted to when the system was initialized.

Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When replacing tires or wheels, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must also be installed.

When new tire pressure warning valves and transmitters are installed, new ID codes must be registered in the tire pressure warning computer and the tire pressure warning system must be initialized. (→P.389)

■ When replacing the tires and wheels

If the ID code of the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter is not registered, the tire pressure warning system will not work properly. After driving for about 10 minutes, the tire pressure warning light blinks for 1 minute and stays on to indicate a system malfunction.

NOTICE

■ Repairing or replacing tires, wheels, tire pressure warning valves, transmitters and tire valve caps

● When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may be damaged if not handled correctly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

- Make sure to install the tire valve caps. If the tire valve caps are not installed, water could enter the tire pressure warning valves and the tire pressure warning valves could be bound.
- When replacing tire valve caps, do not use tire valve caps other than those specified. The cap may become stuck.

To avoid damage to the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

When a tire is repaired with liquid sealants, the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may not operate properly. If a liquid sealant is used, contact your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop as soon as possible. After use of liquid sealant, make sure to replace the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter when repairing or replacing the tire. (→P.386)

Initializing the tire pressure warning system

The tire pressure warning system must be initialized in the following circumstances:

- When rotating the tires.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed when changing traveling speed.
- When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures)
- After registering the ID codes. (→P.389)

When the tire pressure warning system is initialized, the current tire inflation pressure is set as the benchmark pressure.

How to initialize the tire pressure warning system

1 Park the vehicle in a safe place and stop the engine for 20 minutes or more.

Initialization cannot be performed while the vehicle is moving.

2 Adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level.

Make sure to adjust the tire pressure to the specified cold tire inflation pressure level. The tire pressure warning system will operate based on this pressure level.

3 Start the engine. (→P.171)

4 Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches and select ⚙.

5 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select “Vehicle Settings”, and then press “OK”.

6 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select “TPWS”, and then press “OK”.

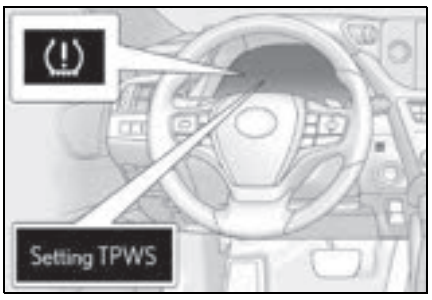
7 Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select “Set Pressure”, and then press and hold “OK” until the tire pressure warning light starts blinking.

A message is displayed on the multi-information display. Also, “--” is displayed for inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display while the tire pressure

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

warning system determines the position.



8 Drive at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

When initialization is complete, the inflation pressure of each tire will be displayed on the multi-information display.

Even if the vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, initialization can be completed by driving for a long time. However, if initialization does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes and then drive the vehicle again.

When initializing

- Initialization is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- Make sure to carry out initialization after adjusting the tire inflation pressure. Also, make sure the tires are cold before carrying out initialization or tire inflation pressure adjustment.
- The tire pressure warning system can be initialized by yourself, but depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, initialization may take some time to complete.

The initialization operation

- If you have accidentally turned the engine switch off during initialization, it is not necessary to manually restart the initialization again, as initialization will restart automatically the next time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.
- If you accidentally perform initialization when initialization is not necessary, adjust the tire inflation pressure to the specified level when the tires are cold, and conduct initialization again.
- While the position of each tire is being determined and the inflation pressures are not being displayed on the multi-information display, if the inflation pressure of a tire drops, the tire pressure warning light will come on.

If the tire pressure warning system is not initialized properly

- In the following situations, initialization may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible. Normally, initialization completes within approximately 30 minutes.
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more
  - Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads
  - Vehicle is driven near other vehicles and system cannot recognize tire pressure warning valve and transmitters of your vehicle over those of other vehicles

If initialization does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, park the vehicle in a safe place for approximately 20 minutes and then drive the vehicle again.

- If the vehicle is reversed during initialization, the data up to that point is reset, so perform the initialization procedure again from the beginning.
- In the following situations, initialization will not be started or was not completed properly and the system will not operate properly. Perform the initialization procedure again.
  - If, when attempting to start initialization, the tire pressure warning light does not blink 3 times.
  - If, when the vehicle has been driven for about 20 minutes after performing initialization, the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute and then illuminates.

If initialization cannot be completed after

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When initializing the tire pressure warning system

Do not initialize tire inflation pressure without first adjusting the tire inflation pressure to the specified level. Otherwise, the tire pressure warning light may not come on even if the tire inflation pressure is low, or it may come on when the tire inflation pressure is actually normal.

Registering ID codes

Every tire pressure warning valve and transmitter has a unique ID code. When replacing a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, it is necessary to register the ID code.

When registering the ID codes, perform the following procedure.

1. Park the vehicle in a safe place, wait for approximately 20 minutes, and then start the engine. (→P.171)
2. Press ◄ or ► of the meter control switches and select ⚙.
3. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Vehicle Settings", and then press "OK".
4. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "TPWS", and then press "OK".
5. Press ▲ or ▼ of the meter control switches and select "Change Wheel Set", and then press and hold "OK" until the tire pressure warning light starts slowly blinking 3 times.

Then a message will be displayed on the multi-information display.

When registration is being performed, the tire pressure warning light will blink for approximately 1 minute then illuminate and "--" will be displayed for the inflation pressure of each tire on the multi-information display.



6. Drive at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more for approximately 10 to 30 minutes.

Registration is complete when the tire pressure warning light turns off and the inflation pressure of each tire is displayed on the multi-information display. Registration may take longer than normal to complete if the vehicle speed cannot be maintained at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more. If registration cannot be completed after driving for 1 hour or more, perform the registration procedure again from the beginning.

7. Initialize the tire pressure warning system. (→P.387)

■ When registering ID codes

- ID code registration is performed while driving at a vehicle speed of approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more.
- Before performing ID code registration, make sure that no wheels with tire pressure warning valve and transmitters

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

installed are near the vehicle.

- Make sure to initialize the tire pressure warning system after registering the ID codes. If the system is initialized before registering the ID codes, the initialized values will be invalid.
- ID codes can be registered by yourself, but depending on the driving conditions and driving environment, registration may take some time to complete.

Canceling ID code registration

- To cancel ID code registration after it has been started, turn the engine switch off before driving the vehicle.
  If the vehicle is driven after ID code registration is started, to cancel registration, perform the ID code registration start procedure again and turn the engine switch off before driving.
- If ID code registration has been canceled, the tire pressure warning light will blink for approximately 1 minute when the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode and then illuminate. The tire pressure warning system will be operational when the tire pressure warning light turns off.
- If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, ID code registration may not have been canceled correctly. To cancel registration, perform the ID code registration start procedure again and then turn the engine switch off before driving.

If ID codes are not registered properly

- In the following situations, ID code registration may take longer than usual to be completed or may not be possible. Normally, registration completes within approximately 30 minutes.
  - Vehicle is not parked for approximately 20 minutes or more before driving
  - Vehicle is not driven at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more
  - Vehicle is driven on unpaved roads
  - Vehicle is driven near other vehicles and system cannot recognize tire pressure warning valve and transmitters of your vehicle over those of other vehicles
  - Wheel with tire pressure warning valve and transmitter installed is inside or near the vehicle
- If registration does not complete after driving for 1 hour or more, perform the ID code registration procedure again from the beginning.
- If the vehicle is reversed during registration, the data up to that point is reset, so perform the registration procedure again from the beginning.
- In the following situations, ID code registration will not be started or was not completed properly and the system will not operate properly. Perform the ID code registration procedure again.
  - If, when attempting to start ID code registration, the tire pressure warning light does not blink slowly 3 times.
  - If, when the vehicle has been driven for about 20 minutes after performing ID code registration, the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute and then illuminates.
- If ID code registration cannot be completed after performing the above procedure, contact your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Tire inflation pressure

Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Tire inflation pressure should be checked at least once per month. However, Lexus recommends that tire inflation pressure be checked once every two weeks.

Effects of incorrect tire inflation pressure

Driving with incorrect tire inflation pressure may result in the following:

- Reduced fuel economy
- Reduced driving comfort and poor handling
- Reduced tire life due to wear
- Reduced safety
- Damage to the drivetrain

If a tire needs frequent inflating, have it checked by your Lexus dealer.

Instructions for checking tire inflation pressure

When checking tire inflation pressure, observe the following:

- Check only when the tires are cold.
  If your vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours or has not been driven for more than 1.5 km or 1 mile, you will get an accurate cold tire inflation pressure reading.
- Always use a tire pressure gauge.
  It is difficult to judge if a tire is properly inflated based only on its appearance.
- It is normal for the tire inflation pressure to be higher after driving as heat is generated in the tire. Do not reduce tire inflation pressure after driving.
- Passengers and luggage weight should be placed so that the vehicle is balanced.

WARNING

Proper inflation is critical to save tire performance

Keep your tires properly inflated.
If the tires are not properly inflated, the following conditions may occur which could lead to an accident resulting in death or serious injury:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor handling
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires
- Air leaking from between tire and wheel
- Wheel deformation and/or tire damage
- Greater possibility of tire damage while driving (due to road hazards, expansion joints, sharp edges in the road, etc.)

NOTICE

When inspecting and adjusting tire inflation pressure

Be sure to put the tire valve caps back on.
If a valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may get into the valve and cause an air leak, resulting in decreased tire inflation pressure.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Wheels

If a wheel is bent, cracked or heavily corroded, it should be replaced. Otherwise, the tire may separate from the wheel or cause a loss of handling control.

Wheel selection

When replacing wheels, care should be taken to ensure that they are equivalent to those removed in load capacity, diameter, rim width and inset*.

Replacement wheels are available at your Lexus dealer.

*: Conventionally referred to as offset.

Lexus does not recommend using the following:

- Wheels of different sizes or types
- Used wheels
- Bent wheels that have been straightened

When replacing wheels

The wheels of your vehicle are equipped with tire pressure warning valves and transmitters that allow the tire pressure warning system to provide advance warning in the event of a loss in tire inflation pressure. Whenever wheels are replaced, tire pressure warning valves and transmitters must be installed. (→P.386)

WARNING

When replacing wheels

- Do not use wheels that are a different size from those recommended in the Owner's Manual, as this may result in a loss of handling control.
- Never use an inner tube in a leaking wheel which is designed for a tubeless tire. Doing so may result in an accident, causing death or serious injury.

Use of defective wheels prohibited

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels. Doing so could cause the tire to leak air during driving, possibly causing an accident.

NOTICE

Replacing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters

- Because tire repair or replacement may affect the tire pressure warning valves and transmitters, make sure to have tires serviced by your Lexus dealer or other qualified service shop. In addition, make sure to purchase your tire pressure warning valves and transmitters at your Lexus dealer.
- Ensure that only genuine Lexus wheels are used on your vehicle. Tire pressure warning valves and transmitters may not work properly with non-genuine wheels.

Aluminum wheel precautions

- Use only Lexus wheel nuts and wrenches designed for use with your aluminum wheels.
- When rotating, repairing or changing your tires, check that the wheel nuts are still tight after driving 1600 km (1000 miles).

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Be careful not to damage the aluminum wheels when using tire chains.
- Use only Lexus genuine balance weights or equivalent and a plastic or rubber hammer when balancing your wheels.

Air conditioning filter

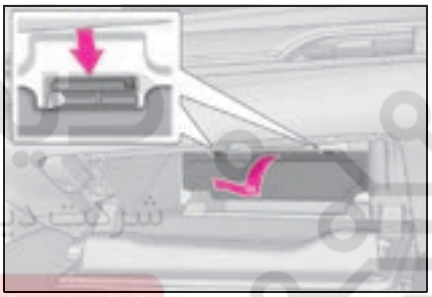
The air conditioning filter must be changed regularly to maintain air conditioning efficiency.

Removing the air conditioning filter

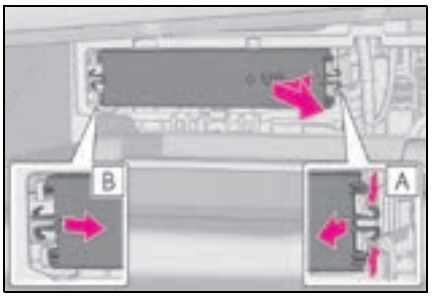
1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the glove box.

3 Remove the panel.



4 Unlock the filter cover (A), pull the filter cover out of the claws (B), and remove the filter cover.

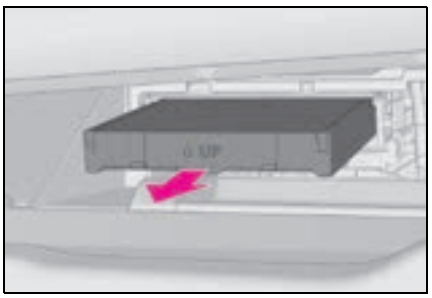


شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

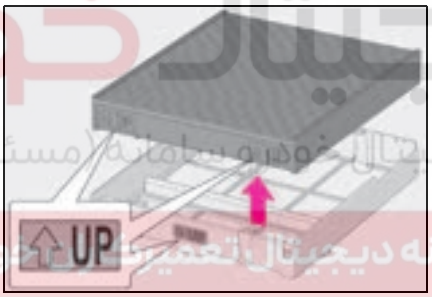
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

5 Remove the filter case.



6 Remove the air conditioning filter from the filter case and replace it with a new one.

The " UP" marks shown on the filter and the filter case should be pointing up.



Checking interval

Inspect and replace the air conditioning filter according to the maintenance schedule. In dusty areas or areas with heavy traffic flow, early replacement may be required. (→P.360)

If air flow from the vents decreases dramatically

The filter may be clogged. Check the filter and replace if necessary.

Air conditioning filter with deodorizing function

When fragrances are placed in your vehicle, the deodorizing effect may become significantly weakened in a short period.

When an air conditioning odor comes out continuously, replace the air conditioning filter.

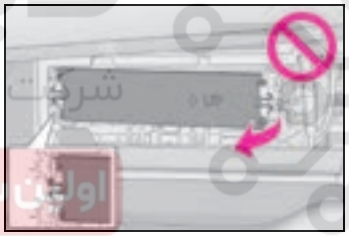
NOTICE

When using the air conditioning system

- Make sure that a filter is always installed.
  Using the air conditioning system without a filter may cause damage to the system.
- The filter is replaceable.
  When cleaning the filter, do not clean with water or an air gun.

To prevent damage to the filter cover

When moving the filter cover in the direction of arrow to release the fitting, pay attention not to apply excessive force to the claws. Otherwise, the claws may be damaged.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Electronic key battery

Replace the battery with a new one if it is depleted.

If the electronic key battery is depleted

The following symptoms may occur:

- The smart entry & start system and wireless remote control will not function properly.
- The operational range will be reduced.

When the card key battery needs to be replaced (if equipped)

The battery for the card key is available only at Lexus dealers. Your Lexus dealer can replace the battery for you.

Items to prepare

Prepare the following before replacing the battery:

- Flathead screwdriver
- Small flathead screwdriver
- Lithium battery CR2032

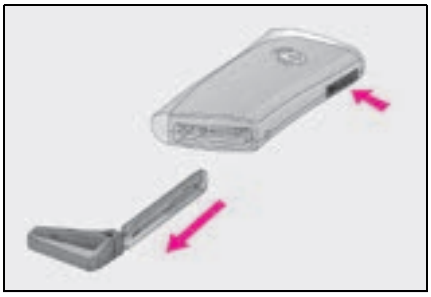
Use a CR2032 lithium battery

- Batteries can be purchased at your Lexus dealer, local electrical appliance shops or camera stores.
- Replace only with the same or equivalent type recommended by the manufacturer.
- Dispose of used batteries according to the local laws.

Replacing the battery

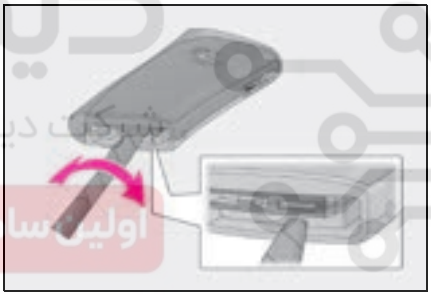
▶ Type A

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

To prevent damage to the key, wrap the tip of the screwdriver with tape.



3 Remove the depleted battery.

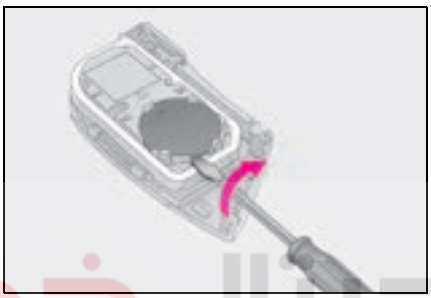
Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

facing up.





▶ Type B

1 Take out the mechanical key.



2 Remove the cover.

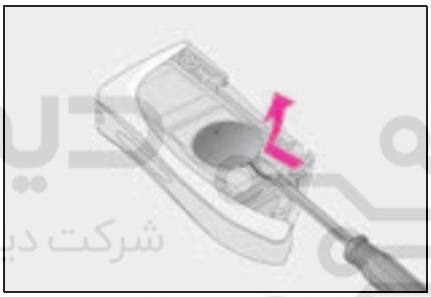


3 Remove the battery cover.



4 Remove the depleted battery.

Insert a new battery with the "+" terminal facing up.



⚠ WARNING

■ Battery precautions

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

- Do not swallow the battery. Doing so may cause chemical burns.
- A coin battery or button battery is used in the electronic key. If a battery is swallowed, it may cause severe chemical burns in as little as 2 hours and may result in death or serious injury.
- Keep away new and removed batteries from children.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- If the cover cannot be firmly closed, stop using the electronic key and stow the key in the place where children cannot reach, and then contact your Lexus dealer.
- If you accidentally swallow a battery or put a battery into a part of your body, get emergency medical attention immediately.

To prevent battery explosion or leakage of flammable liquid or gas

- Replace the battery with a new battery of the same type. If a wrong type of battery is used, it may explode.
- Do not expose batteries to extremely low pressure due to high altitude or extremely high temperatures.
- Do not burn, break or cut a battery.

NOTICE

When replacing the battery

Use a flathead screwdriver of appropriate size. Applying excessive force may deform or damage the cover.

For normal operation after replacing the battery

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidents:

- Always work with dry hands.

Moisture may cause the battery to rust.

- Do not touch or move any other component inside the remote control.
- Do not bend either of the battery terminals.

Checking and replacing fuses

If any of the electrical components do not operate, a fuse may have blown. If this happens, check and replace the fuses as necessary.

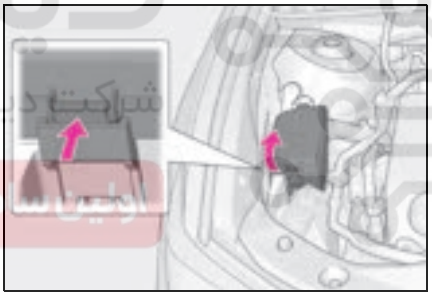
Checking and replacing fuses

1 Turn the engine switch off.

2 Open the fuse box cover.

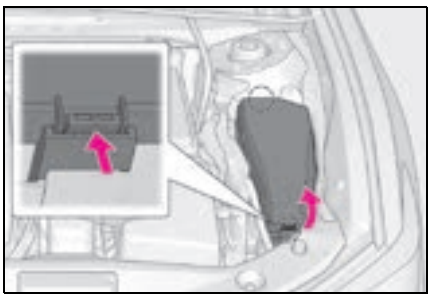
▶ Engine compartment: type A fuse box

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Engine compartment: type B fuse box

Push the tab in and lift the lid off.



▶ Left side instrument panel

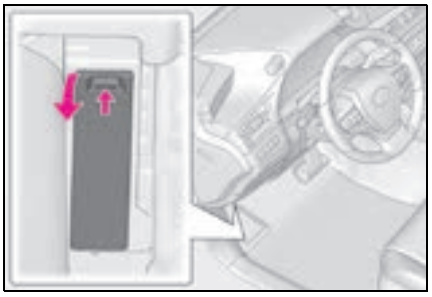
Push the tab in and remove the lid.

6 Maintenance and care

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

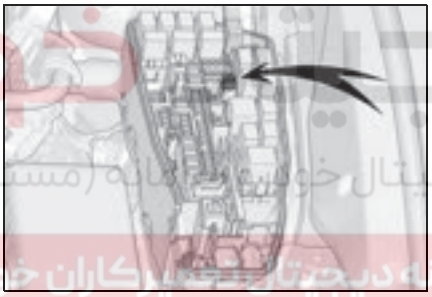
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Make sure to push the tab in during removal or installation.



3 Remove the fuse with the pullout tool.

Only type A fuses can be removed using the pullout tool.

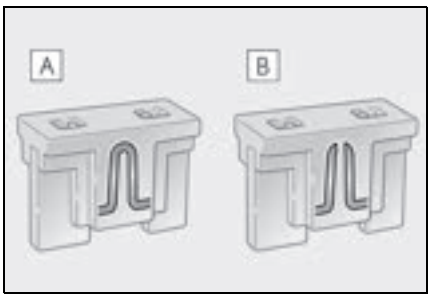


4 Check if the fuse is blown.

Type A and B:
Replace the blown fuse with a new fuse of an appropriate amperage rating. The amperage rating can be found on the fuse box lid.

Type C:
Contact your Lexus dealer.

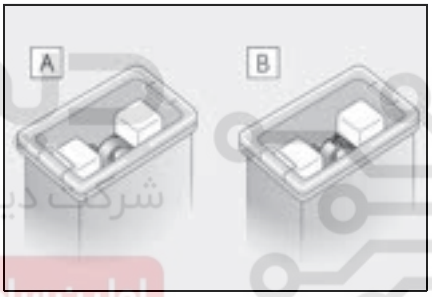
▶ Type A



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

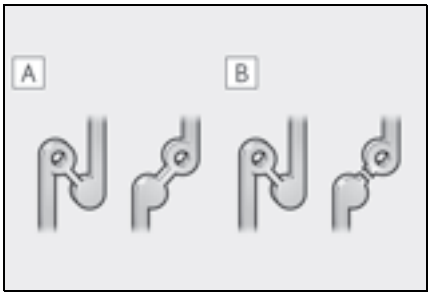
▶ Type B



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

▶ Type C



A Normal fuse

B Blown fuse

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ After a fuse is replaced

- When installing the lid, make sure that the tab is installed securely.
- If the lights do not turn on even after the fuse has been replaced, a bulb may need replacement. (→P.399)
- If the replaced fuse blows again, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

■ If there is an overload in a circuit

The fuses are designed to blow, protecting the wiring harness from damage.

WARNING

■ To prevent system breakdowns and vehicle fire

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may cause damage to the vehicle, and possibly a fire or injury.

- Never use a fuse of a higher amperage rating than that indicated, or use any other object in place of a fuse.
- Always use a genuine Lexus fuse or equivalent.
  Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary fix.
- Do not modify the fuses or fuse boxes.

NOTICE

■ Before replacing fuses

Have the cause of electrical overload determined and repaired by your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Light bulbs

You may replace the following bulb by yourself. Before replacing, check the wattage of the light bulb to be replaced. As there is a danger that components may be damaged, we recommend that replacement is carried out by your Lexus dealer.

Bulb location



A Front turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

■ Bulbs that need to be replaced by your Lexus dealer

- Headlights
- Front position lights and daytime running lights
- Front turn signal lights (vehicles with triple-beam headlights)
- Cornering lights
- Side turn signal lights
- Outer foot lights

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Tail lights
- Stop lights
- Rear turn signal lights
- Back-up lights
- High mounted stoplight
- License plate lights
- Rear fog lights (if equipped)

LED lights

The lights other than the front turn signal lights (vehicles with single-beam headlights) each consist of a number of LEDs. If any of the LEDs burn out, take your vehicle to your Lexus dealer to have the light replaced.

Condensation build-up on the inside of the lens

Temporary condensation build-up on the inside of the headlight lens does not indicate a malfunction. Contact your Lexus dealer for more information in the following situations:

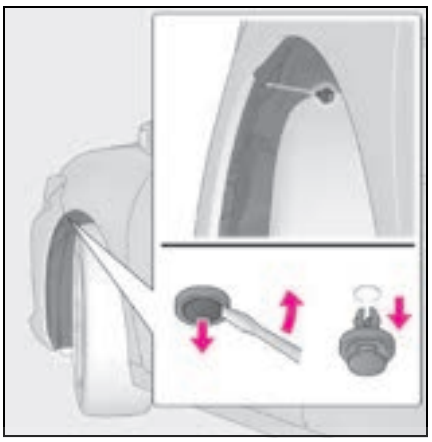
- Large drops of water have built up on the inside of the lens.
- Water has built up inside the headlight.

Replacing light bulb (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

Front turn signal lights

1 To ensure enough space to perform work, turn the steering wheel to rotate the front wheel away from the bulb to be replaced. Remove the fender liner clip.

Turn the steering wheel to the left when replacing the right side light bulb, and turn the steering wheel to the right when replacing the left side light bulb.



2 To protect the front bumper from being damaged, apply protective tape around the clips as shown in the illustration.

Use masking tape, etc. Do not use duct tape, as it may leave residue or damage the paint when removed.



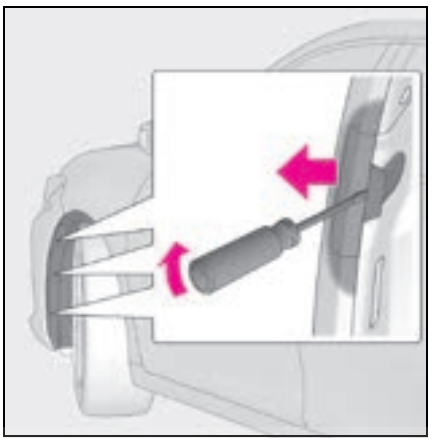
3 Insert a flathead screwdriver between the front bumper and the fender liner and then detach the claw.

If the front bumper is pulled outward as shown in the illustration, the claw is easily

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

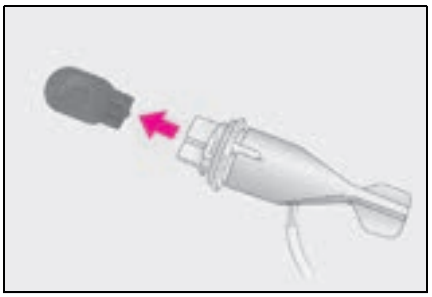
detached.



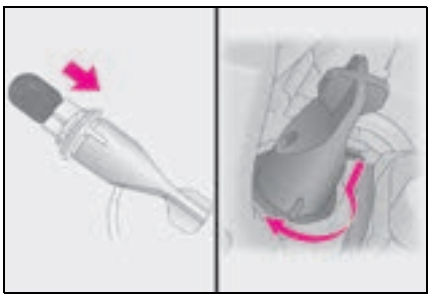
4 Pull back the fender liner and turn the bulb base counterclockwise.



5 Remove the light bulb.



6 Install a new light bulb then install the bulb base to the light unit by inserting it and turning the bulb base clockwise.



7 Return the fender liner to its original position, and install the clip.

Make sure that the fender liner is correctly positioned on the inner side of the front bumper.



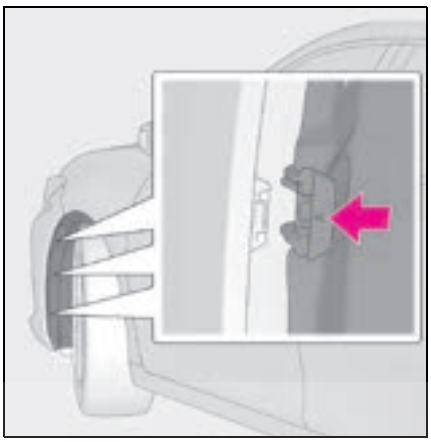
8 Engage the clips to the front bumper to install the fender liner,

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

and then remove the protective tape.



WARNING

■ **Replacing light bulb**

- Turn off the light. Do not attempt to replace the bulb immediately after turning off the light.
  The bulb become very hot and may cause burns.
- Do not touch the glass portion of the light bulb with bare hands. When it is unavoidable to hold the glass portion, use and hold with a clean dry cloth to avoid getting moisture and oils on the bulb.
  Also, if the bulb is scratched or dropped, it may blow out or crack.
- Fully install light bulb and any parts used to secure it. Failure to do so may result in heat damage, fire, or water entering the light unit. This may damage the light or cause condensation to build up on the lens.

■ **To prevent damage or fire**

- Make sure bulb is fully seated and locked.
- Check the wattage of the bulb before installing to prevent heat damage.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

7-1. Essential information

Emergency flashers 404

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency 404

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising .. 405

7-2. Steps to take in an emergency

If your vehicle needs to be towed 407

If you think something is wrong 410

Fuel pump shut off system 411

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds 412

If a warning message is displayed 421

If you have a flat tire 425

If the engine will not start 435

If you lose your keys 436

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 437

If the electronic key does not operate properly 437

If the battery is discharged 440

If your vehicle overheats 445

If the vehicle becomes stuck 447

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه هوشمند آنلاین خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

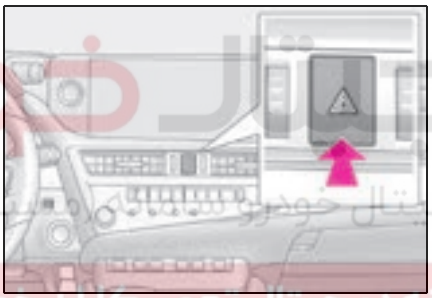
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Emergency flashers

The emergency flashers are used to warn other drivers when the vehicle has to be stopped in the road due to a breakdown, etc.

Operating instructions

Press the switch to flash all of the turn signal lights.
To turn them off, press the switch once again.



■ Emergency flashers

- If the emergency flashers are used for a long time while the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.
- If any of the SRS airbags deploy (inflate) or in the event of a strong rear impact, the emergency flashers will turn on automatically.
  The emergency flashers will turn off automatically after operating for approximately 20 minutes. To manually turn the emergency flashers off, press the switch twice. (The emergency flashers may not turn on automatically depending on the force of the impact and conditions of the collision.)

If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency

Only in an emergency, such as if it becomes impossible to stop the vehicle in the normal way, stop the vehicle using the following procedure:

Stopping the vehicle

1 Steadily step on the brake pedal with both feet and firmly depress it.

Do not pump the brake pedal repeatedly as this will increase the effort required to slow the vehicle.

2 Shift the shift lever to N.

▶ If the shift lever is shifted to N

3 After slowing down, stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

4 Stop the engine.

▶ If the shift lever cannot be shifted to N

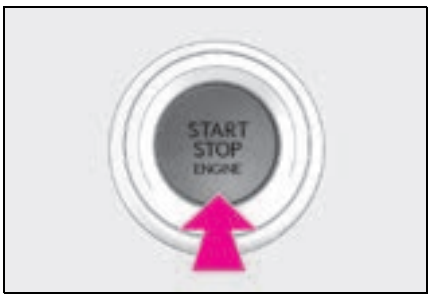
3 Keep depressing the brake pedal with both feet to reduce vehicle speed as much as possible.

4 To stop the engine, press and hold the engine switch for 2 consecutive

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

seconds or more, or press it briefly 3 times or more in succession.



5 Stop the vehicle in a safe place by the road.

WARNING

■ If the engine has to be turned off while driving

Power assist for the steering wheel will be lost, making the steering wheel heavier to turn. Decelerate as much as possible before turning off the engine.

If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising

This vehicle is not designed to be able to drive on roads that are deeply flooded with water. Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. It is dangerous to remain in the vehicle, if it anticipated that the vehicle will be flooded or set a drift. Remain calm and follow the following.

- If the door can be opened, open the door and exit the vehicle.
- If the door can not be opened, open the window using the power window switch and ensure an escape route.
- If the window can be opened, exit the vehicle through the window.
- If the door and window cannot be opened due to the rising water, remain calm, wait until the water level inside the vehicle rises to the point that the water pressure inside of the vehicle equals the water pressure outside of the vehicle and then open the door after waiting for the rising water to enter the vehicle, and exit the vehicle. When the outside water level exceeds half the height of the door, the door cannot be opened from the inside due to water pressure.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Water level exceeds the floor

When the water level exceeds the floor and time has passed, the electrical equipment will get damaged, the power windows will not operate, the engine will stop and the vehicle may not be able to get moving.

Using an emergency escape hammer*1

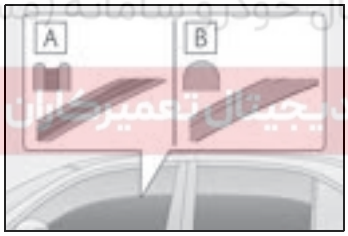
Laminated glass*2 is used in the windshield and the windows on this vehicle.
Laminated glass cannot be shattered with an emergency hammer*1.

*1: Contact your Lexus dealer or aftermarket accessory manufacturer for further information about an emergency hammer.

*2: If equipped

How to distinguish laminated glass

When looking from the cross-sectional view point, laminated glass is two sheets of glass pasted together.



A Laminated glass

B Tempered glass

WARNING

Caution while driving

Do not drive on roads where the roads may be submerged or the water may be rising. Otherwise the vehicle may be damaged and cannot move, as well as become flooded and set a drift, which may lead to death.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If your vehicle needs to be towed

If towing is necessary, we recommend having your vehicle towed by your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service, using a wheel-lift type truck or flatbed truck.
Use a safety chain system for all towing, and abide by all state/provincial and local laws.

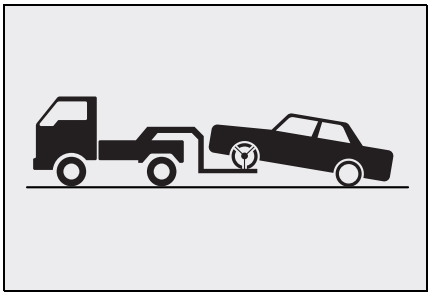
Situations when it is necessary to contact dealers before towing

The following may indicate a problem with your transmission. Contact your Lexus dealer or commercial towing service before towing.

- The engine is running but the vehicle does not move.
- The vehicle makes an abnormal sound.

Towing with a wheel-lift type truck

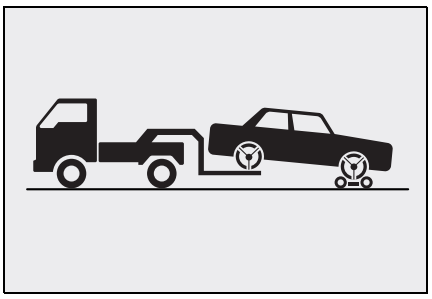
▶ From the front



Release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.186)

▶ From the rear



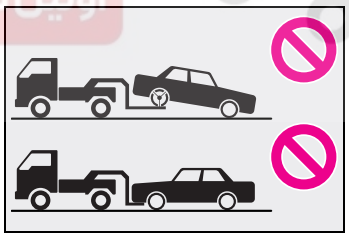
Use a towing dolly under the front wheels.

WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ When towing the vehicle

Be sure to transport the vehicle with the front wheels raised or with all four wheels raised off the ground. If the vehicle is towed with the front wheels contacting the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.



NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle when towing using a wheel-lift type truck

When raising the vehicle, ensure adequate ground clearance for towing at the opposite end of the raised vehicle. Without adequate clearance, the vehicle could be damaged while being towed.

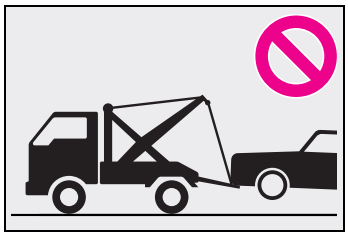
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

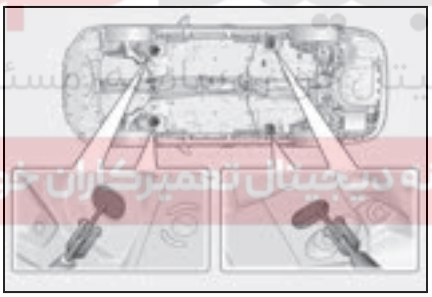
■ Towing with a sling-type truck

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

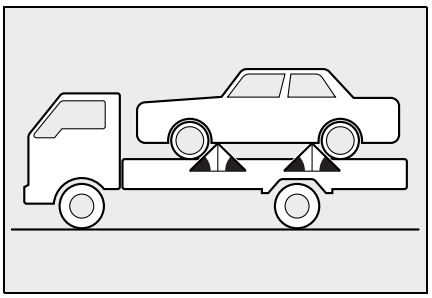


Using a flatbed truck

If your vehicle is transported by a flatbed truck, it should be tied down at the locations shown in the illustration.



If you use chains or cables to tie down your vehicle, the angles shaded in black must be 45°.



If you cannot tie down the vehicle using the method above, use tire strapping belts.

NOTICE

■ Using a flatbed truck

Do not overly tighten the tie downs or the vehicle may be damaged.

Emergency towing

If a tow truck is not available in an emergency, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using cables or chains secured to the emergency towing eyelet. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced roads for at most 80 km (50 miles) at under 30 km/h (18 mph).

A driver must be in the vehicle to steer and operate the brakes. The vehicle's wheels, drive train, axles, steering and brakes must be in good condition.

Emergency towing procedure

To have your vehicle towed by another vehicle, the towing eyelet must be installed to your vehicle. Install the towing eyelet using the following procedure.

1 Take out the wheel nut wrench and towing eyelet. (→P.426)

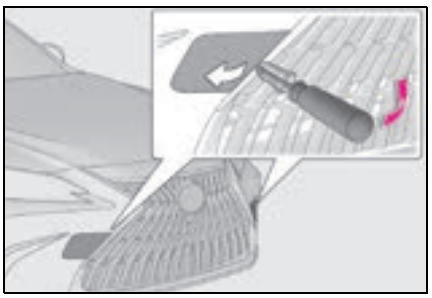
2 Remove the eyelet cover using a flathead screwdriver.

To protect the bodywork, place a rag between the screwdriver and the vehicle

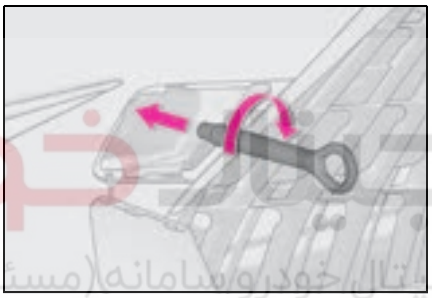
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

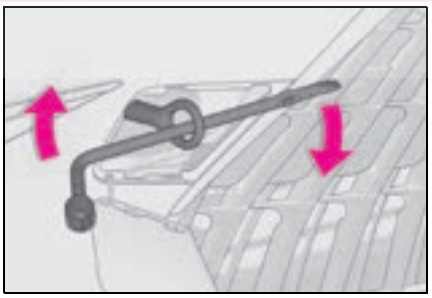
body as shown in the illustration.



3 Insert the towing eyelet into the hole and tighten partially by hand.



4 Tighten down the towing eyelet securely using a wheel nut wrench or hard metal bar.



5 Securely attach cables or chains to the towing eyelet.

Take care not to damage the vehicle body.

6 Enter the vehicle being towed and start the engine.

If the engine does not start, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Shift the shift lever to N and release the parking brake.

Turn automatic mode off. (→P.186)

When the shift lever cannot be shifted: →P.177, 182

■ While towing

If the engine is not running, the power assist for the brakes and steering will not function, making steering and braking more difficult.

■ Wheel nut wrench

Wheel nut wrench is installed in trunk. (→P.426)

⚠ WARNING

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in death or serious injury.

■ While towing

- When towing using cables or chains, avoid sudden starts, etc. which place excessive stress on the towing eyelets, cables or chains. The towing eyelets, cables or chains may become damaged, broken debris may hit people, and cause serious damage.
- Do not turn the engine switch off. There is a possibility that the steering wheel is locked and cannot be operated.

■ Installing towing eyelets to the vehicle

Make sure that towing eyelets are installed securely.
If not securely installed, towing eyelets may come loose during towing.

NOTICE

■ To prevent damage to the vehicle during emergency towing

Do not secure cables or chains to the suspension components.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If you think something is wrong

If you notice any of the following symptoms, your vehicle probably needs adjustment or repair. Contact your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Visible symptoms

- Fluid leaks under the vehicle. (Water dripping from the air conditioning after use is normal.)
- Flat-looking tires or uneven tire wear
- Engine coolant temperature gauge continually points higher than normal.

Audible symptoms

- Changes in exhaust sound
- Excessive tire squeal when cornering
- Strange noises related to the suspension system
- Pinging or other noises related to the engine

Operational symptoms

- Engine missing, stumbling or running roughly
- Appreciable loss of power
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when braking
- Vehicle pulls heavily to one side when driving on a level road
- Loss of brake effectiveness, spongy feeling, pedal almost touches the floor

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Fuel pump shut off system

To minimize the risk of fuel leakage when the engine stalls or when an airbag inflates upon collision, the fuel pump shut off system stops the supply of fuel to the engine.

Restarting the engine

Follow the procedure below to restart the engine after the system is activated.

1 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode or turn it off.

2 Restart the engine.

NOTICE

■ Before starting the engine

Inspect the ground under the vehicle. If you find that fuel has leaked onto the ground, the fuel system has been damaged and is in need of repair. Do not restart the engine.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If a warning light turns on or a warning buzzer sounds

Calmly perform the following actions if any of the warning lights comes on or flashes. If a light comes on or flashes, but then goes off, this does not necessarily indicate a malfunction in the system. However, if this continues to occur, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Actions to the warning lights or warning buzzers

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red)	Indicates that: ● The brake fluid level is low; or ● The brake system is malfunctioning → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer. Continuing to drive the vehicle may be dangerous.**

■ Brake system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ High coolant temperature warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine coolant temperature is too high → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place.** **Handling method (→P.445)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Charging system warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in the vehicle's charging system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Low engine oil pressure warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Malfunction indicator lamp (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The electronic engine control system; or ● The electronic throttle control system → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact your Lexus dealer.**

■ SRS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The SRS airbag system; or ● The seat belt pretensioner system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Pop Up Hood warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that the Pop Up Hood system has operated → **The Pop Up Hood system cannot be reused once it has operated. Have it replaced by your Lexus dealer.** Indicates a malfunction in the Pop Up Hood system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ ABS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The ABS; or ● The brake assist system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Inappropriate pedal operation warning light* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When a buzzer sounds: ● Brake Override System is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is malfunctioning ● Drive-Start Control is operating ● PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped) is operating → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display.** When a buzzer does not sound: Brake Override System is operating. → **Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

■ Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (red) or  (yellow)	Indicates a malfunction in the EPS (Electric Power Steering) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Low fuel level warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates that remaining fuel is approximately 9 L (2.4 gal., 2.0 Imp.gal.) or less → **Refuel the vehicle.**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Driver's and front passenger's seat belt reminder light (warning buzzer)*1

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the driver and/or front passenger to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.** **If the front passenger's seat is occupied, the front passenger's seat belt also needs to be fastened to make the warning light (warning buzzer) turn off.**

*1: Driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer:

▶ Except for vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter (except for the Philippines, Cambodia and Egypt)

The driver's and front passenger's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver and front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

▶ For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter (except for the Philippines, Cambodia and Egypt)

The driver's seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the driver that his or her seat belt is not fastened. Once the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode, the buzzer sounds. If the seat belt is still unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

The front passenger' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the front passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

■ Rear passengers' seat belt reminder lights*1 (warning buzzer)*2

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Warns the rear passengers to fasten their seat belts → **Fasten the seat belt.**

*1: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

Except for vehicles with model code*3 that has "W" or "Q" as the last letter: Regardless of whether or not a rear passenger is present, if the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode with the rear seat belts unfastened, this light will also illuminate for a certain period of time.

*2: Rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer:

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Except for vehicles with model code*3 that has "W" or "Q" as the last letter

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the seat belt is fastened and unfastened and the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

▶ For vehicles with model code*3 that has "W" or "Q" as the last letter

The rear passengers' seat belt warning buzzer sounds to alert the rear passenger that his or her seat belt is not fastened. If the seat belt is unfastened, the buzzer sounds intermittently for a certain period of time after the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

*3: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

■ Tire pressure warning light

Warning light	Details/Actions
	When the light comes on after blinking for approximately 1 minute: Malfunction in the tire pressure warning system → **Have the system checked by your Lexus dealer.** When the light comes on: Low tire inflation pressure such as ● Natural causes ● Flat tire → **Immediately stop the vehicle in a safe place. Handling method (→P.419)**

■ LTA indicator* (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (orange) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.234)**

*: This light illuminates on the multi-information display.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Stop & Start cancel indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
(flashes) (if equipped)	Indicates a malfunction in the Stop & Start system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(flashes)	When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the Lexus parking assist-sensor function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.274)**

■ RCTA OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(flashes) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the rear bumper around the radar sensor is covered with dirt, etc. (→P.259) → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.281)**

■ RCD OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
(flashes or illuminates) (if equipped)	Indicates a RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function is malfunctioning or disabled. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.287, 421)**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ PKSB OFF indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds: Indicates a malfunction in the PKSB (Parking Support Brake) system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: Indicates that the system is temporarily unavailable, possibly due to a sensor being dirty or covered with ice, etc. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.294)**

■ PCS warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes or illuminates) (if equipped)	When a buzzer sounds simultaneously: Indicates a malfunction has occurred in the PCS (Pre-Collision System) → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.** When a buzzer does not sound: The PCS (Pre-Collision System) has become temporarily unavailable, corrective action may be necessary. → **Follow the instructions displayed on the multi-information display. (→P.213, 421)** If the PCS (Pre-Collision System) or VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) system is disabled, the PCS warning light will illuminate. → P.225

■ Slip indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
	Indicates a malfunction in: ● The VSC system; ● The TRC system; or ● The hill-start assist control system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Parking brake indicator

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the parking brake system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

Brake hold operated indicator (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
 (flashes)	Indicates a malfunction in the brake hold system → **Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.**

Master warning light (warning buzzer)

Warning light	Details/Actions
	A buzzer sounds and the warning light comes on and flashes to indicate that the master warning system has detected a malfunction. → P.421

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

Passenger detection sensor, seat belt reminder and warning buzzer

- If luggage is placed on the passenger seat, the front passenger detection sensor or rear passenger detection sensor (if equipped) may cause the warning light to flash and the warning buzzer to sound even if a passenger is not sitting in the seat.
- If a cushion is placed on the seat, the sensor may not detect a passenger, and the warning light may not operate properly.

Electric power steering system warning light (warning buzzer)

When the battery charge becomes insufficient or the voltage temporarily drops, the electric power steering system warning light may come on and the warning buzzer may sound.

When the tire pressure warning light comes on

Inspect the tires to check if a tire is punctured.

If a tire is punctured: →P.425

If none of the tires are punctured:
Turn the engine switch off then turn it to IGNITION ON mode. Check if the tire pressure warning light comes on or blinks.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light blinks for approximately 1 minute then stays on

There may be a malfunction in the tire pressure warning system. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

▶ If the tire pressure warning light comes on

1. After the temperature of the tires has lowered sufficiently, check the inflation pressure of each tire and adjust them to the specified level.
2. If the warning light does not turn off even after several minutes have elapsed, check that the inflation pres-

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

sure of each tire is at the specified level and perform initialization. (→P.387)

■ **The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes**

The tire pressure warning light may come on due to natural causes such as natural air leaks and tire inflation pressure changes caused by temperature. In this case, adjusting the tire inflation pressure will turn off the warning light (after a few minutes).

■ **When a tire is replaced with a spare tire (vehicles with compact spare tire)**

The compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter. If a tire goes flat, the tire pressure warning light will not turn off even though the flat tire has been replaced with the spare tire. Replace the spare tire with the repaired tire and adjust the tire inflation pressure. The tire pressure warning light will go off after a few minutes.

■ **Conditions that the tire pressure warning system may not function properly**

→P.385

WARNING

■ **If both the ABS and the brake system warning lights remain on**

Stop your vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
The vehicle will become extremely unstable during braking, and the ABS system may fail, which could cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

■ **When the electric power steering system warning light comes on**

When the light comes on yellow, the assist to the power steering is restricted.
When the light comes on red, the assist to the power steering is lost and handling operations of the steering wheel become extremely heavy.
When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

■ **If the tire pressure warning light comes on**

Be sure to observe the following precautions.
Failure to do so could cause a loss of vehicle control and result in death or serious injury.

- Stop your vehicle in a safe place as soon as possible. Check and adjust the tire inflation pressure immediately.
- If the tire pressure warning light comes on even after tire inflation pressure adjustment, it is probable that you have a flat tire. Check the tires. If a tire is flat, change it with the spare tire and have the flat tire repaired by the nearest Lexus dealer.
- Avoid abrupt maneuvering and braking.
  If the vehicle tires deteriorate, you could lose control of the steering wheel or the brakes.

■ **If a blowout or sudden air leakage should occur**

The tire pressure warning system may not activate immediately.

NOTICE

■ **To ensure the tire pressure warning system operates properly**

Do not install tires with different specifications or makers, as the tire pressure warning system may not operate properly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If a warning message is displayed

The multi-information display shows warnings of system malfunctions, incorrectly performed operations, and messages that indicate a need for maintenance. When a message is shown, perform the correction procedure appropriate to the message.

Except F SPORT models:



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

F SPORT models (main meter in center position):



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

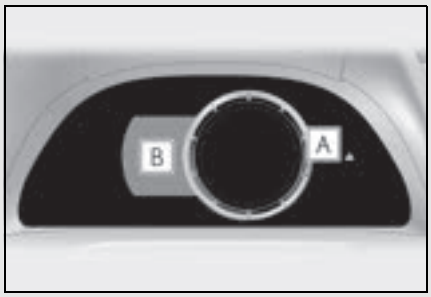
Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

F SPORT models (main meter moved to the right):



A Master warning light

The master warning light also comes on or flashes in order to indicate that a message is currently being displayed on the multi-information display.

B Multi-information display

Follow the instructions of the message on the multi-information display.

If any of the warning messages are shown again after the appropriate actions have been performed, contact your Lexus dealer.

Messages and warnings

The master warning light and warning buzzers operate as follows depending on the content of the message. If a message indicates the need for inspection by a dealer, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	Sounds	Indicates an important situation, such as when a system related to driving is malfunctioning or that danger may result if the correction procedure is not performed
Flashes	Sounds	Indicates a situation, such as when damage to the vehicle or danger may result

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

	Warning buzzer*	Warning
Comes on	Does not sound	Indicates a condition, such as malfunction of electrical components, their condition, or indicates the need for maintenance
Flashes	Does not sound	Indicates a situation, such as when an operation has been performed incorrectly, or indicates how to perform an operation correctly

*: A buzzer sounds the first time a message is shown on the multi-information display.

- In some situations, the master warning light and warning buzzer may not operate as specified. In this case, follow the instructions displayed in the warning message.
- If a warning light comes on or flashes at the same time that a warning message is displayed, take corrective action according to the warning light. (→P.412)

Warning messages

The warning messages explained below may differ from the actual messages according to operation conditions and vehicle specifications.

Warning buzzer

In some cases, the buzzer may not be heard due to being in a noisy location or audio sound.

If "Engine Oil Level Low Add or Replace" is displayed

The engine oil level is low. Check the level of the engine oil, and add if necessary.

This message may appear if the vehicle is stopped on a slope. Move the vehicle to a level surface and check to see if the message disappears.

If "Engine Stopped Steering Power Low" is displayed

This message is displayed if the engine is stopped while driving.

When steering wheel operations are heavier than usual, grip the steering wheel firmly and operate it using more force than usual.

If "Auto Power Off To Conserve Battery" is displayed

Power was turned off due to the automatic power off function. Next time when starting the engine, increase the engine speed slightly and maintain that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery.

If "High Power Consumption Power to Climate Temporarily Limited" is displayed

Turn off unnecessary electronic equipment to reduce power consumption.

Please wait until the power supply returns to normal.

If "Headlight System Malfunction Visit Your Dealer" is displayed

The following systems may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

- The LED headlight system
- The automatic headlight leveling system
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam) (if equipped)
- Multi Weather Lights (if equipped)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ If "Radar Cruise Control Temporarily Unavailable See Owner's Manual" is shown

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) system is suspended temporarily or until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (causes and coping methods: →P.213)

■ If "Radar Cruise Control Unavailable" is shown

The dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped) or dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped) system cannot be used temporarily. Use the system when it becomes available again.

■ If a message that indicates the malfunction of front camera is displayed

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.213, 412)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

■ If a message that indicates the malfunction of radar sensor is displayed

The following systems may be suspended until the problem shown in the message is resolved. (→P.213, 412)

- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)

■ If "Oil Maintenance Required Soon" is displayed (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

Indicates that the engine oil should be scheduled to be changed.

Check the engine oil and change it if necessary. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.377)

■ If "Oil Maintenance Required" is displayed (except for Hong Kong and Macao)

Indicates that the engine oil should be changed.

Check and change the engine oil, and oil filter by your Lexus dealer. After changing the engine oil, make sure to reset the message. (→P.377)

■ If "Speed Limit Exceeded" is displayed (on some models)

The vehicle speed has reached or exceeded 120 km/h (75 mph). At this time, a buzzer also sounds. The buzzer will stop sounding after 6 seconds or if you decelerate to below 120 km/h (75 mph). Reduce your vehicle speed.

■ If a message that indicates the need for visiting your Lexus dealer is displayed

The system or part shown on the multi-information display is malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.

■ If a message that indicates the need for referring to Owner's Manual is displayed

- If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, follow the instructions.
  - "Engine Coolant Temp High" (→P.445)
- If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer immediately.
  - "Entry & Start System Malfunction"
- If any of the following messages are shown on the multi-information display, it may indicate a malfunction. Immediately

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

stop the vehicle and contact your Lexus dealer.
- "Braking Power Low"
- "Charging System Malfunction"
- "Oil Pressure Low"

NOTICE

■ If "High Power Consumption Power to Climate Temporarily Limited" is displayed frequently

There is a possible malfunction relating to the charging system or the battery may be deteriorating. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you have a flat tire

Your vehicle is equipped with a spare tire. The flat tire can be replaced with the spare tire.
For details about tires: →P.383

WARNING

■ If you have a flat tire

Do not continue driving with a flat tire.

Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire and the wheel beyond repair, which could result in an accident.

Before jacking up the vehicle

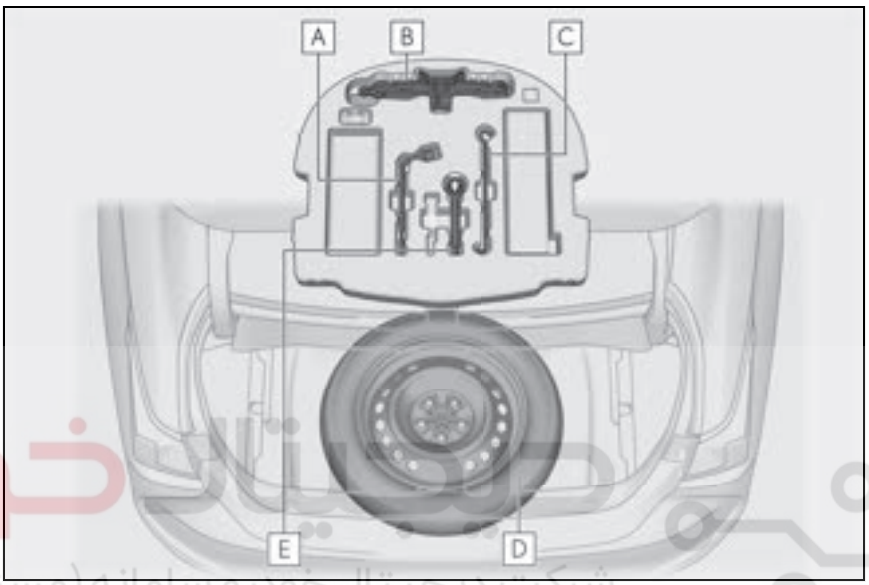
- Stop the vehicle in a safe place on a hard, flat surface.
- Set the parking brake.
- Shift the shift lever to P.
- Stop the engine.
- Turn on the emergency flashers. (→P.404)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Location of the spare tire, jack and tools

▶ Vehicles with compact spare tire



A Wheel nut wrench

B Jack

C Jack handle

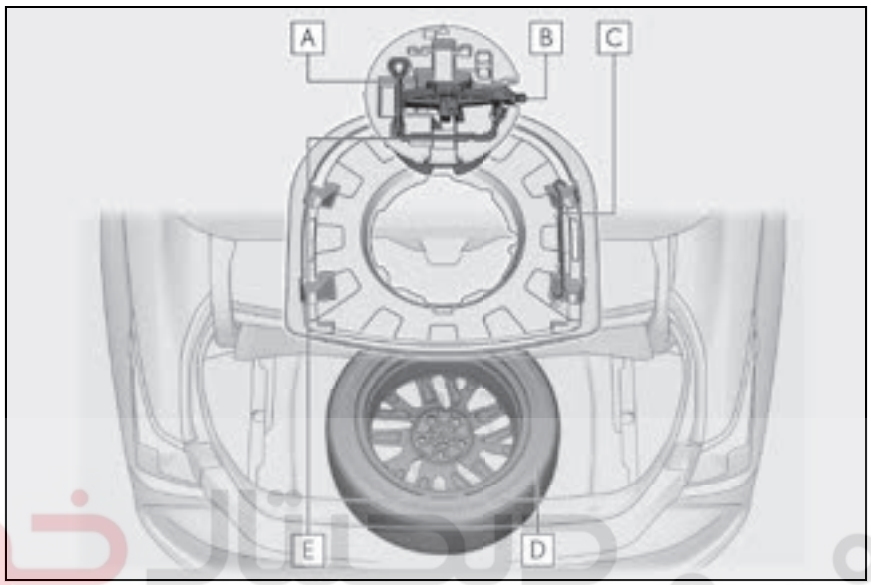
D Spare tire

E Towing eyelet

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Vehicles with full-size spare tire



A Towing eyelet

B Jack

C Jack handle

D Spare tire

E Wheel nut wrench

WARNING

■ Using the tire jack

Observe the following precautions.

Improper use of the tire jack may cause the vehicle to suddenly fall off the jack, leading to death or serious injury.

- Do not use the tire jack for any purpose other than replacing tires or installing and removing tire chains.
- Only use the tire jack that comes with this vehicle for replacing a flat tire. Do not use it on other vehicles, and do not use other tire jacks for replacing tires on this vehicle.
- Put the jack properly in its jack point.
- Do not put any part of your body under the vehicle while it is supported by the jack.
- Do not start the engine or drive the vehicle while the vehicle is supported by the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle while someone is inside.
- When raising the vehicle, do not put an object on or under the jack.
- Do not raise the vehicle to a height greater than that required to replace the tire.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

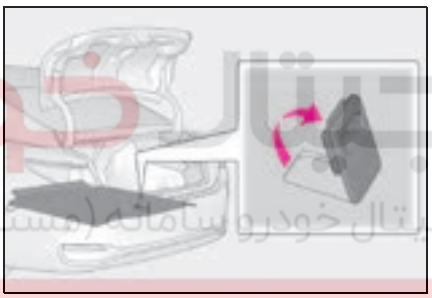
WARNING

- Use a jack stand if it is necessary to get under the vehicle.
- When lowering the vehicle, make sure that there is no-one near the vehicle. If there are people nearby, warn them vocally before lowering.

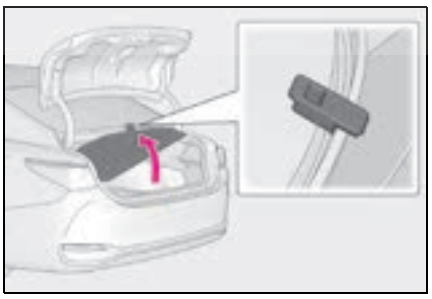
Taking out the jack

1 Open the trunk.

2 Pull the lever upwards when lifting the luggage mat up.

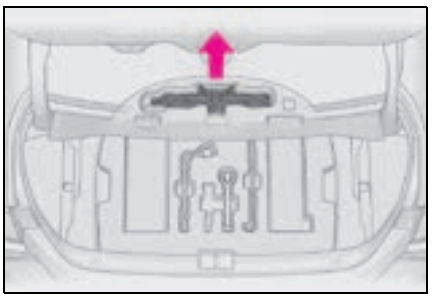


3 The lever can be hooked on the edge of the trunk.

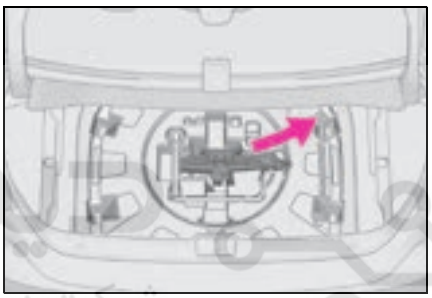


4 Remove the jack.

▶ Vehicles with compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with full-size spare tire



NOTICE

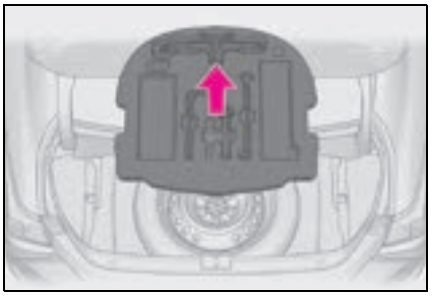
■ To prevent damage to luggage mat

When closing the trunk lid, do not leave the luggage mat lever hooked on the edge of the trunk.

Taking out the spare tire

1 Remove the tool tray.

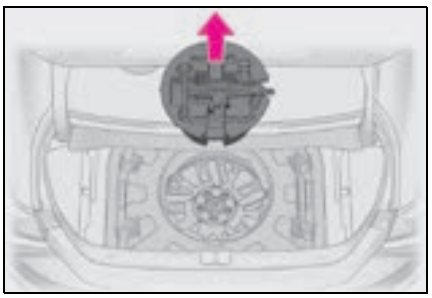
▶ Vehicles with compact spare tire



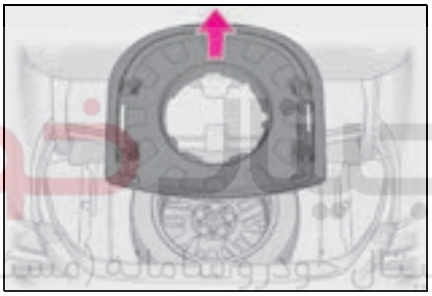
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Vehicles with full-size spare tire

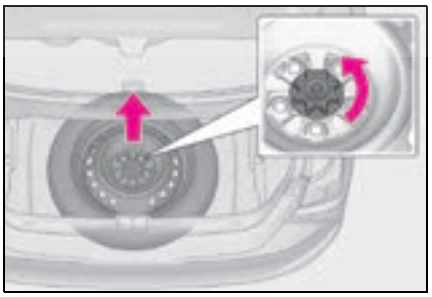


2 Vehicles with full-size spare tire only: Remove the spare tire cover.

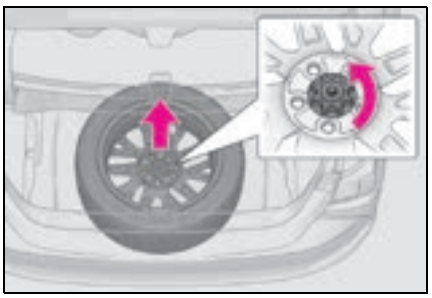


3 Loosen the center fastener that secures the spare tire.

▶ Vehicles with compact spare tire



▶ Vehicles with full-size spare tire



WARNING

■ When storing the spare tire

Be careful not get fingers or other body parts caught between the spare tire and the body of the vehicle.

Replacing a flat tire

1 Chock the tires.

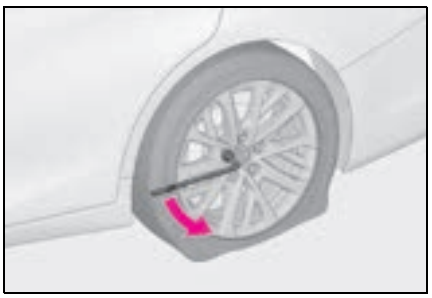


Flat tire	Wheel chock positions
Front left-hand side	Behind the rear right-hand side tire
Front right-hand side	Behind the rear left-hand side tire
Rear left-hand side	In front of the front right-hand side tire
Rear right-hand side	In front of the front left-hand side tire

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

2 Slightly loosen the wheel nuts (one turn).

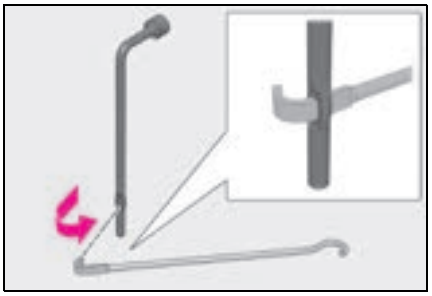


3 Turn the tire jack portion A by hand until the notch of the jack is in contact with the jack point.

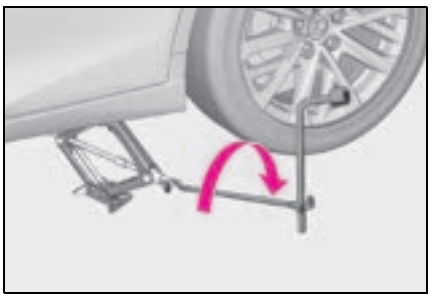
The jack point guides are located under the rocker panel. They indicate the jack point positions.



4 Assemble the jack handle.

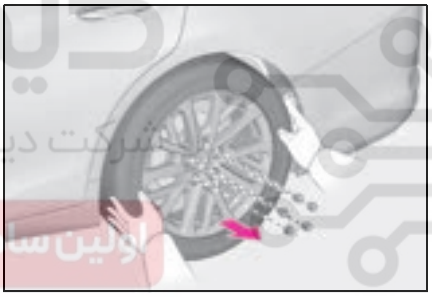


5 Raise the vehicle until the tire is slightly raised off the ground.

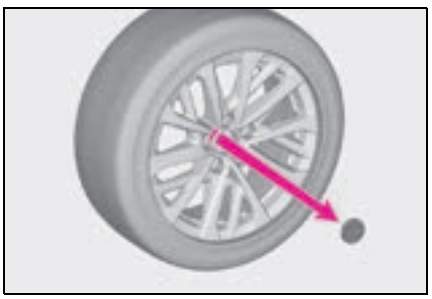


6 Remove all the wheel nuts and the tire.

When resting the tire on the ground, place the tire so that the wheel design faces up to avoid scratching the wheel surface.



7 Vehicles with full-size spare tire: Remove the wheel ornament by pushing from the reverse side.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ **Replacing a flat tire**

● Observe the following precautions.

Failure to do so may result in serious injury:

- Vehicles with full-size spare tire: Do not try to remove the wheel ornament by hand. Take due care in handling the ornament to avoid unexpected personal injury.
- Do not touch the disc wheels or the area around the brakes immediately after the vehicle has been driven. After the vehicle has been driven the disc wheels and the area around the brakes will be extremely hot. Touching these areas with hands, feet or other body parts while changing a tire, etc. may result in burns.

● Failure to follow these precautions could cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the tire to fall off, resulting in death or serious injury.

- Never use oil or grease on the wheel bolts or wheel nuts. Oil and grease may cause the wheel nuts to be excessively tightened, leading to bolt or disc wheel damage. In addition, the oil or grease can cause the wheel nuts to loosen and the wheel may fall off, causing a serious accident. Remove any oil or grease from the wheel bolts or wheel nuts.
- Have the wheel nuts tightened with a torque wrench to 103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf) as soon as possible after changing wheels.
- When installing a tire, only use wheel nuts that have been specifically designed for that wheel.
- Do not attach a heavily damaged wheel ornament, as it may fly off the wheel ornament while the vehicle is moving.
- If there are any cracks or deformations in the bolt screws, nut threads or bolt holes of the wheel, have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

Installing the spare tire

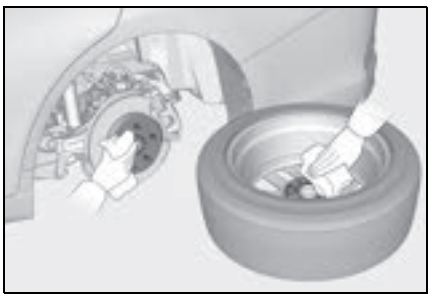
1 Remove any dirt or foreign matter from the wheel contact surface.

If foreign matter is on the wheel contact surface, the wheel nuts may loosen while the vehicle is in motion, causing the tire to

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

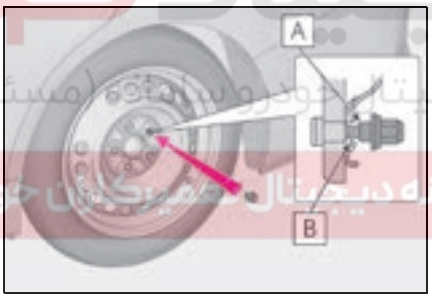
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

come off.

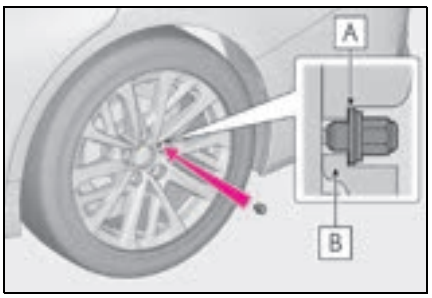


2 Install the spare tire and loosely tighten each wheel nut by hand by approximately the same amount.

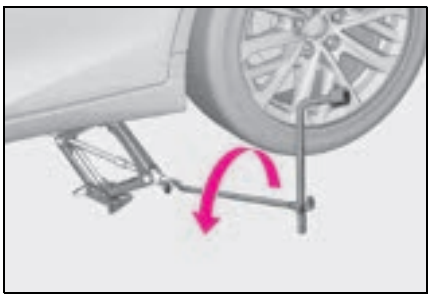
When replacing an aluminum wheel with a steel wheel, tighten the wheel nuts until the tapered portion A comes into loose contact with the disc wheel seat B.



When replacing an aluminum wheel with an aluminum wheel, tighten the wheel nuts until the washers A come into loose contact with the disc wheel B.

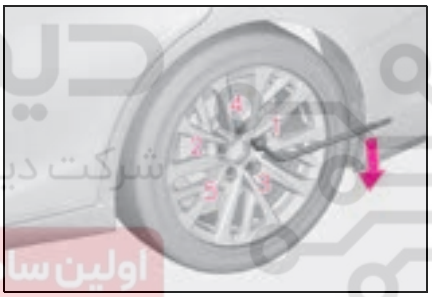


3 Lower the vehicle.

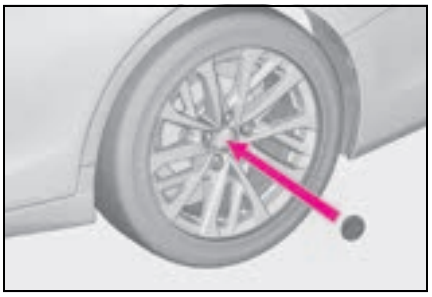


4 Firmly tighten each wheel nut two or three times in the order shown in the illustration.

Tightening torque:
103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)



5 Vehicles with full-size spare tire: Reinstall the wheel ornament.



6 Stow the flat tire, tire jack and all tools.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **The compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

- The compact spare tire is identified by the label "TEMPORARY USE ONLY" on the tire sidewall.
  Use the compact spare tire temporarily, and only in an emergency.
- Make sure to check the tire inflation pressure of the compact spare tire. (→P.459)

■ **After completing the tire change**

The tire pressure warning system must be reset. (→P.387)

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

As the compact spare tire is not equipped with a tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, low inflation pressure of the spare tire will not be indicated by the tire pressure warning system. Also, if you replace the compact spare tire after the tire pressure warning light comes on, the light remains on.

■ **When the compact spare tire is attached (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires.

■ **If you have a flat front tire on a road covered with snow or ice (vehicles with 17-inch tires and compact spare tire)**

Install the compact spare tire on one of the rear wheels of the vehicle. Perform the following steps and fit tire chains to the front tires:

1. Replace a rear tire with the compact spare tire.
2. Replace the flat front tire with the tire removed from the rear of the vehicle.
3. Fit tire chains to the front tires.

WARNING

■ **When using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

- Remember that the compact spare tire provided is specifically designed for use with your vehicle. Do not use your compact spare tire on another vehicle.
- Do not use more than one compact spare tire simultaneously.
- Replace the compact spare tire with a standard tire as soon as possible.
- Avoid sudden acceleration, abrupt steering, sudden braking and shifting operations that cause sudden engine braking.

■ **When the compact spare tire is attached (vehicles with a compact spare tire)**

The vehicle speed may not be correctly detected, and the following systems may not operate correctly:

- ABS & Brake assist
- VSC
- TRC
- Cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control (if equipped)
- Dynamic radar cruise control system with full-speed range (if equipped)
- PCS (Pre-Collision System) (if equipped)
- EPS
- Adaptive Variable Suspension system (if equipped)
- LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) (if equipped)
- Panoramic view monitor (if equipped)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Lexus parking assist monitor (if equipped)
- Lexus parking assist-sensor
- Navigation system (if equipped)
- BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) (if equipped)
- AHB (Automatic High Beam) (if equipped)
- AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) (if equipped)

■ Speed limit when using the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Do not drive at speeds in excess of 80 km/h (50 mph) when a compact spare tire is installed on the vehicle.

The compact spare tire is not designed for driving at high speeds. Failure to observe this precaution may lead to an accident causing death or serious injury.

■ After using the tools and jack

Before driving, make sure all the tools and jack are securely in place in their storage location to reduce the possibility of personal injury during a collision or sudden braking.

NOTICE

■ Be careful when driving over bumps with the compact spare tire installed on the vehicle (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

The vehicle becomes lower when driving with the compact spare tire compared to when driving with standard tires. Be careful when driving over uneven road surfaces.

■ Driving with tire chains and the compact spare tire (vehicles with a compact spare tire)

Do not fit tire chains to the compact spare tire.

Tire chains may damage the vehicle body and adversely affect driving performance.

■ When replacing the tires

When removing or fitting the wheels, tires or the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter, contact your Lexus dealer as the tire pressure warning valve and transmitter may be damaged if not handled correctly.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If the engine will not start

If the engine will not start even though correct starting procedures are being followed (→P.171), consider each of the following points:

The engine will not start even though the starter motor operates normally.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The electronic key may not be functioning properly. (→P.439)
- There may not be sufficient fuel in the vehicle's tank.
  Refuel the vehicle. (→P.208)
- The engine may be flooded.
  Try to restart the engine again following correct starting procedures. (→P.171)
- There may be a malfunction in the engine immobilizer system. (→P.83)

The starter motor turns over slowly, the interior lights and headlights are dim, or the horn does not sound or sounds at a low volume.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.440)
- The battery terminal connections may be loose or corroded. (→P.379)

The starter motor does not turn over

The engine starting system may be malfunctioning due to an electrical problem such as electronic key battery depletion or a blown fuse. However, an interim measure is available to start the engine.

The starter motor does not turn over, the interior lights and headlights do not turn on, or the horn does not sound.

One of the following may be the cause of the problem:

- The battery may be discharged. (→P.440)
- One or both of the battery terminals may be disconnected. (→P.379)

Contact your Lexus dealer if the problem cannot be repaired, or if repair procedures are unknown.

Starting the engine in an emergency

When the engine does not start, the following steps can be used as an interim measure to start the engine if the engine switch is functioning normally. Do not use this starting procedure except in cases of emergency.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

1 Set the parking brake.
2 Shift the shift lever to P.
3 Turn the engine switch to ACCESSORY mode.
4 Press and hold the engine switch for about 15 seconds while depressing the brake pedal firmly.

Even if the engine can be started using the above steps, the system may be malfunctioning. Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

If you lose your keys

New genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer using another mechanical key and the key number stamped on your key number plate. Keep the plate in a safe place such as your wallet, not in the vehicle.

NOTICE

■ When an electronic key is lost

If the electronic key remains lost, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Visit your Lexus dealer immediately with all remaining electronic keys and the card key (if equipped) that were provided with your vehicle.

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If the fuel filler door cannot be opened

If the fuel filler door opener switch cannot be operated, the following procedure can be used to open the fuel filler door.

Opening the fuel filler door

Remove the cover inside the trunk and pull the lever.



If the electronic key does not operate properly

If communication between the electronic key and vehicle is interrupted (→P.138) or the electronic key cannot be used because the battery is depleted, the smart entry & start system and wireless remote control cannot be used. In such cases, the doors and trunk can be opened and the engine can be started by following the procedure below.

■ When the electronic key does not work properly

- Make sure that the smart entry & start system has not been deactivated in the customization setting. If it is off, turn the function on. (Customizable features: →P.465)
- Check if battery-saving mode is set. If it is set, cancel the function. (→P.138)
- The electronic key function may have stopped. (→P.138)

NOTICE

■ In case of a smart entry & start system malfunction or other key-related problems

Take your vehicle with all the electronic keys provided with your vehicle (including the card key) to your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

Locking and unlocking the doors, opening the trunk

Use the mechanical key (→P.123) in order to perform the following opera-

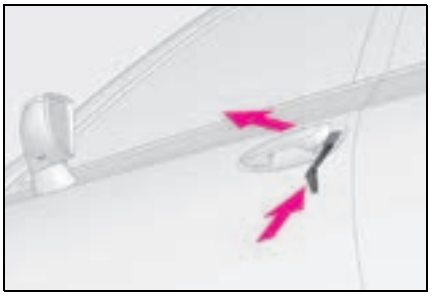
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

tions:

■ Unlocking the door

1 Pull the driver's door handle and insert the mechanical key.



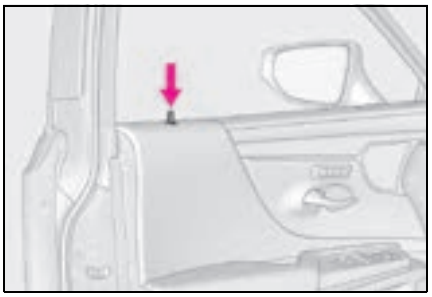
2 Unlock the door.



3 Remove the key, return the handle, and then pull the handle again.

■ Locking the door

1 With the door open, push down the inside lock button.



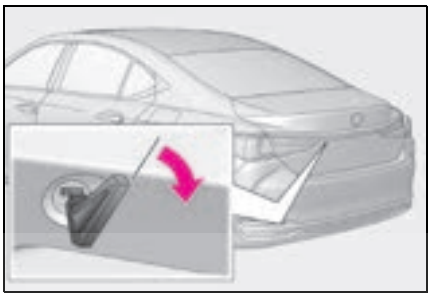
2 Close the door.

For the front doors: Close the door while pulling the door handle.

For the rear doors: Close the door.

■ Opening the trunk

Turn the mechanical key clockwise to open.



■ Key linked functions



1 Closes the windows and moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)

2 Opens the windows and moon roof* or panoramic moon roof* (turn and hold)

These settings must be customized at your Lexus dealer.

*: If equipped

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When using the mechanical key and operating the power windows, moon roof (if equipped) or panoramic moon roof (if equipped)

Operate the power window, moon roof or panoramic moon roof after checking to make sure that there is no possibility of any passenger having any of their body parts caught in the window, moon roof or panoramic moon roof.
Also, do not allow children to operate the mechanical key. It is possible for children and other passengers to get caught in the power window, moon roof or panoramic moon roof.

Starting the engine

1 Ensure that the shift lever is in P and depress the brake pedal.

2 Touch the Lexus emblem side of the electronic key to the engine switch.

When the electronic key is detected, a buzzer sounds and the engine switch will turn to IGNITION ON mode.

When the smart entry & start system is deactivated in customization setting, the engine switch will turn to ACCESSORY mode.



3 Firmly depress the brake pedal and check that  is shown on the multi-information display.

4 Press the engine switch.

In the event that the engine still cannot be started, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ Stopping the engine

Shift the shift lever to P and press the engine switch as you normally do when stopping the engine.

■ Electronic key battery

As the above procedure is a temporary measure, it is recommended that the electronic key battery be replaced immediately when the battery is depleted. (→P.395)

■ Alarm (for Malaysia, South Africa and Egypt)

Using the mechanical key to lock the doors will not set the alarm system.
If a door is unlocked using the mechanical key when the alarm system is set, the alarm may be triggered.

■ Changing engine switch modes

Release the brake pedal and press the engine switch in step **3** above.
The engine does not start and modes will be changed each time the switch is pressed. (→P.173)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If the battery is discharged

The following procedures may be used to start the engine if the battery is discharged.
You can also call your Lexus dealer or a qualified repair shop.

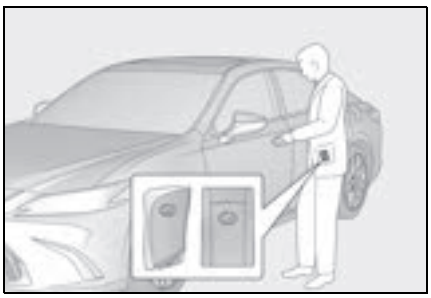
Restarting the engine

If you have a set of jumper (or booster) cables and a second vehicle with a 12-volt battery, you can jump start your vehicle using the following procedure.

1 Confirm that the electronic key is being carried.

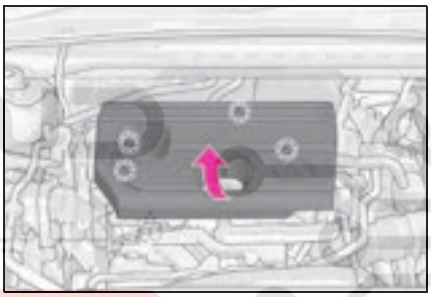
When connecting the jumper (or booster) cables, depending on the situation, the alarm may activate and doors locked.

(→P.86)



2 Open the hood (→P.371).

3 M20A-FKS engine: Remove the engine cover.

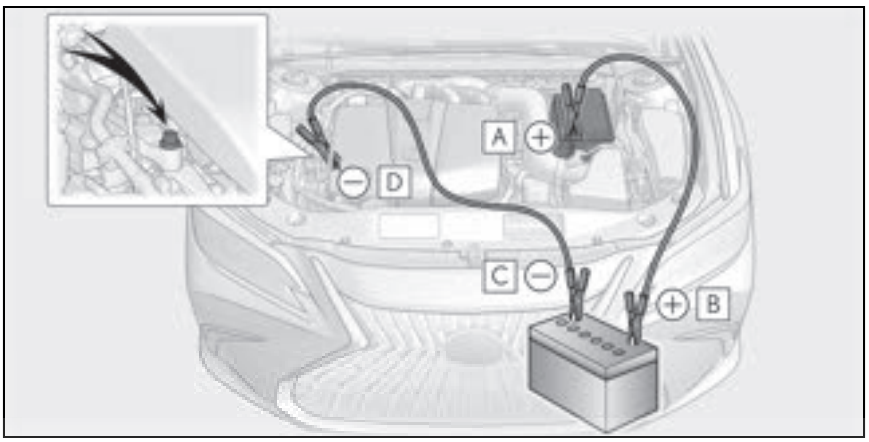


4 Connect a positive jumper cable clamp to A on your vehicle and connect the clamp on the other end of the positive cable to B on the second vehicle. Then, connect a negative cable clamp to C on the second vehicle and connect the clamp at the other end of the negative cable to D.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ 2GR-FKS engine



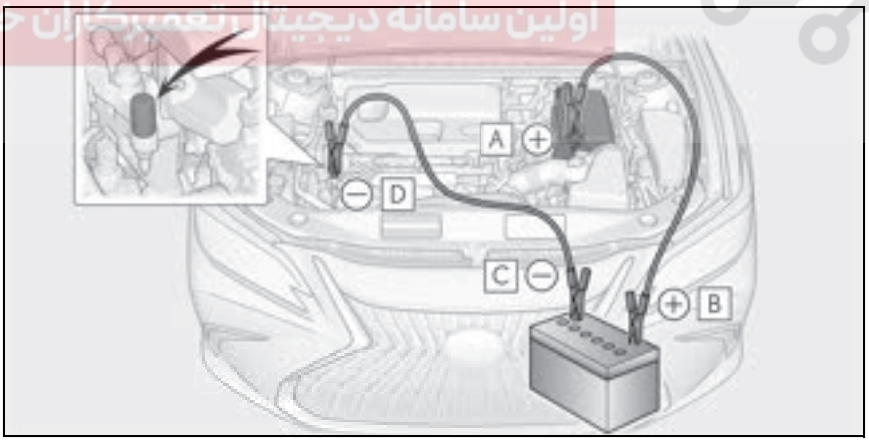
A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

▶ A25A-FKS engine



A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

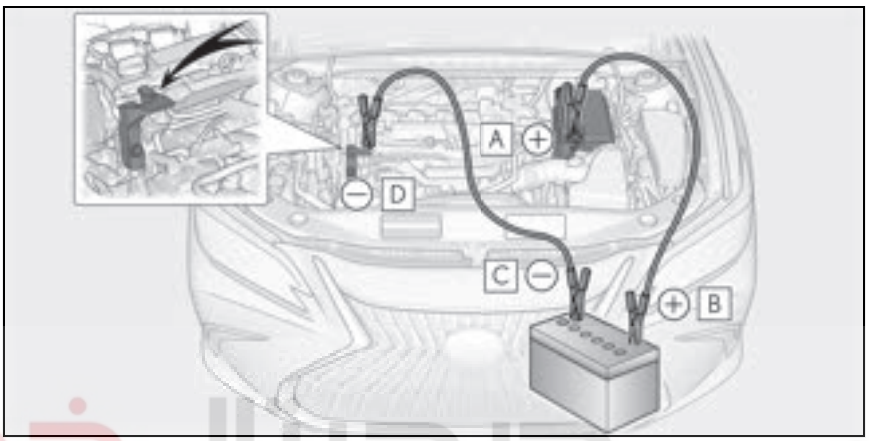
C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

▶ M20A-FKS engine



A Positive (+) battery terminal (your vehicle)

B Positive (+) battery terminal (second vehicle)

C Negative (-) battery terminal (second vehicle)

D Solid, stationary, unpainted metallic point away from the battery and any moving parts as shown in the illustration

5 Start the engine of the second vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and maintain at that level for approximately 5 minutes to recharge the battery of your vehicle.

6 Maintain the engine speed of the second vehicle and start the engine of your vehicle by turning the engine switch to IGNITION ON mode.

7 Once the vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the exact reverse order from which they were connected.

8 M20A-FKS engine: Reinstall the engine cover to its original position.

Once the engine starts, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer as soon as possible.

■ Starting the engine when the battery is discharged

The engine cannot be started by push-starting.

■ To prevent battery discharge

- Turn off the headlights and the air conditioning system while the engine is stopped. (Except when the engine is stopped due to the Stop & Start system*.)
- Turn off any unnecessary electrical components when the vehicle is running at a

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

low speed for an extended period, such as in heavy traffic.

*: If equipped

■ **When the battery is removed or discharged**

- Information stored in the ECU is cleared. When the battery is depleted, have the vehicle inspected at your Lexus dealer.
- Some systems may require initialization. (→P.475)

■ **When removing the battery terminals**

When the battery terminals are removed, the information stored in the ECU is cleared. Before removing the battery terminals, contact your Lexus dealer.

■ **Charging the battery**

The electricity stored in the battery will discharge gradually even when the vehicle is not in use, due to natural discharge and the draining effects of certain electrical appliances. If the vehicle is left for a long time, the battery may discharge, and the engine may be unable to start. (The battery recharges automatically during driving.)

■ **When recharging or replacing the battery**

- In some cases, it may not be possible to unlock the doors using the smart entry & start system when the battery is discharged. Use the wireless remote control or the mechanical key to lock or unlock the doors.
- The engine may not start on the first attempt after the battery has recharged but will start normally after the second attempt. This is not a malfunction.
- The engine switch mode is memorized by the vehicle. When the battery is reconnected, the system will return to the mode it was in before the battery was discharged. Before disconnecting the battery, turn the engine switch off.
  If you are unsure what mode the engine switch was in before the battery discharged, be especially careful when reconnecting the battery.
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: For a while after the battery terminals have been disconnected and reconnected, for a while after the battery has been replaced, the Stop & Start system may not automatically stop the engine for approximately 5 to 60 minutes.

■ **When replacing the battery**

- Use a battery that conforms to European regulations.
- Vehicles without Stop & Start system: Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN3), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (70Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (592A) or greater.
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Use a genuine battery specifically designed for use with the Stop & Start system or a battery with equivalent specifications to a genuine battery. If an unsupported battery is used, Stop & Start system functions may be restricted to protect the battery. Also, battery performance may decrease and the engine may not be able to restart. Contact your Lexus dealer for details.
- Vehicles with Stop & Start system: Use a battery that the case size is same as the previous one (LN3), 20 hour rate capacity (20HR) is equivalent (65Ah) or greater, and performance rating (CCA) is equivalent (603A) or greater.
  - If the sizes differ, the battery cannot be properly secured.
  - If the 20 hour rate capacity is low, even if the time period where the vehicle is not used is a short time, the battery may discharge and engine may not be able to start.
- For details, consult your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When removing the battery terminals

Always remove the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal contacts any metal in the surrounding area when the positive (+) terminal is removed, a spark may occur, leading to a fire in addition to electrical shocks and death or serious injury.

■ Avoiding battery fires or explosions

Observe the following precautions to prevent accidentally igniting the flammable gas that may be emitted from the battery:

- Make sure each jumper cable is connected to the correct terminal and that it is not unintentionally in contact with any other than the intended terminal.
- Do not allow the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal to come into contact with any other parts or metal surfaces in the area, such as brackets or unpainted metal.
- Do not allow the + and - clamps of the jumper cables to come into contact with each other.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- If the battery fluid level is excessively low (→P.379), do not use the battery.

■ Battery precautions

The battery contains poisonous and corrosive acidic electrolyte, while related parts contain lead and lead compounds. Observe the following precautions when handling the battery:

- When working with the battery, always wear safety glasses and take care not to allow any battery fluids (acid) to come into contact with skin, clothing or the vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the battery.
- In the event that battery fluid comes into contact with the skin or eyes, immediately wash the affected area with water and seek medical attention. Place a wet sponge or cloth over the affected area until medical attention can be received.
- Always wash your hands after handling the battery support, terminals, and other battery-related parts.
- Do not allow children near the battery.

NOTICE

■ When handling jumper cables

When connecting the jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in the cooling fan or engine drive belt.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If your vehicle overheats

The following may indicate that your vehicle is overheating.

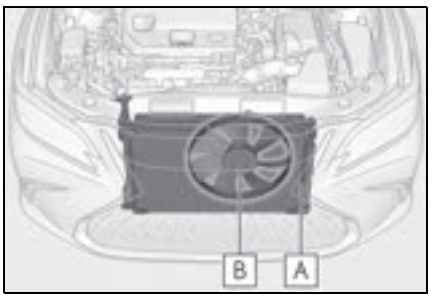
- The engine coolant temperature gauge (→P.96, 100) enters the red zone or a loss of engine power is experienced. (For example, the vehicle speed does not increase.)
- "Engine Coolant Temp High Stop in a Safe Place See Owner's Manual" is shown on the multi-information display.
- Steam comes out from under the hood.

Correction procedures

1 Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the air conditioning system, and then stop the engine.

2 If you see steam:
Carefully lift the hood after the steam subsides.
If you do not see steam:
Carefully lift the hood.

3 After the engine has cooled down sufficiently, inspect the hoses and radiator core (radiator) for any leaks.



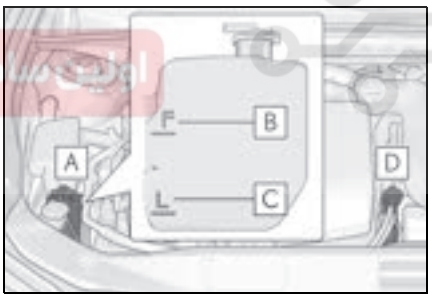
A Radiator

B Cooling fan

If a large amount of coolant leaks, immediately contact your Lexus dealer.

4 The coolant level is satisfactory if it is between the "F" and "L" lines on the reservoir.

▶ 2GR-FKS engine



A Reservoir

B "F" line

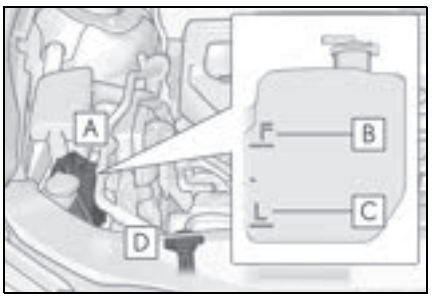
C "L" line

D Coolant inlet cap

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ Except 2GR-FKS engine



A Reservoir

B "F" line

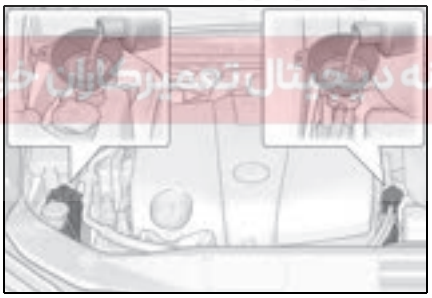
C "L" line

D Coolant inlet cap

5 Add coolant if necessary.

▶ 2GR-FKS engine

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



▶ Except 2GR-FKS engine

Water can be used in an emergency if coolant is unavailable.



6 Start the engine and turn the air conditioning system on to check that the radiator cooling fan operates and to check for coolant leaks from the radiator or hoses.

The fan operates when the air conditioning system is turned on immediately after a cold start. Confirm that the fan is operating by checking the fan sound and air flow. If it is difficult to check these, turn the air conditioning system on and off repeatedly. (The fan may not operate in freezing temperatures.)

7 If the fan is not operating:
Stop the engine immediately and contact your Lexus dealer.
If the fan is operating:
Have the vehicle inspected at the nearest Lexus dealer.

WARNING

■ When inspecting under the hood of your vehicle

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious injury such as burns.

- If steam is seen coming from under the hood, do not open the hood until the steam has subsided. The engine compartment may be very hot.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

- Keep hands and clothing (especially a tie, a scarf or a muffler) away from the fan and belts. Failure to do so may cause the hands or clothing to be caught, resulting in serious injury.
- While the engine and radiator are hot, do not loosen or remove the coolant inlet cap or coolant reservoir cap. High temperature steam or coolant could spray out.

NOTICE

■ When adding engine coolant

Add coolant slowly after the engine has cooled down sufficiently. Adding cool coolant to a hot engine too quickly can cause damage to the engine.

■ To prevent damage to the cooling system

Observe the following precautions:

- Avoid contaminating the coolant with foreign matter (such as sand or dust etc.).
- Do not use any coolant additive.

If the vehicle becomes stuck

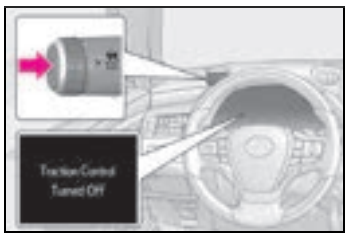
Carry out the following procedures if the tires spin or the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt or snow:

Recovering procedure

1. Stop the engine. Set the parking brake and shift the shift lever to P.
2. Remove the mud, snow or sand from around the front wheels.
3. Place wood, stones or some other material under the front wheels to help provide traction.
4. Restart the engine.
5. Shift the shift lever to D or R and release the parking brake. Then, while exercising caution, depress the accelerator pedal.

■ When it is difficult to free the vehicle

Press the switch to turn off TRC.



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WARNING

■ When attempting to free a stuck vehicle

If you choose to push the vehicle back and forth to free it, make sure the surrounding area is clear to avoid striking other vehicles, objects or people. The vehicle may also lunge forward or lunge back suddenly as it becomes free. Use extreme caution.

■ When shifting the shift lever

Be careful not to shift the shift lever with the accelerator pedal depressed.
This may lead to unexpected rapid acceleration of the vehicle that may cause an accident resulting in death or serious injury.

NOTICE

■ To avoid damaging the transmission and other components

- Avoid spinning the front wheels and depressing the accelerator pedal more than necessary.
- If the vehicle remains stuck even after these procedures are performed, the vehicle may require towing to be freed.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

8-1. Specifications

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.) 450

Fuel information 461

8-2. Customization

Customizable features 462

8-3. Items to initialize

Items to initialize 475

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Maintenance data (fuel, oil level, etc.)

Dimensions

Overall length		4975 mm (195.9 in.)
Overall width		1865 mm (73.4 in.)
Overall height*		1445 mm (56.9 in.)
Wheelbase		2870 mm (113.0 in.)
Front tread*	With 17-inch tires	1600 mm (63.0 in.)
	With 18-inch tires/ 19-inch tires	1590 mm (62.6 in.)
Rear tread*	With 17-inch tires	1610 mm (63.4 in.)
	With 18-inch tires/ 19-inch tires	1600 mm (63.0 in.)

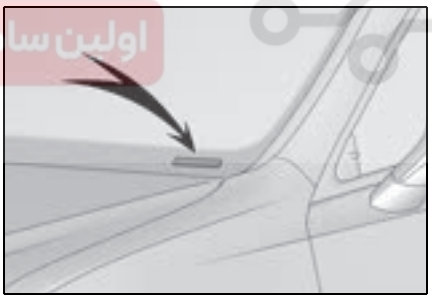
*: Unladen vehicle

Vehicle identification

■ Vehicle identification number

The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identifier for your vehicle. This is the primary identification number for your Lexus. It is used in registering the ownership of your vehicle.

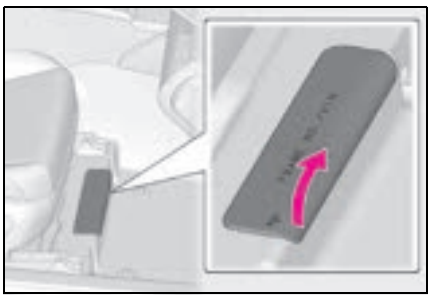
This number is on the top left of the instrument panel.



This number is also stamped under the right-hand front seat.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92



This number is also on the Certification Regulation label*1 or the manufacturer's label*2.



*1: For GCC countries*3, Yemen, Iraq, Jordan and Lebanon

*2: Except for GCC countries*3, Yemen, Iraq, Jordan and Lebanon

*3: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

Year of manufacture and country of origin (GCC countries*, Yemen, Iraq, Jordan and Lebanon)

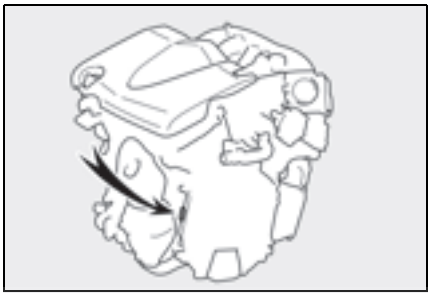
The year of the manufacture and country of origin are shown on the Certification Regulation label.

*: Saudi Arabia, Sultanate of Oman, Bahrain, United Arab Emirates, Qatar and Kuwait

Engine number

The engine number is located as shown.

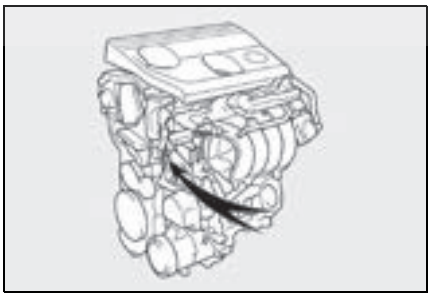
▶ 2GR-FKS engine



▶ A25A-FKS engine



▶ M20A-FKS engine



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Engine

▶ 2GR-FKS engine

Model	2GR-FKS
Type	6-cylinder V type, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	94.0 × 83.0 mm (3.70 × 3.27 in.)
Displacement	3456 cm^3 (210.9 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed*1	230 km/h (143 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)*1	356 N•m @ 4600-4700 rpm
Maximum output (NET)*1	222 kW @ 6500-6600 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

▶ A25A-FKS engine

Model	A25A-FKS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	87.5 × 103.4 mm (3.44 × 4.07 in.)
Displacement	2487 cm^3 (151.8 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment
Maximum vehicle speed*1	210 km/h (130 mph)
Maximum torque (NET)*1	243 N•m @ 4000-5000 rpm
Maximum output (NET)*1	152 kW @ 6600 rpm

*1: For vehicles with model code*2 that has "V" as the last letter

*2: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ M20A-FKS engine

Model	M20A-FKS
Type	4-cylinder in line, 4-cycle, gasoline
Bore and stroke	80.5 × 97.6 mm (3.17 × 3.84 in.)
Displacement	1987 cm^3 (121.3 cu.in.)
Valve clearance	Automatic adjustment
Drive belt tension	Automatic adjustment

Fuel

Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only
Research Octane Number	91 or higher
Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)

Lubrication system

▶ 2GR-FKS engine

Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])

With filter	Without engine oil cooler: 5.4 L (5.7 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.) With engine oil cooler: 5.5 L (5.8 qt., 4.8 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	5.3 L (5.6 qt., 4.7 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

Engine oil selection

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

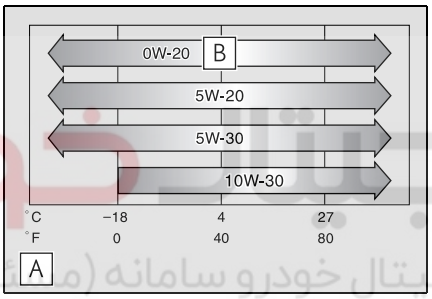
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-20 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

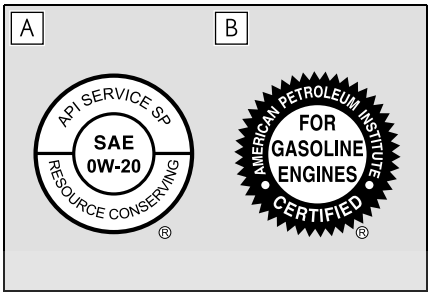
B Preferred

Oil viscosity (0W-20 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-20 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.
- The 20 in 0W-20 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-20" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ A25A-FKS engine and M20A-FKS engine

■ **Oil capacity (Drain and refill [Reference*])**

	A25A-FKS engine	M20A-FKS engine
With filter	4.5 L (4.8 qt., 4.0 Imp. qt.)	4.3 L (4.5 qt., 3.8 Imp. qt.)
Without filter	4.2 L (4.4 qt., 3.7 Imp. qt.)	3.9 L (4.1 qt., 3.4 Imp. qt.)

*: The engine oil capacity is a reference quantity to be used when changing the engine oil. Warm up and turn off the engine, wait more than 5 minutes, and check the oil level on the dipstick.

■ **Engine oil selection**

"Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" is used in your Lexus vehicle. Use Lexus approved "Toyota Genuine Motor Oil" or equivalent to satisfy the following grade and viscosity.

Oil grade:

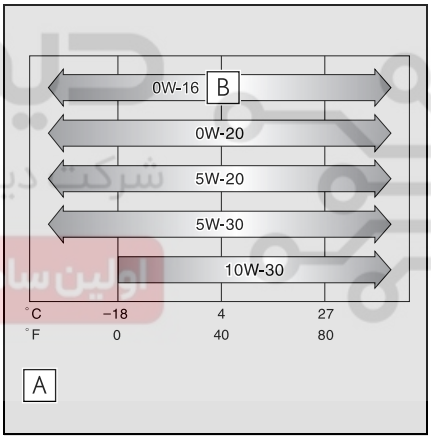
0W-16:
API grade SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6B multigrade engine oil

0W-20, 5W-20, 5W-30 and 10W-30:
API grade SL "Energy-Conserving", SM "Energy-Conserving", SN "Resource-Conserving", SN PLUS "Resource-Conserving" or SP "Resource-Conserving"; or ILSAC GF-6A multigrade engine oil

Recommended viscosity (SAE):

SAE 0W-16 is filled into your Lexus vehicle at manufacturing, and the best choice for good fuel economy and good starting in cold weather.

If you use SAE 10W-30 or a higher viscosity engine oil in extremely low temperatures, the engine may become difficult to start, so SAE 0W-16, 0W-20, 5W-20 or 5W-30 engine oil is recommended.



A Temperature range anticipated before next oil change

B Preferred

Oil viscosity (0W-16 is explained here as an example):

- The 0W in 0W-16 indicates the characteristic of the oil which allows cold startability. Oils with a lower value before the W allow for easier starting of the engine in cold weather.

8 Vehicle specifications

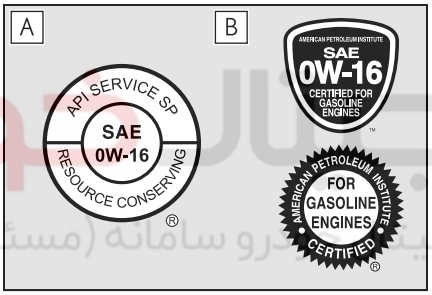
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- The 16 in 0W-16 indicates the viscosity characteristic of the oil when the oil is at high temperature. An oil with a higher viscosity (one with a higher value) may be better suited if the vehicle is operated at high speeds, or under extreme load conditions.

How to read oil container labels:

Either or both API registered marks are added to some oil containers to help you select the oil you should use.



A API Service Symbol

Top portion: "API SERVICE SP" means the oil quality designation by American Petroleum Institute (API).

Center portion: "SAE 0W-16" means the SAE viscosity grade.

Lower portion: "Resource-Conserving" means that the oil has fuel-saving and environmental protection capabilities.

B ILSAC Certification Mark

The International Lubricant Specification Advisory Committee (ILSAC) Certification Mark is displayed on the front of the container.

Cooling system

Capacity*1	2GR-FKS engine	9.4 L (9.9 qt., 8.3 Imp.qt.) *2 8.6 L (9.1 qt., 7.6 Imp.qt.) *3
	A25A-FKS engine	6.9 L (7.3 qt., 6.1 Imp.qt.)
	M20A-FKS engine	6.9 L (7.3 qt., 6.1 Imp.qt.)
Coolant type		Use either of the following: • "Toyota Super Long Life Coolant" • Similar high-quality ethylene glycol-based non-silicate, non-amine, non-nitrite, and non-borate coolant with long-life hybrid organic acid technology Do not use plain water alone.

*1: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

*2: For vehicles with model code*4 that has "V" as the last letter

*3: For vehicles with model code*4 that has "W" as the last letter

*4: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation label. (→P.450)

Ignition system

Spark plug

	2GR-FKS engine	A25A-FKS engine	M20A-FKS engine
Make	DENSO FK20HBR8	DENSO FC16HR-Q8	DENSO FC20HR-Q8
Gap	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)	0.8 mm (0.031 in.)

NOTICE

Iridium-tipped spark plugs

Use only iridium-tipped spark plugs. Do not adjust the spark plug gap.

Electrical system (battery)

Specific gravity reading at 20°C (68°F):		1.25 or higher If the specific gravity is lower than the standard value, charge the battery.
Charging rates	Quick charge	15 A max.
	Slow charge	5 A max.

Automatic transmission

Fluid capacity*	2GR-FKS engine	7.6 L (8.0 qt., 6.7 Imp.qt.)
	A25A-FKS engine	7.5 L (7.9 qt., 6.6 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type		Toyota Genuine ATF WS

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.
If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

NOTICE

■ **Automatic transmission fluid type**

Using transmission fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the transmission of your vehicle.

CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle)

Fluid capacity*	8.3 L (8.8 qt., 7.3 Imp.qt.)
Fluid type	Toyota Genuine CVT Fluid FE

*: The fluid capacity is a reference quantity.

If replacement is necessary, contact your Lexus dealer.

NOTICE

■ **CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) fluid type**

Using CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) fluid other than the above type may cause abnormal noise or vibration, or damage the CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) of your vehicle.

Brakes

Pedal clearance*1	with 16-inch front wheel brake	81 mm (3.2 in.) Min.
	with 17-inch front wheel brake	79 mm (3.1 in.) Min.
Pedal free play		1.0 — 6.0 mm (0.04 — 0.24 in.)
Parking brake indicator*2		When pushing the parking brake switch for 1 to 2 seconds: comes on When pulling the parking brake switch for 1 to 2 seconds: turns off
Fluid type		SAE J1703 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 3 SAE J1704 or FMVSS No. 116 DOT 4

*1: Minimum pedal clearance when depressed with a force of 300 N (30.6 kgf, 67.4 lbf) while the engine is running.
When performing the brake pedal inspection, also be sure to check that the brake system warning light is not illuminated when the engine is running. (If the brake system warning light is illuminated, refer to P.412)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

*2: Make sure to confirm that the brake system warning light (yellow) does not illuminate. (If the brake system warning light illuminates, refer to P.412)

Steering

Free play	Less than 30 mm (1.2 in.)

Tires and wheels

▶ 17-inch tires

Tire size	215/55R17 94V	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire and rear tire
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	320 kPa (3.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 46 psi)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 35 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 7 1/2J	
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)	

▶ 18-inch tires

Tire size	235/45R18 94Y 235/45R18 94W	
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire and rear tire
	More than 160 km/h (100 mph)	320 kPa (3.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 46 psi)
	160 km/h (100 mph) or less	240 kPa (2.4 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 35 psi)
Wheel size	18 × 8 J	
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)	

▶ 19-inch tires (except for Taiwan)

Tire size	235/40R19 96Y XL

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Vehicle speed	Front tire and rear tire
	More than 220 km/h (137 mph)	320 kPa (3.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 46 psi)
	220 km/h (137 mph) or less	230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi)
Wheel size	19 × 8J	
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)	

▶ 19-inch tires (For Taiwan)

Tire size	235/40R19 96Y XL
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	Front tire and rear tire
	230 kPa (2.3 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 33 psi)
Wheel size	19 × 8J
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

▶ Compact spare tire (if equipped)

Tire size	T155/70D17 110M
Tire inflation pressure (Recommended cold tire inflation pressure)	420 kPa (4.2 kgf/cm^2 or bar, 60 psi)
Wheel size	17 × 4 T
Wheel nut torque	103 N•m (10.5 kgf•m, 76 ft•lbf)

Light bulbs (vehicles with single-beam headlights)

Light bulbs	W	Type
Front turn signal lights	21	Wedge base bulbs (amber)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Fuel information

You must only use unleaded gasoline.

Select unleaded gasoline with a Research Octane Number of 91 or higher for optimum engine performance.

Use of ethanol blended gasoline in a gasoline engine

Lexus allows the use of ethanol blended gasoline where the ethanol content is up to 10%. Make sure that the ethanol blended gasoline to be used has a Research Octane Number that follows the above.

If your engine knocks

- Consult your Lexus dealer.
- You may occasionally notice light knocking for a short time while accelerating or driving uphill. This is normal and there is no need for concern.

NOTICE

Notice on fuel quality

- Do not use improper fuels. If improper fuels are used, the engine will be damaged.
- Do not use gasoline with metallic additives, for example manganese, iron or lead, otherwise it may cause damage on your engine or emission control system.
- Do not add aftermarket fuel additives which contain metallic additives.
- Do not use the methanol blended gasoline such as M15, M85, M100. The use of gasoline containing methanol may cause engine damage or failure.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Customizable features

Your vehicle includes a variety of electronic features that can be personalized to your preferences. The settings of these features can be changed by using the meter control switches, the Center Display or at your Lexus dealer.

Customizing vehicle features

■ Changing by using the meter control switches

1 Press ◀ or ▶ to select ⚙.
2 Operate the meter control switches to select the desired item to be customized.
3 According to the display, select the desired setting.

To go back to the previous screen or exit the customize mode, press ↩.

■ Changing using the Center Display

1 Select ⚙ on the main menu.
2 Select "Vehicle customize" on the sub menu.

Various setting can be changed. Refer to the list of settings that can be changed for details.

■ During customization

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, apply the parking brake, and shift the shift lever to P. Also, to prevent battery discharge, leave the engine running while customizing the features.

⚠ WARNING

■ During customization

As the engine needs to be running during customization, ensure that the vehicle is parked in a place with adequate ventilation. In a closed area such as a garage, exhaust gases including harmful carbon monoxide (CO) may collect and enter the vehicle. This may lead to death or a serious health hazard.

NOTICE

■ During customization

To prevent battery discharge, ensure that the engine is running while customizing features.

Customizable features

Some function settings are changed simultaneously with other functions being customized. Contact your Lexus dealer for further details.

A Settings that can be changed using the Center Display

B Settings that can be changed using the meter control switches

C Settings that can be changed by your Lexus dealer

Definition of symbols: O = Available, — = Not available

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Gauges, meters and multi-information display (→P.96, 100, 105)

Function[*1]	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Language[*2, 3]	English	French	—	O	—
		Spanish			
		Simplified Chinese			
		Traditional Chinese			
		Arabic			
		Thai			
		Indonesian			
		Portuguese			
		Dutch			
Units[*2]	L/100 km	km/L	O	O	—
Speedometer display[*4]	Digital	Analog	—	O	—
		Analog and digital			
Drive information 1	Current fuel consumption	Customizable items: →P.107	—	O	—
	Average fuel economy (after reset)				
Drive information 2	Distance (driving range)				
	Average vehicle speed (after reset)				
Clock[*2]	12-hour display	24-hour display	—	O	—
Pop-up display	On	Off	—	O	—
Rev indicator[*5]	5000 r/min	2000 - 6800 r/min	—	O	—
		Off			
Rev peak[*5]	On	Off	—	O	—
Eco Driving Indicator Light	On	Off	—	O	—

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function[*1]	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Suggestion function	On	On (when the vehicle is stopped)	O	—	O
		Off			

[*1]: For details about each function: →P.110

[*2]: The default setting varies according to country.

[*3]: The customized setting varies according to country.

[*4]: Except F SPORT models

[*5]: F SPORT models

■ Head-up Display* (→P.112)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Gauge information	Tachometer	Eco Driving Indicator	—	O	—
		No content			
Route guidance to destination/street name*	On	Off	—	O	—
Driving support system display	On	Off	—	O	—
Compass*	On	Off	—	O	—
Audio system operation status	On	Off	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ Door lock (→P.124, 129, 437)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Unlocking using a mechanical key*	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	—	—	O
Speed linked door locking function	On	Off	O	—	O
Shift lever linked door locking function	Off	On	O	—	O

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Shift lever linked door unlocking function*	Off	On	O	—	O
Driver's door linked door unlocking function*	On	Off	O	—	O
Locking/unlocking of the trunk when all doors are locked/unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O

*: The default setting varies according to country.

■ **Rear seat reminder (→P.126)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Rear seat reminder function	On	Off	—	O	—

■ **Smart entry & start system and wireless remote control (→P.124, 136)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operating signal (Buzzers)*	Standard	Desired volume	O	—	O
Operation signal (Emergency flashers)	On	Off	O	—	O
Time elapsed before automatic door lock function is activated if door is not opened after being unlocked	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		120 seconds			
Open door warning buzzer (When locking the vehicle)	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **Smart entry & start system (→P.124, 136)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Smart entry & start system	On	Off	O	—	O
Smart door unlocking*	All the doors	Driver's door	O	—	O

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before unlocking all the door when gripping and holding the driver's door handle	2 seconds	Off	—	—	O
		1.5 seconds			
		2.5 seconds			
Number of consecutive door lock operations*	2 times	As many as desired	—	—	O

*: The default setting varies according to countries.

■ **Wireless remote control (→P.120, 124)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Wireless remote control	On	Off	—	—	O
Unlocking operation*1	All doors unlocked in one step	Driver's door unlocked in one step, all doors unlocked in two step	O	—	O
Trunk unlocking operation	Press and hold (short)	One short press	—	—	O
		Push twice			
		Press and hold (long)			
		Off			
Theft deterrent panic mode*2	On	Off	—	—	O

*1: The default setting varies according to countries.

*2: If equipped

■ **Trunk (→P.129)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Hands Free Power Trunk Lid (kick sensor)*	On	Off	—	O	—
Buzzer when the kick sensor* detects a foot	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ **Driving position memory*** (→P.143)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Selecting doors linked to the memory recall function*	Driver's door	All doors	—	—	O
Driver's seat slide movement when exiting the vehicle*	Full	Off	O	—	O
		Partial			
Steering wheel movement	Tilt only	Off	O	—	—
		Telescopic only			
		Tilt and telescopic			

*: If equipped

■ **Outside rear view mirrors** (→P.150)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Automatic mirror folding and extending operation*	Linked to the locking/unlocking of the doors	Off	—	—	O
		Linked to operation of the engine switch			

*: If equipped

■ **Power windows, and moon roof* or panoramic moon roof*** (→P.153, 155, 158)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Mechanical key linked operation (open)	Off	On	—	—	O
Mechanical key linked operation (close)	Off	On	—	—	O
Wireless remote control linked operation (open)	Off	On	—	—	O
Wireless remote control linked operation (close)	Off	On	—	—	O
Wireless remote control linked operation signal (buzzer)	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

8 Vehicle specifications

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Automatic light control system (→P.190)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Light sensor sensitivity	Normal	Brighter	O	—	O
		Bright			
		Dark			
		Darker			
Automatic light off system*	Link with driver's door	Link with operation of engine switch	—	—	O
Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn on*	Standard	Long	—	—	O
Extended Headlight Lighting* (Time elapsed before headlights automatically turn off)	30 seconds	60 seconds	—	—	O
		90 seconds			
		120 seconds			

*: On some models

■ Lights (→P.190)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Daytime running lights*	On	Off	O	—	O
Welcome lighting	On	Off	—	—	O

*: On some models

■ AHS (Adaptive High-beam System)*1 (→P.193)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Adaptive High-beam System function	On	Off*2	—	—	O

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Speed at which the lights switch automatically to high beams *3	Operates at approximately 15 km/h (10 mph) or more	Operates at approximately 30 km/h (19 mph) or more	—	—	O
		Operates at approximately 40 km/h (25 mph) or more *4			
		Operates at approximately 60 km/h (37 mph) or more *5			
Intensity adjustment of the high beams when driving around a curve (illuminates the area in the direction vehicle is turning more brightly) *3	On	Off	—	—	O
Projection distance adjustment of the low beams according to the distance to a preceding vehicle *3	On	Off	—	—	O
Illumination of the cornering lights when starting off *3	On	Off	—	—	O
High beam light distribution control for rain *3	On	Off	—	—	O
Light distribution control for urban areas *3	On	Off	—	—	O

*1: If equipped

*2: The lights will switch automatically between high beams and low beams even if this is changed to "Off". (→P.474)

*3: These settings will also be changed to "Off" if the operation of the Adaptive High-beam System function is changed to "Off".

*4: Except for vehicles with model code *6 that has "W" as the last letter.

*5: For vehicles with model code *6 that has "W" as the last letter.

*6: The model code is indicated on the manufacturer's label or the Certification Regulation

8 Vehicle specifications

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

label. (→P.450)

■ **Multi Weather Lights*** **(→P.200)**

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operating of the Multi Weather Lights system when the rear fog lights* are turned on.	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

■ **PCS (Pre-Collision System)*1 (→P.215)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Adjust alert timing	Early, Middle, Late	—	O	—
PCS (Pre-Collision System)*2	On, Off	—	O	—

*1: If equipped

*2: The system is automatically enabled each time the engine switch is turned to IGNITION ON mode.

■ **LTA (Lane Tracing Assist)*** **(→P.226)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lane centering function	On, Off	—	O	—
Alert type	Steering wheel vibration, Buzzer	—	O	—
Alert sensitivity	High, Standard	—	O	—
Vehicle sway warning function	On, Off	—	O	—
Vehicle sway warning sensitivity	High, Standard, Low	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ **Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range*(→P.235)/Dynamic radar cruise control*(→P.246)**

Function	Customized setting	A	B	C
Curve speed reduction function	High, Low, Off	—	O	—

*: If equipped

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)* (→P.258)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)	On	Off	—	O	—
Outside rear view mirror indicator brightness	Bright	Dim	—	O	—
Alert timing for presence of approaching vehicle (sensitivity)	Intermediate	Early	—	O	—
		Late			
		Only when vehicle detected in blind spot			

*: If equipped

■ Driving Mode Select switch (→P.263)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Powertrain control in custom mode*	Normal	Power	O	—	—
		Eco			
Chassis control in custom mode*	Normal	Sport	O	—	—
Air conditioning operation in custom mode*	Normal	Eco	O	—	—

*: If equipped

■ Stop & Start system* (→P.265)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Change the Stop & Start system duration when the A/C is on	Standard	Extended	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ PKSA (Parking Support Alert) (→P.271)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Buzzer volume	Level2	Level1	—	O	O
		Level3			

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Lexus parking assist-sensor (→P.272)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Lexus parking assist-sensor	On	Off	—	O	O

■ RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function* (→P.280)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function	On	Off	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function* (→P.285)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) function	On	Off	—	O	—

*: If equipped

■ PKSB (Parking Support Brake)* (→P.289)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) function	On	Off	—	O	O

*: If equipped

■ Automatic air conditioning system (→P.313)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Switching between outside air and recirculated air mode linked to "AUTO" switch operation	On	Off	O	—	O
A/C auto switch operation	On	Off	O	—	O
Exhaust gas sensor sensitivity	Standard	-3 to 3	O	—	O

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

■ Seat heater*/seat ventilators* (→P.322)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Driver's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○
Passenger's seat temperature preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (cooler) to 2 (warmer)	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ Heated steering wheel* (→P.322)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Steering wheel heating preference in automatic mode	Standard	-2 (low) to 2 (high)	○	—	○

*: If equipped

■ Illumination (→P.325)

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Time elapsed before the interior lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	—	○
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			
Operation after the engine switch is turned off	On	Off	—	—	○
Operation when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	○
Operation when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	—	○
Footwell lights	On	Off	—	—	○
Instrument panel ornament light* and door trim ornament lights*	On	Off	—	—	○
Time elapsed before the outer foot lights turn off	15 seconds	Off	○	—	○
		7.5 seconds			
		30 seconds			

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Function	Default setting	Customized setting	A	B	C
Operation of the outer foot lights when you approach the vehicle with the electronic key on your person	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when the doors are unlocked	On	Off	—	—	O
Operation of the outer foot lights when a door is opened	On	Off	—	—	O

*: If equipped

Vehicle customization

- When the speed linked door locking function and shift lever linked door locking function are both on, the door lock operates as follows.
  - When shifting the shift lever to any position other than P, all the doors will be locked.
  - If the vehicle is started with all the doors locked, the speed linked door locking function will not operate.
  - If the vehicle is started with any door unlocked, the speed linked door locking function will operate.
- When the smart entry & start system is off, the entry unlock function cannot be customized.
- When the doors remain closed after unlocking the doors and the timer activated automatic door lock function activates, signals will be generated in accordance with the operation buzzer volume and operational signal (Emergency flashers) function settings.
- Some settings can be changed using a switch or the Center Display. If a setting is changed using a switch, the changed setting will not be reflected on the Center Display until the engine switch is turned off and then turned back to IGNITION ON mode.

When the Adaptive High-beam System function is off

- When activating the Adaptive High-beam System and all of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned on (after approximately 1 second):
  - Vehicle speed is above approximately 30 km/h (19 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is dark.
  - There are no vehicles ahead with headlights or tail lights turned on.
  - There are few streetlights on the road ahead.
- If any of the following conditions are met, the high beam will be automatically turned off:
  - Vehicle speed drops below approximately 25 km/h (16 mph).
  - The area ahead of the vehicle is not dark.
  - Vehicles ahead have headlights or tail lights turned on.
  - There are many streetlights on the road ahead.

Clock settings

If the clock adjustment screen is displayed continuously when attempting to change the clock settings, the system may be malfunctioning.
Have the vehicle inspected by your Lexus dealer.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Items to initialize

The following items must be initialized for normal system operation after such cases as the battery being reconnected, or maintenance being performed on the vehicle:

List of the items to initialize

Item	When to initialize	Reference
Lexus parking assist-sensor	After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.275
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) (if equipped)	After reconnecting or changing the battery	P.294
Tire pressure warning system	• When rotating the tires. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed by changing tire size. (When there are multiple specified pressures) • After registering the ID codes. • When the tire inflation pressure is changed such as when changing traveling speed.	P.387
Power windows	When functioning abnormally	P.153
Moon roof (if equipped)		P.156
Panoramic moon roof (if equipped)		P.159
Oil maintenance (except for Hong Kong and Macao)	After the maintenance is performed	P.377

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Index

What to do if... (Troubleshooting) 478
Alphabetical index 481

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

What to do if... (Troubleshooting)

If you have a problem, check the following before contacting your Lexus dealer.

The doors cannot be locked, unlocked, opened or closed



You lose your keys

- If you lose your mechanical keys, new genuine mechanical keys can be made by your Lexus dealer. (→P.436)
- If you lose your electronic keys, the risk of vehicle theft increases significantly. Contact your Lexus dealer immediately. (→P.436)



The doors cannot be locked or unlocked

- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted? (→P.395)
- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

When locking the doors, turn the engine switch off. (→P.173)

- Is the electronic key left inside the vehicle?

When locking the doors, make sure that you have the electronic key on your person.

- The function may not operate properly due to the condition of the radio wave. (→P.138)



The rear door cannot be opened

- Is the child-protector lock set?

The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle when the lock is set. Open the rear door from outside and then unlock the child-protector lock. (→P.128)



The trunk lid is closed with the electronic key left inside

- The function to prevent the electronic key from being left inside the trunk will operate and you can open the trunk as usual. Take the key out from the trunk. (→P.134)

If you think something is wrong



The engine does not start

- Did you press the engine switch while firmly depressing the brake pedal? (→P.171)
- Is the shift lever in P? (→P.176, 181)
- Is the electronic key anywhere detectable inside the vehicle? (→P.137)
- Is the electronic key battery weak or depleted?

In this case, the engine can be started in a temporary way. (→P.439)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

- Is the battery discharged? (→P.440)

The shift lever cannot be shifted from P even if you depress the brake pedal

- Is the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode?

If you cannot release the shift lever by depressing the brake pedal with the engine switch in IGNITION ON mode (→P.177, 182)

The windows do not open or close by operating the power window switches

- Is the window lock switch pressed?

The power window except for the one at the driver's seat cannot be operated if the window lock switch is pressed. (→P.155)

The engine switch is turned off automatically

- The auto power off function will be operated if the vehicle is left in ACCESSORY or IGNITION ON mode (the engine is not running) for a period of time. (→P.173)

A warning buzzer sounds during driving

- The seat belt reminder light is flashing

Are the driver and the front passenger wearing the seat belts? (→P.415)

- The parking brake indicator is on

Is the parking brake released? (→P.185)

Depending on the situation, other types of warning buzzer may also sound. (→P.412, 421)

An alarm is activated and the horn sounds (if equipped)

- Did anyone inside the vehicle open a door or anything move inside the vehicle during setting the alarm?

The sensor detects them and the alarm sounds. (→P.85)

To stop the alarm, turn the engine switch to IGNITION ON or start the engine.

A warning buzzer sounds when leaving the vehicle

- Is the message displayed on the multi-information display?

Check the message on the multi-information display. (→P.421)

A warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed

- When a warning light turns on or a warning message is displayed, refer to P.412, 421.

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

When a problem has occurred



If you have a flat tire

- Stop the vehicle in a safe place and replace the flat tire with the spare tire. (→P.425)



The vehicle becomes stuck

- Try the procedure for when the vehicle becomes stuck in mud, dirt, or snow. (→P.447)

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Alphabetical index

A

A/C ... 313
"3-ZONE" mode ... 317
"DUAL" mode ... 317
"SYNC" mode ... 317
Air conditioning filter ... 393
Automatic air conditioning system ... 313
Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) ... 319
Rear air conditioning control screen ... 317
ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ... 300
Function ... 300
Warning light ... 414
ACA (Active Cornering Assist) ... 300
Active Cornering Assist (ACA) ... 300
Adaptive High-beam System (AHS) ... 193
Adaptive Variable Suspension System (AVS) ... 300
AHB (Automatic High Beam) ... 197
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) ... 193
Airbag manual on-off system ... 49
Airbags ... 38
Airbag manual on-off system ... 49
Airbag operating conditions ... 40
Airbag precautions for your child ... 42
Correct driving posture ... 33
Curtain shield airbag operating conditions ... 40
Curtain shield airbag precautions ... 42
General airbag precautions ... 42
Locations of airbags ... 38
Modification and disposal of airbags ... 45
Side airbag operating conditions ... 40
Side airbag precautions ... 42
Side and curtain shield airbags operating conditions ... 40
Side and curtain shield airbags precautions ... 42
SRS airbags ... 38
SRS warning light ... 413
Air conditioning filter ... 393
Air conditioning system ... 313
"3-ZONE" mode ... 317
"DUAL" mode ... 317
"SYNC" mode ... 317
Air conditioning filter ... 393
Automatic air conditioning system ... 313
Front seat concentrated airflow mode (S-FLOW) ... 319
Rear air conditioning control screen ... 317
Alarm ... 85
Alarm ... 85
Warning buzzer ... 412
Antennas (smart entry & start system) ... 136
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ... 300
Function ... 300
Warning light ... 414
Approach warning
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range ... 241
Dynamic radar cruise control ... 251
Armrest ... 342
Assist grips ... 342
Audio system-linked display ... 109
Automatic headlight leveling system ... 191
Automatic High Beam (AHB) ... 197
Automatic light control system ... 191
Automatic transmission ... 175
Paddle shift switches ... 177
S mode ... 178
Auxiliary boxes ... 330
Average fuel economy ... 107
Average vehicle speed ... 107
AVS (Adaptive Variable Suspension System) ... 300

B

Back-up lights
Replacing light bulbs ... 399
Battery ... 379

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

If the battery is discharged....440
Preparing and checking before winter....305
Replacing....443
Warning light....412
Blind Spot Monitor (BSM)....258
Blind Spot Monitor function....260
Brake
Brake hold....187
Fluid....458
Parking brake....185
Warning light....412
Brake assist....300
Brake hold....187
Break-in tips....165
Brightness control
Instrument panel light control....98, 104
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor)....258
Blind Spot Monitor function....260

C

Card key....120
Care....352, 355
Exterior....352
Interior....355
Seat belts....355
Wheels and wheel ornaments....352
Cargo hooks....331
Chains....306
Child restraint system....51
Child seats definition....51
Child seats installation....74
Installing a child restraint system to the passenger seat....52
Installing a child restraint system to the rear seat....53
Installing child restraint system with an ISOFIX lower anchorage....77
Installing child restraint system with seat belts....75
Installing child restraint system with top strap....78
Points to remember....51
Riding with children....50
Types of child restraint system installation method....74
Using a top tether anchorage....78
Child safety....50
Airbag precautions....42
Child restraint system....51
Installing child restraints....51
Moon roof precautions....157
Panoramic moon precautions....160
Power window lock switches....155
Power window precautions....154
Rear door child-protector lock....128
Seat belt precautions....77
Trunk precautions....129
Cleaning....352, 355
Exterior....352
Interior....355
Radar sensor....211, 259
Seat belts....355
Wheels and wheel ornaments....352
Clock....96, 100, 333
Clock Light....325
Coat hooks....345
Condenser....378
Console box....329
Console box light....329
Consumption screen....116
Coolant
Capacity....456
Checking....378
Preparing and checking before winter....305
Cooling system....375
Engine overheating....445
Cornering lights....192
Cruise control
Cruise control....256

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Cup holder 329
Current fuel consumption 107
Curtain shield airbags 38
Customizable features 462
Custom mode 263
CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) 179
Paddle shift switches 182

D

Daytime running light system 190
Defogger
Outside rear view mirrors 314
Rear window 314
Windshield 314
Dimension 450
Display
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 258
Consumption screen 116
Cruise control 256
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Head-up display 112
Lexus parking assist 272
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 231
Multi-information display 105
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 286
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 280
Warning message 421
Distance until next engine oil change .. 98, 104
Do-it-yourself maintenance 358
Door courtesy lights 325
Door lock
Doors 124
Smart entry & start system 136
Wireless remote control 122
Door pockets 328
Doors 124
Automatic door locking and unlocking system 128
Door glasses 153
Door lock 124
Open door warning buzzer 128
Outside rear view mirrors 150
Rear door child-protector lock 128
Double locking system 84
Drive distance 107
Drive info 1/Drive info 2 107
Driver's seat position memory 143
Driving position memory 144
Memory recall function 145
Power easy access system 143
Drive-Start Control (DSC)
Sudden start restraint control 169
Driving 164
Break-in tips 165
Correct driving posture 33
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Eco-friendly driving tips 308
Procedures 164
Winter drive tips 305
Driving information display 107
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Driving position memory 143
Memory recall function 145
Power easy access system 143
Driving range 107
Driving support system information display 109
DSC (Drive-Start Control)
Sudden start restraint control 169
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Warning message 254
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Warning message....244

E

eCall....80
Eco drive mode....263
Eco Driving Indicator....108, 115
Eco Driving Indicator Light....108
EDR (Event data recorder)....7
Elapsed time....107
Electric Power Steering (EPS)
Function....300
Warning light....414
Electronic key....120
Battery-saving function....138
If the electronic key does not operate properly....437
Replacing the battery....395
Emergency, in case of
If a warning buzzer sounds....412
If a warning light turns on....412
If a warning message is displayed....421
If the battery is discharged....440
If the electronic key does not operate properly....437
If the engine will not start....435
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened....437
If the vehicle is submerged or water on the road is rising....405
If you have a flat tire....425
If you lose your keys....436
If you think something is wrong....410
If your vehicle becomes stuck....447
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....404
If your vehicle needs to be towed....407
If your vehicle overheats....445
Emergency brake signal....301
Emergency flashers....404
Engine
ACCESSORY mode....173
Compartment....373
Engine switch....171
Fuel pump shut off system....411
Hood....371
How to start the engine....171
Identification number....451
If the engine will not start....435
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....404
Ignition switch (engine switch)....171
Overheating....445
Tachometer....96, 100
Engine coolant....378
Capacity....456
Checking....378
Preparing and checking before winter....305
Engine coolant temperature gauge....96, 100
Engine immobilizer system....83
Engine oil....375
Capacity....453
Checking....375
Preparing and checking before winter....305
Warning light....413
Engine oil maintenance data....377
Engine switch....171
Auto power off function....173
Changing the engine switch modes....173
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....404
Starting the engine....171
EPS (Electric Power Steering)....300
Function....300
Warning light....414
Event data recorder (EDR)....7
Exhaust gas precautions....47
Extended Headlight Lighting system....192

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

F

Flat tire 425
Tire pressure warning system 385
Floor mats 32
Fluid
Automatic transmission 457
Brake 458
Washer 381
Fog light 201
Replacing light bulbs 399
Switch 201
Footwell light 325
Front position lights
Replacing light bulbs 399
Switch 190
Welcome light illumination control 191
Front seat heaters 323
Front seats 141
Adjustment 141
Cleaning 355
Correct driving posture 33
Driving position memory 143
Head restraints 146
Memory recall function 145
Power easy access system 143
Seat heaters 323
Seat position memory 143
Seat ventilators 323
Front turn signal lights
Replacing light bulbs 399
Turn signal lever 184
Wattage 460
Fuel 208
Capacity 453
Fuel gauge 96, 100
Fuel pump shut off system 411
Refueling 208
Type 453
Warning light 414
Fuel consumption
Average fuel economy 107
Current fuel consumption 107
Fuel filler door 208
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 437
Refueling 208
Fuel gauge 96, 100
Fuel pump shut off system 411
Fuses 397

G

Garage door opener 345
Gauges 96, 100
Gear Position 109
G-force 109
Glove box 329
Glove box light 329
Grocery bag hooks 331

H

Hands Free Power Trunk Lid 132
Headlight cleaners 202
Headlights 190
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 193
Extended Headlight Lighting system 192
Light switch 190
Replacing light bulbs 399
Head restraints 146
Head-up display 112
Driving information display area 112
Driving support system display area 114
Eco Driving Indicator 115
Head-up display switch 113
Navigation system-linked display 112
Pop-up display 115
Settings 113
Head-up display switch 113
Heated steering wheel 322
Heaters

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Air conditioning system....313
Heated steering wheel....322
Outside rear view mirrors....314
Seat heaters....322
Hill-start assist control....300
Hood....371
Open....371
Pop Up Hood....45
Hooks
Cargo hooks....331
Coat hooks....345
Grocery bag hooks....331
Retaining hooks (floor mat)....32
Horn....148

I

Identification
Engine....451
Vehicle....450
Ignition switch (engine switch)....171
Auto power off function....173
Changing the engine switch modes..173
If your vehicle has to be stopped in an emergency....404
Starting the engine....171
Indicators....94
Initialization....462
Items to initialize....475
Lexus parking assist-sensor....275
Maintenance....377
Moon roof....156
Panoramic moon roof....159
PKSB (Parking Support Brake)....294
Power windows....153
Tire pressure warning system....387
Inside door handle lights....325
Inside rear view mirror....149
Instrument panel light control....98, 104
Interior lights....325
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor....87
ISOFIX lower anchorage....77

J

Jack
Positioning a floor jack....372
Vehicle-equipped jack....426
Jack handle....426
Jam protection function
Moon roof....156
Panoramic moon roof....159
Power trunk lid....134
Power windows....153

K

Keyless entry
Smart entry & start system....136
Wireless remote control....122
Keys....120
Battery-saving function....138
Card key....120
Electronic key....120
Engine switch....171
If the electronic key does not operate properly....437
If you lose your keys....436
Key number plate....120
Keyless entry....124, 136
Mechanical key....120
Replacing the battery....395
Warning buzzer....137
Wireless remote control....122
Knee airbags....38

L

Language (multi-information display)....110
Lever
Auxiliary catch lever....371
Hood lock release lever....371
Shift lever....175, 179

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Turn signal lever 184
Wiper lever 202
Lexus climate concierge 312
Lexus parking assist-sensor
Function 272
Lexus Safety System + ... 210
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 193
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235
Dynamic radar cruise control 246
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 215
License plate lights 190
Light switch 190
Replacing light bulbs 399
Light bulbs
Replacing 399
Wattage 460
Lights
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
AHS (Adaptive High-beam System) 193
Extended Headlight Lighting system 192
Fog light switch 201
Front interior lights 326
Front personal lights 326
Headlight switch 190
Interior lights list 325
Interior lights 325, 326
Rear personal lights 326
Replacing light bulbs 399
Trunk light 133
Turn signal lever 184
Vanity lights 333
Wattage 460
Welcome light illumination control 191
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226
Operation 226
Warning messages 234
Luggage mat 331

M

Maintenance
Do-it-yourself maintenance 370
Maintenance data 450
Maintenance requirements 358
Scheduled maintenance 360
Malfunction indicator lamp 413
Master warning light 419
Menu icons 106
Meter
Changing the main meter location 105
Clock 96, 100
Indicators 94
Instrument panel light control 98, 104
Meter control switches 106
Meters 96, 100
Multi-information display 105
Settings 110
Warning lights 412
Warning message 421
Mirrors
Inside rear view mirror 149
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 314
Outside rear view mirrors 150
Vanity mirrors 333
Moon roof 155
Door lock linked panoramic moon roof operation 156
Jam protection function 156
Operation 155
Multi-information display 105
Audio system-linked display 109
Cruise control 256
Drive information 1/Drive information 2 107
Driving information display 107
Driving support system information display 109
Dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range 235

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Dynamic radar cruise control 246
Eco Driving Indicator 108
Gear Position 109
G-force 109
Lexus parking assist-sensor 272
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 231
Menu icons 106
Meter control switches 106
Navigation system-linked display 109
Pop-up display 105
Settings 110
Suggestion function 111
Tire pressure 385
Warning message 421
Multi Weather Lights 200
Switch 200

N

nanoe™ X 318
Navigation system-linked display . 109, 112

O

Odometer 98, 104
Odometer and trip meter display
"ODO TRIP" switch 98, 104
Display items 98, 104
Pop-up display 98, 104
"ODO TRIP" switch 98, 104
Oil
Engine oil 453
Opener
Fuel filler door 208
Hood 371
Trunk 131
Open tray 331
Outer foot lights 325
Outside door handle lights 325
Outside rear view mirrors 150
Adjustment 150
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 258
Folding 151
Linked mirror function when reversing 151
Mirror position memory 143
Outside rear view mirror defoggers 314
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 280
Outside temperature 96, 100
Overheating 445

P

Paddle shift switches 177, 182
Panic mode 122
Panoramic moon roof 158
Door lock linked moon roof operation 159
Jam protection function 159
Operation 158
Parking assist sensors 272
Parking brake 185
Operation 185
Parking brake engaged warning buzzer 186
Warning light 419
Warning message 186
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) 298
Function 298
Parking Support Brake function (static objects) 295
Function 295
PCS (Pre-Collision System) 215
Function 215
PCS OFF switch 219
Warning light 418
Personal lights 325
PKSA (Parking Support Alert) 271
Lexus parking assist-sensor 272
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 285
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 280

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 289
Warning message 294
Pop Up Hood 45
Power easy access system 143
Power outlet 333
Power steering (Electric Power Steering) 300
Power steering (Electric power steering system)
Warning light 414
Power trunk lid 133
Power windows 153
Door lock linked window operation 154
Jam protection function 153
Operation 153
Window lock switch 155
Pre-Collision System (PCS) 215
Function 215
PCS OFF switch 219
Warning light 418

R

Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control) 246
Radar cruise control (dynamic radar cruise control with full-speed range) 235
Radiator 378
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 285
Function 285
Warning message 287
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 281
RCTA 280
RCTA Function 281
Warning message 281
RCTA function 281
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) 280
Rear door child-protector lock 128
Rear seat heaters 323
Rear sunshade 343
Rear turn signal lights 184
Replacing light bulbs 399
Turn signal lever 184
Rear view mirror
Inside rear view mirror 149
Outside rear view mirrors 150
Rear window defogger 314
Refueling 208
Capacity 453
Fuel types 453
If the fuel filler door cannot be opened 437
Opening the fuel tank cap 208
Replacing
Electronic key battery 395
Fuses 397
Light bulbs 399
Tires 425
Rev indicator 102
Rev peak 102

S

Seat belt reminder light 415
Seat belts 34
Child restraint system installation 51
Cleaning and maintaining the seat belt 355
Emergency locking retractor 36
How to wear your seat belt 35
How your child should wear the seat belt 36
Reminder light and buzzer 415
Seat belt guide 36
Seat belt pretensioners 37
SRS warning light 413
Seat belt shoulder anchor height
Adjustment 36
Seat belts shoulder anchor height
Child restraint system installation 65
Seat heaters 322

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Seat position memory 143
Seats 141, 142
Adjustment 141, 142
Child seats/child restraint system installation 51
Cleaning 355
Driving position memory 143
Front seat heaters 323
Head restraints 146
Power easy access system 143
Properly sitting in the seat 33
Rear seat heaters 323
Seat heaters 323
Seat position memory 143
Seat ventilators 323
Seat ventilators 322
Secondary Collision Brake 300
Sensor
AHB (Automatic High Beam) 197
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 259
Front camera 210
Headlight control sensor 191
Headlight control 191
Inside rear view mirror 149
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 87
Kick sensor 132
Lexus parking assist 272
Lexus Safety System + ... 210
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226
Outside door handle 124
Parking Support Brake function (rear-crossing vehicles) 259
Parking Support Brake function (static objects) 272
Pop Up Hood 45
Radar sensor 210
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 204
SRS airbags 39
S-FLOW mode 319
Shift lever
Automatic transmission 175
CVT (Continuously Variable Transaxle) 179
Shift lever light 325
Side airbags 38
Side mirrors 150
Adjustment 150
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) 258
Folding 151
Linked mirror function when reversing 151
Mirror position memory 143
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) function 280
Side turn signal lights 184
Replacing light bulbs 399
Turn signal lever 184
Side windows 153
Smart entry & start system 136
Antenna location 136
Entry functions 124
Starting the engine 171
"SOS" button 80
Spare tire
Storage location 426
Spark plug 457
Specifications 450
Speedometer 96, 100
Sport mode 263
Steering wheel 148
Adjustment 148
Auto tilt away 148
Heated steering wheel 322
Meter control switches 106
Power easy access system 148
Steering wheel position memory 143
Stop lights
Emergency brake signal 301
Replacing light bulbs 399
Stop & Start system 265
Pop-up display 98, 104
Warning light 417

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Storage feature 328
Stuck
If the vehicle becomes stuck 447
Suggestion function 111
Sunshade
Electronic roof sunshade 158
Moon roof 156
Rear door sunshades 343
Rear sunshade 343
Sun visors 333
Switch
Heated steering wheel 322
Switches
"ODO TRIP" switch 98, 104
"SOS" button 80
Adaptive High-beam System switch 194
Automatic High Beam switch 197
Brake Hold switch 187
BSM (Blind Spot Monitor) switch 259
Cruise control switch 236, 246, 256
Door lock switches 127
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Driving position memory switches 143
Emergency flashers switch 404
Engine switch 171
Fog light switch 201
Garage door opener switches 345
Head-up display switch 113
Ignition switch 171
Instrument panel light control switches 98, 104
Light switches 190
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) switch 230
Meter control switches 106
Moon roof switches 155
Multi Weather Lights 200
Outside rear view mirror switches 150
Paddle shift switches 177, 182
Panoramic moon roof switches 158
Parking brake switch 185
PCS OFF switch 219
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) switch 290
Power door lock switch 127
Power window switches 153
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) switch 286
RCTA switch 281
Rear door sunshades 343
Rear sunshade 343
Rear window and outside rear view mirror defoggers switch 313
Seat heater switches 323
Seat ventilator switches 323
Stop & Start cancel switch 270
Tilt and telescopic steering control switch 148
Tire pressure warning reset switch 387
Trunk closer switch 133
Trunk opener main switch 135
Trunk opener switch 131
Vehicle-to-vehicle distance switch 240, 250
VSC OFF switch 301
Window lock switch 155
Windshield wiper and washer switch 202
Wireless charger switch 336

T

Tachometer 96, 100
Rev indicator 102
Rev peak 102
Tail lights 190
Light switch 190
Replacing light bulbs 399
Theft deterrent system
Alarm 85
Double locking system 84
Engine immobilizer system 83
Intrusion sensor and tilt sensor 87

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Tire inflation pressure 391
Maintenance data 459
Tire inflation pressure display function 385
Warning light 416
Tire pressure warning system 385
Function 385
Initializing 387
Installing tire pressure warning valves and transmitters 386
Registering ID codes 389
Warning light 416
Tires 383
Checking 383
If you have a flat tire 425
Inflation pressure 391
Rotating tires 384
Size 459
Tire chains 306
Tire inflation pressure display function 385
Tire pressure warning system 385
Warning light 416
Tools 426
Top strap 78
Top tether anchorages 78
Towing
Emergency towing 407
Towing eyelet 408
Trailer towing 170
Traction Control (TRC) 300
Trailer towing 170
Transmission
Automatic transmission 175
Driving Mode Select switch 263
Paddle shift switches 177
S mode 178
TRC (Traction Control) 300
Trip meters 98, 104
Trunk 129
Hands Free Power Trunk Lid 132
Power trunk lid 133
Smart entry & start system 132
Trunk closer switch 133
Trunk easy closer 133
Trunk features 331
Trunk grip 133
Trunk light 133
Trunk opener main switch 135
Trunk opener switch 131
Wireless remote control 132
Trunk light 133
Turn signal lights 184
Replacing light bulbs 399, 400
Turn signal lever 184
Wattage 460

U

USB Type-C charging ports 334

V

Vanity lights 333
Vanity mirrors 333
Vehicle data recordings 7
Vehicle identification number 450
Vehicle Stability Control (VSC) 300
Ventilators (seat ventilators) 323
VSC (Vehicle Stability Control) 300

W

Warning buzzers
ABS 414
Airbags 413
Approach warning 241, 251
Brake hold 419
Brake Override System 414
Brake system 412
Charging system 412
Downshifting 178, 184
Drive-Start Control 414

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Electric power steering 414
Engine 413
High coolant temperature 412
Lexus parking assist 271
Lexus parking assist-sensor 279, 417
Low engine oil pressure 413
LTA (Lane Tracing Assist) 226, 416
Open door 128
Open hood 128
Open trunk 128
Open window 154
PKSA (Parking Support Alert) 271
PKSB (Parking Support Brake) 418
Pop Up Hood 413
RCD (Rear Camera Detection) 271, 417
RCTA (Rear Cross Traffic Alert) 271, 417
Seat belt 415
Warning lights 412
ABS 414
Brake hold operated indicator 419
Brake system 412
Charging system 412
Electric power steering 414
High coolant temperature 412
Inappropriate pedal operation 414
Lexus parking assist-sensor OFF indicator 417
Low engine oil pressure 413
Low fuel level 414
LTA indicator 416
Malfunction indicator lamp 413
Master warning light 419
Parking brake indicator 419
PCS 418
PKSB OFF indicator 418
Pop Up Hood 413
RCD OFF indicator 417
RCTA OFF indicator 417
Seat belt reminder light 415
Slip indicator 418
SRS 413
Stop & Start cancel indicator 417
Tire pressure 416
Warning messages 421
Washer 202
Checking 381
Headlight cleaners 202
Preparing and checking before winter 305
Switch 202
Washing and waxing 352
Wheels 392
Size 459
Window lock switch 155
Windows 153
Power windows 153
Rear window defogger 314
Washer 202
Windshield wiper de-icer 318
Windshield wipers 202
Intermittent windshield wipers with interval adjuster 202
Position 205
Rain-sensing windshield wipers 202
Winter driving tips 305
Wireless charger 335
Wireless remote control 122
Battery-Saving Function 138
Locking/Unlocking 124
Replacing the battery 395

For information regarding the equipment listed below, refer to the "Multimedia Owner's Manual".

- Audio/video system
- Navigation system
- Lexus parking assist monitor
- Panoramic view monitor

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Certifications

Engine immobilizer system

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

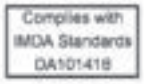
- Manufacturer:	TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
- Address:	1, Toyota-cho, Toyota, Aichi-ken, 471-8572,Japan
- Brand:	TOYOTA
- Equipment:	Immobilizer
- Model:	TMIMB-3

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Smart entry & start system

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



DENSO 14CCM

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、
商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；
經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機
設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。

前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。

低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

- Manufacturer:	TOYOTA MOTOR CORPORATION
- Address:	1, Toyota-cho, Toyota, Aichi-ken, 471-8572,Japan
- Brand:	TOYOTA
- Equipment:	Smart LF Oscillator
- Model:	TMLF15-1

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore

Complies with
IMDA Standards
DA101418

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates

TRA
REGISTERED No: ER59327/17
DEALER No: 0034092/10

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

- Manufacturer:	TOKAI RIKA CO., LTD.
- Address:	3-260 Toyota, Oguchi-cho, Niwa-gun, Aichi 480-0195, Japan
- Brand:	TOKAI RIKA
- Equipment:	Electronic key
- Model:	B2C2K2R

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Millimeter wave radar sensor

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore

Complies with IMDA Standards DA101418

DENSO DNMWR009

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam

CÔNG TY Ô TÔ TOYOTA VIỆT NAM

ICT

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال همیاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Blind Spot Monitor

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa



C3-038

▶ For vehicles sold in Bahrain

The Equipment Identified hereon is approved for use under the following rules
1- This equipment must not cause harmful interference to other service.
2- This equipment is subject to harmful interference, and the owner of this equipment must not claim for protection.

C3-042

▶ For vehicles sold in Qatar

ictQATAR
Type approval reg No:
CRA/SA/2014/R-4413

Importer No:
FT-2222

C3-043

شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال باشگاهداران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

Name and address of the manufacturer
ADC Automotive Distance Control Systems GmbH
Peter-Dornier-Strasse 10, 88131 Lindau, Germany

Brand, Model, Type and Commercial name
Continental, SRR3-A, Short Range Radar

C3-045

▶ For vehicles sold in Lebanon

From the Lebanese Telecommunications Ministry:
Type Approval Number : 12421/O&M/2014

C3-046

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

警語

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經核准，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

C3-048

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



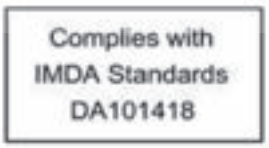
C3-049

▶ For vehicles sold in the Philippines



C3-050

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



C3-051

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

Wireless charger

▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

取得審驗證明之低功率射頻器材，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。

低功率射頻器材之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前述合法通信，指依電信管理法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻器材須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

Tire pressure warning system

▶ For vehicles sold in Indonesia



70821/SDPPI/2020
10202



68849/SDPPI/2020
10202

▶ For vehicles sold in Singapore



اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو (مسئولیت محدود)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

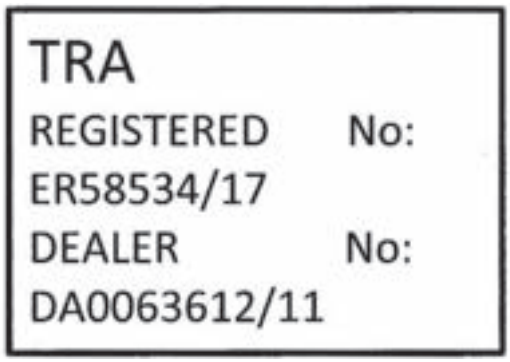
▶ For vehicles sold in Taiwan

經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。
低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。
前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。
低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

▶ For vehicles sold in Vietnam



▶ For vehicles sold in the United Arab Emirates



WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

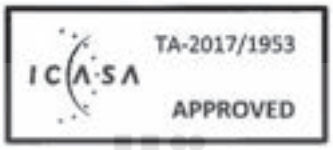
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

▶ For vehicles sold in Jordan

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Transmitter
Model: PMV-E100
Manufacture: Pacific Industrial Co., Ltd.
Address: 1300-1 Yokoi, Godo-cho, Anpachi-gun, Gifu, 503-2397 Japan

▶ For vehicles sold in South Africa

TPMS (Tire Pressure Monitoring System) Transmitter conforms to the requirement of ICASA.



دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

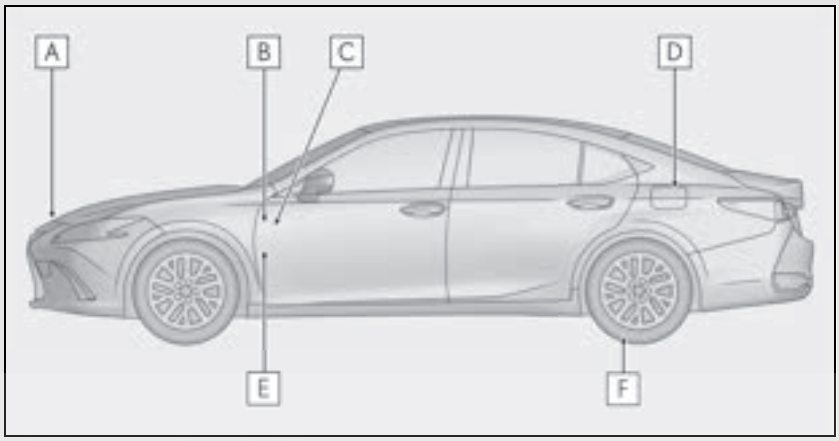
WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

GAS STATION INFORMATION



A Auxiliary catch lever (→P.371)

B Trunk opener (→P.131)

C Fuel filler door opener (→P.209)

D Fuel filler door (→P.209)

E Hood lock release lever (→P.371)

F Tire inflation pressure (→P.459)

Fuel tank capacity (Reference)	60 L (15.9 gal., 13.2 Imp.gal.)	
Fuel type	Unleaded gasoline only	P.453
Cold tire inflation pressure		P.459
Engine oil capacity (Drain and refill — reference)		P.453, 455
Engine oil type		P.453, 455

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92

دیجیتال خودرو
شرکت دیجیتال خودرو سامانه (مسئولیت محدود)
اولین سامانه دیجیتال تعمیرکاران خودرو در ایران

Publication No. OM33G45E
Part No. 01999-33G45
Printed in Japan 01-2208-00 C
ES 350 / ES 250 / ES 200 (一般E)

WWW.DIGITALKHODRO.COM 021 62 99 92 92